
OWNER'S MANUAL

Operation
Maintenance
Specifications

All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, Genesis reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement may be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment.

As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.

CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR GENESIS VEHICLE

Your Genesis vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your Genesis vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle. Certain modifications may also be in violation of regulations established by the Department of Transportation and other government agencies in your country.

TWO-WAY RADIO OR MOBILE TELEPHONE INSTALLATION

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic fuel injection and other electronic components. It is possible for an improperly installed/adjusted two-way radio or mobile telephone to adversely affect electronic systems. For this reason, we recommend that you carefully follow the radio manufacturer's instructions or consult your authorised Genesis repairer for precautionary measures or special instructions if you choose to install one of these devices.

SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

This manual includes information titled as DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION and NOTICE.

These titles indicate the following:



DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.



WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.



CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

Table of contents

Foreword / Starting your Electric vehicle	1
Vehicle information	2
Safety system	3
Instrument cluster	4
Convenience features	5
Driving your vehicle	6
Driver assistance system	7
Emergency situations	8
Maintenance	9
Index	I

1. Foreword / Starting your Electric vehicle

Electric vehicle	1-6
Electric vehicle	1-6
Characteristics of electric vehicles	1-6
Battery Information.....	1-6
Main components of electric vehicle	1-7
Main components of an electric vehicle	1-7
High voltage battery (lithium-ion battery)	1-7
High voltage battery warmer system.....	1-8
EV mode	1-9
EV mode screen	1-9
Energy information	1-10
Next departure	1-11
Charging and climate	1-12
Vehicle to load (V2L)	1-13
Nearby charging stations	1-19
EV settings	1-19
Charge types for electric vehicle	1-22
Charging Information.....	1-22
Charging time information	1-22
Charging types	1-23
Charge indicator lamp for electric vehicle.....	1-24
Charging status	1-24
Locking charging cable.....	1-25
Scheduled charging.....	1-26
Scheduled charging	1-26
Charging precautions	1-26
How to check the symbol on the charging label	1-28
Electric charging label	1-29
Electric charging label symbol table.....	1-31
Disconnecting charging connector in emergency	1-32
AC charge	1-32
DC charge	1-36
Portable charge	1-39

Charging the electric vehicle (abrupt stop)	1-50
Action to be taken when charging stops abruptly	1-50
Driving electric vehicle	1-51
How to start the vehicle.....	1-51
How to Shut Off the vehicle	1-51
Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS).....	1-52
Distance to empty.....	1-52
Tips for improving distance to empty	1-53
Electricity use	1-54
Power/Charge Gauge	1-55
State Of Charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery	1-55
Warning and Indicator lights (related to electric vehicle)	1-56
Cluster display messages	1-58
Safety precautions for electric vehicle.....	1-63
Countermeasures for Accidents or Fire	1-63
Other precautions for electric vehicle	1-65
High voltage cut-off switch.....	1-65

FOREWORD

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a Genesis vehicle. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of discerning people who drive a Genesis vehicle. We are very proud of the advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each Genesis vehicle we build.

Your Owner's Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new Genesis vehicle. To become familiar with your new Genesis vehicle, so that you can fully enjoy it, read this Owner's Manual carefully before driving your new vehicle.

This manual contains important safety information and instructions intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's controls and safety features so you can safely operate your vehicle.

This manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance safe operation of the vehicle. It is recommended that all service and maintenance on your vehicle be performed by an authorised Genesis repairer. An authorised Genesis repairer is prepared to provide high-quality service, maintenance and any other assistance that may be required.

This Owner's Manual should be considered a permanent part of your vehicle, and should be kept in the vehicle so you can refer to it at any time. The manual should stay with the vehicle if you sell it to provide the next owner with important operating, safety and maintenance information.

GENESIS BRAND MOTOR COMPANY



CAUTION

Severe vehicle damage may result from the use of poor quality lubricants that do not meet Genesis vehicle specifications. You must always use high quality lubricants that meet the specifications listed on Page <2-12> in the Vehicle Specifications section of the Owner's Manual.

Copyright 2023 Genesis Brand Motors Australia. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Genesis Motors Australia.

AUSTRALIAN DESIGN RULES

The compliance plate shows that your vehicle has tested and found to comply with all relevant Australian Design Rules (ADR's) applicable at its date of manufacture. Any part, that is subject to these ADR's, must not be removed or altered and is to be maintained in good order at all times for the vehicle to be roadworthy and reregisterable by all registerable authorities. We recommend that you consult an Authorised Genesis repairer before conducting any repairs that may affect these areas or if requiring further classification on design rules or safety features. Failure to observe the above warning may render the vehicle compliance invalid and result in personal injury which may have otherwise been avoided.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimise the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has nine chapters plus an index. Each section begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

SAFETY MESSAGES

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. This Owner's Manual provides you with many safety precautions and operating procedures. This information alerts you to potential hazards that may hurt you or others, as well as damage your vehicle.

Safety messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe these hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce the risks.

Warnings and instructions contained in this manual are for your safety. Failure to follow safety warnings and instructions can lead to serious injury or death.

Throughout this manual DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION, NOTICE and the SAFETY ALERT SYMBOL will be used.



This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential physical injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death. The safety alert symbol precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION.



DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.



CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.



WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.
In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.
- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire.

NOTICE

Some warning sounds (including welcome/good-bye sound, etc.) are generated from the external amplifiers. If necessary, we recommend that you purchase genuine Genesis parts to replace an external amplifier. Any unauthorised product may cause a malfunction of the external amplifiers.

ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Electric vehicle

An electric vehicle is driven using a battery and an electric motor. Whilst general vehicles use an internal combustion engine and petrol as fuel, electric vehicles use electrical energy that is stored inside the high voltage battery. As a result, electric vehicles are eco-friendly in that they do not require fuel and do not emit exhaust gases.

Characteristics of electric vehicles

1. It is driven using the electrical energy that is stored inside the high voltage battery. This method prevents air pollution since fuel, like petrol, is not required, negating the emission of exhaust gases.
2. A high performance motor is used in the vehicle as well. Compared to standard, internal combustion engine vehicles, engine noise and vibrations are significantly reduced when driving.
3. When decelerating or driving downhill, regenerative braking is utilized to charge the high voltage battery. This minimises energy loss and increases the distance to empty.
4. When the battery charge is not sufficient, AC charge, DC charge and portable charge are available. (Refer to “Charge Types for Electric Vehicle” <Pg 1-22> for details.)

Information

What does regenerative braking do?

It uses an electric motor when decelerating and braking and transforms kinetic energy to electrical energy in order to charge the high voltage battery. (Torque is applied in the opposite direction when decelerating to generate braking force and electric energy.)

Battery Information

- The vehicle is composed of a high voltage battery that powers the motor and air-conditioning, and an auxiliary battery (12 V) that powers the lamps, wipers, and audio system.
- The auxiliary battery is automatically charged when the vehicle is in the ready (**READY**) mode or the high voltage battery is being charged.

MAIN COMPONENTS OF ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Main components of an electric vehicle

- On-Board Charger (OBC) : A device that charges the high voltage battery by converting AC power of the power grid to DC power.
 - Inverter : Transforms direct current into alternate current to supply power to the motor, and transforms alternate current into direct current to charge the high voltage battery.
 - LDC : Transforms power from the high voltage battery into low voltage (12 V) to supply power to the vehicle (DC-DC).
 - VCU : Control the various controls on the vehicle.
 - Motor : Uses electrical energy stored inside the high voltage battery to drive the vehicle (functions like an engine in a standard vehicle).
 - Reduction gear : Delivers rotational force of the motor to the tyres at appropriate speeds and torque.
 - High voltage battery (lithium-ion battery) : Stores and supplies power necessary for the electric vehicle to operate (12 V auxiliary battery provides power to the vehicle features such as lights and wipers).
- * OBC : On-Board Charger
 * LDC : Low Voltage DC-DC Converter
 * VCU : Vehicle Control Unit



WARNING

- **Do not intentionally remove or disassemble high voltage components and high voltage battery connectors and wires. Also, be careful not to damage high voltage components and the high voltage battery. It may cause serious injury and significantly impact the performance and durability of the vehicle.**
- **When inspection and maintenance is required for high voltage components and the high voltage battery, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.**

High voltage battery (lithium-ion battery)

- The charge amount of the high voltage battery may gradually decrease when the vehicle is not being driven.
- The battery capacity of the high voltage battery may decrease when the vehicle is stored in high/low temperatures.
- Distance to empty may vary depending on the driving conditions (such as outside temperature), even if the charge amount is the same. The high voltage battery may expend more energy when driving at high-speed or uphill. These actions may reduce the distance to empty.
- The high voltage battery is used when using the air-conditioning/heating. This may reduce the distance to empty. Make sure to set moderate temperatures when using the air-conditioning/heating.

- Natural degradation may occur with the high voltage battery depending on the number of years the vehicle is used. This may reduce the distance to empty.
- When the charge capacity and distance to empty keeps falling, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for inspection and maintenance.
- If the vehicle will not be in use for an extended period of time, charge the high voltage battery once every three months to prevent it from discharging. At any time the charge level is low, immediately charge to full and store the vehicle.
- To keep the battery in optimal condition, use AC charging. Fully charging the battery when it is 20 % or lower helps to keep the battery in optimal condition. (Charging once a month or more is recommended.)
- The charging level value displayed on the instrument cluster may decrease according to the charging conditions (charger status, outside temperature, battery temperature, etc.). For longer battery life and safety, after a certain charging level is reached, the charging current is gradually lowered to fully charge the battery.



CAUTION

- **If the vehicle is kept with insufficient charge for a long period, it may damage the high voltage battery and the high voltage battery may have to be replaced depending on the level of degradation.**

- **If the vehicle is in a collision, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer to inspect whether the high voltage battery is still connected.**
- **Using the V2L (Vehicle to Load) function may reduce the kilometre range due to the use of high voltage battery energy, and repeated use of the V2L function may decrease high voltage battery life.**

High voltage battery warmer system

The high voltage battery warmer system prevents reduction of battery output when the battery temperature is low. If the charging connector is connected, the warmer system automatically operates according to the battery temperature.

Charging time may decrease compared to vehicles without the high voltage battery warmer system. However, the electricity charge may increase because of the high voltage battery warmer system operation.

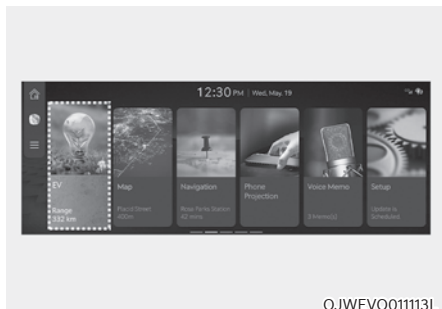


CAUTION

The high voltage battery warmer system operates when the charging connector is connected to the vehicle.

However, the high voltage warmer system may not operate when the battery temperature drops below -35°C (-31°F).

EV MODE



If you select the “EV” menu on the home screen you can enter EV mode.

For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

EV mode screen



- (1) Energy Information
- (2) Next Departure
- (3) Charging and Climate

- (4) Vehicle to Load (V2L)
- (5) EV Settings
- (6) Menu

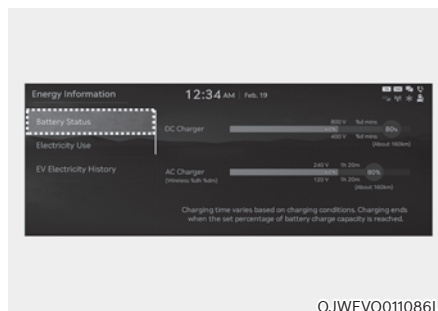
Energy information



Select 'EV → Energy Information' on the screen.

You can check battery information and energy consumption.

Battery information



You can check the reachable range, total battery power remaining, and expected charging time for each charge type.

- The distance to empty is calculated based on the electric energy efficiency whilst driving. The distance may change if the driving pattern changes.
- The distance to empty may vary according any the change in the driving pattern even if the same target battery charge level is set.

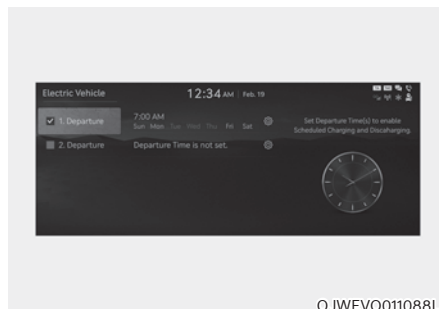
Next departure



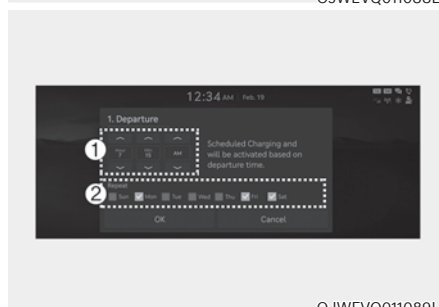
OJWEVQ011087L

Select 'EV → Next Departure' on the screen. You can set the date and time of when to charge the battery, climate control temperature, and other various functions.

Departure time



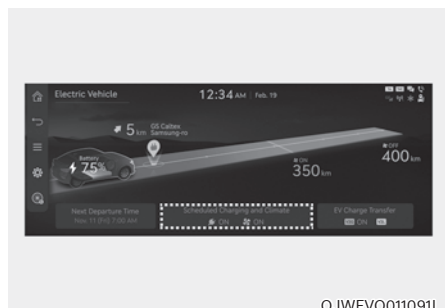
OJWEVQ011088L



OJWEVQ011089L

1. Set anticipated departure time for scheduled charging and target temperature.
2. Select the day of the week to activate scheduled charging and target temperature for departure time.

Charging and climate

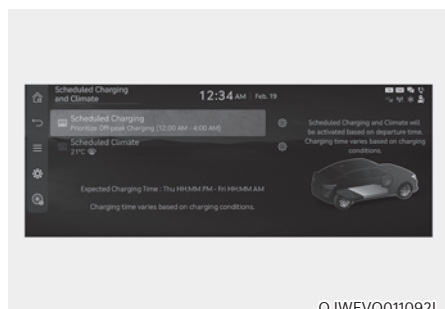


OJWEVQ011091L

Select 'EV → Schedule Charge and Climate' on the screen.

Information

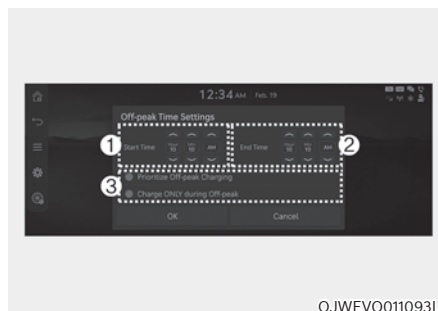
Vehicle must be connected with the charging connector at the time pre-scheduled time for the scheduled charging.



OJWEVQ011092L

You can set the date and time of when to charge the battery and the climate control temperature. Also, you may select the time to start charging using the off-peak time setting.

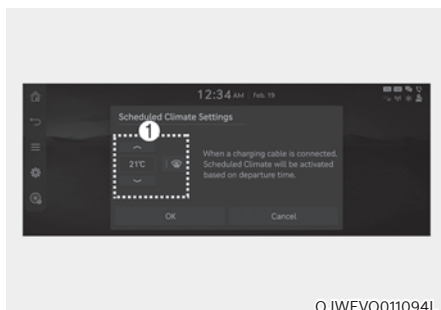
Off-peak time settings



OJWEVQ011093L

1. If selected, starts charging only on the designated off-peak time.
2. Set the most inexpensive time to complete charging.
3. You may select:
 - Prioritize Off-peak Charging: If selected, starts charging at off-peak time (may keep on charging beyond off-peak time to charge 100%).
 - Charge ONLY during Off-peak: If selected, charges only within off-peak time (may not charge 100%).

Target temperature settings



OJWEVQ011094L

1. Set target temperature.
 - If the target temperature (1) is set with the cable connected, the cabin temperature will be adjusted to the target temperature at departure time (without loss of high voltage battery charging level). The target temperature control starts 30 minutes before the departure time. In cold weather, preschedule heating helps enhance electric vehicle performance by heating the vehicle in advance.

Vehicle to load (V2L)

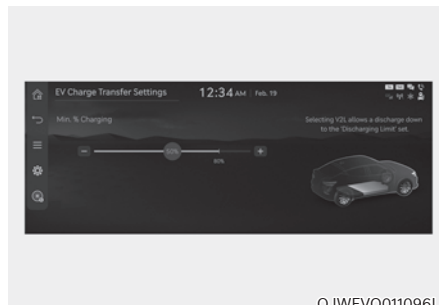
V2L is the system any AC power using the high voltage battery for operating several electrical products.



OJWEVQ011095L

Select 'EV → EV Charge Transfer' on the screen.

You can set the battery discharging limit for the high voltage battery for driving.



OJWEVQ011096L

If the vehicle reaches the limit, it automatically cuts the supply of electricity.

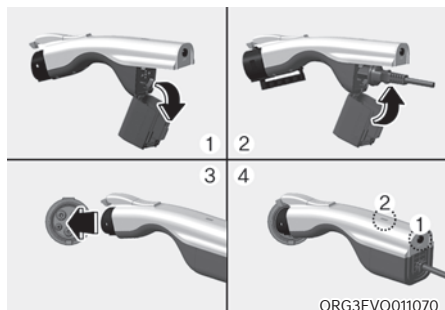
Energy information

Select 'EV → Energy Information' on the screen.

You can check battery discharging level.

How to connect

Outdoor



1. Open the cover of the V2L connector.
2. Close the cover after connecting home appliances and electrical products to the power outlet.



WARNING

Some types of plugs may not fit into the outlet cover of the V2L connector, causing incomplete closing of the cover.

Do not use the V2L connector on a rainy or snowy day if the outlet cover is not completely closed. There is a risk of fire and/or injury.

3. Connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet on the vehicle.

4. Press the switch (1) of the V2L connector and check whether the light (2) is on or off. If the light (2) does not turn on as expected check:

- The battery discharging limit for high voltage battery for driving in 'Electricity Use' menu on the screen. If it is higher than the current amounts of the high voltage battery, the light (2) does not turn on.
- Whether the light of V2L connector turns on or not.
- If the warning message for V2L appears on the cluster display, refer to the message entirely.
- If V2L does not operate having previously connected other home appliances, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

5. Press the switch (1) to turn off the light (2) the the V2L will be off. You can disconnect the V2L connector when the light (2) turns off and the charging connector lock is deactivated pressing the door unlock button on the smart key.



Information

- Please connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet within 60 seconds once the charging cover opens. To prevent theft after connecting, it changes automatically to auto lock disconnect so that it is impossible to disconnect.
- When using V2L, cancel any scheduled air conditioning setting. V2L operation may be blocked by scheduled air conditioning operating conditions.

Interior (if equipped)



1. Connect to the power outlet located at the bottom of the rear seat with the Vehicle Stop/Start button in the ON position.



2. Use a small flat blade tool (e.g. screwdriver or similar) to unlock the power outlet cover.



3. Check the operation status by the colour of the front indicator of the power outlet.
 - Blue: Standby
 - Red: No power supply even the power outlet is connected
 - Green: Normal power supply through the normal connection of the power outlet.

i Information

- V2L discharging mode will be shut off if the vehicle is turned off whilst using interior V2L.
- Opening the charging door or connecting the V2L connector to the charging inlet, causes the V2L discharging mode to shut off. If you want to use the indoor and outdoor V2L simultaneously, firstly connect the V2L connector to the charging inlet and then to the interior V2L.



CAUTION

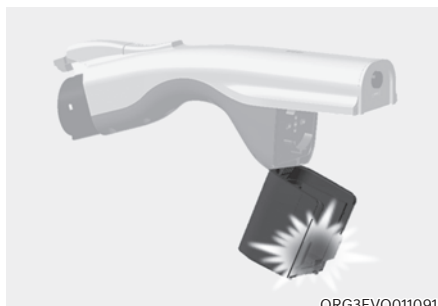
- To prevent accidents ensure you have read and understood the instructions in the owners manual.
- The V2L discharging mode is blocked automatically in case of overheating. When the discharging mode is blocked, check whether the V2L connector or power plug is contaminated, worn, corroded or broken. If, after a period of time, the temperature of the V2L drops to a safe level, the V2L can be used to charge again. Ensure suitable home appliances are used.
- Do not modify or disassemble the provided V2L connector. The failure caused by modifying or disassembling is not covered by the warranty.
- Do not drop the V2L connector or apply any impact to it.
- Do not place objects on the V2L connector.
- Be sure to disconnect the V2L connector from the vehicle when you are finished using V2L system.
- When the high voltage battery charge reaches the set discharging limit(%), the operation stops, and a warning message is displayed on the instrument panel. If you want to continue V2L operation, set the discharging limit(%) lower than the current battery charge.
- When using multiple electrical products, ensure they are below the maximum power capacity that can be supplied by the vehicle.
- If you use an electrical appliance that exceeds the maximum power capacity that the vehicle can supply, the operation will stop and a warning message will be displayed on the instrument panel. Make sure the total power consumption of the electrical appliance used does not exceed the V2L maximum power capacity.
- Some electrical products may not operate normally even if the product has power consumption less than the maximum power capacity provided by the vehicle.
 - Electrical products that require high power during initial operation.
 - Measuring devices that need to process accurate data.
 - Electrical products that are sensitive to inverter type AC chargers. (inverter : AC power is supplied through power semiconductor switching)
- Do not use products that require a continuous power supply, such as medical equipment. The power supply may be interrupted depending on the vehicle's condition.
- Insert the power plug fully and use an approved plug that meets the standard. If you use worn, corroded, broken or unapproved plugs, this might be a cause of a malfunction.
- Use a power plug with ground connection.
- Do not use with home appliances that require a high power supply, such as air conditioning, washing machine or dryer.
- Do not hang the home appliances onto the wire.

- Use only with devices with a national safety certification. For usage and precautions, refer to the manual of the device. (Electrical appliances, multi-outlets, cord extension cables, etc.)
- For devices being used outdoors, make sure to use a product which is waterproof or use it in a waterproof environment. Do not use in environments with rain or high humidity. (Electrical appliances, multi-outlets, cord extension cables, etc.)
- If there is a risk of lightning, do not use the V2L function outside the vehicle.
- Do not connect multiple portable multi-outlets.
- When using an extension cable, if the cable is twisted or overlapping itself this may cause a fire. Be sure to use the cable without twisting it.
- When using the vehicle's outdoor V2L connector, power is also supplied to the vehicle's indoor power outlet. Unplug electrical appliances that are not in use from the indoor power outlet.
- When using the V2L, the cooling fan in the vehicle motor compartment can operate automatically even if the vehicle is turned off. Do not put your hand near the cooling fan when V2L is in operation.



WARNING

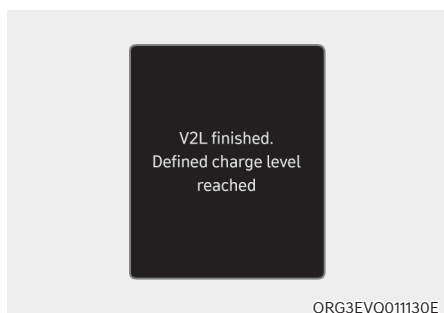
- Do not touch the V2L connector or the terminal or the vehicle charging inlet.
- Do not put metal objects into V2L connector or charging inlet. It might cause an electric shock.
- Do not touch the V2L connector, charging inlet or power plug with a wet hand. It might Please always use the V2L system with dry hands.
- Check for any foreign substances such as water or dust on the V2L connector, charging inlet or power plug before connecting. If you connect the V2L with foreign substances, it present, this may cause a fire or electric shock.
- Do not modify or disassemble the V2L connector. There is a risk of fire, electric shock or injury.
- When connecting and disconnecting the V2L connecting socket, be careful not to cause injury to your hands when opening and closing the V2L connector cover.
- Do not charge in the following conditions. An accident or injury might occur if:
 - The V2L connector, charging inlet, power plug or cable is damaged, corroded or rusted.
 - The connection part is loose.



ORG3EVQ011091

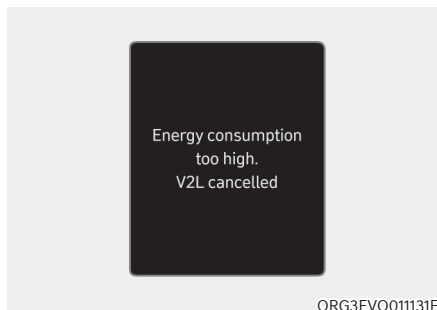
- Do not use if the sheath of any home appliance cables are damaged or broken. There is a risk of fire, electric shock or injury.
- Never use an electric heating appliance such as an iron, coffee pot or toaster in the vehicle. It may cause a fire and injury.
-  When using the V2L, the cooling fan in the vehicle motor compartment can operate automatically even if the vehicle is turned off. Do not put your hand near the cooling fan when the V2L is operational.

Cluster display messages



V2L finished. Defined charge level reached

When the high voltage battery level reaches the set discharging limit level, the V2L will stop and the warning will be displayed. If you want to use the V2L continuously, set the discharging limit level lower than the present battery level.



Energy consumption too high. V2L cancelled

If you use an electrical appliance that exceeds the maximum power output the vehicle can supply, it will stop working and display a warning message. Make sure that the total power consumption of your electrical appliance does not exceed the V2L maximum power output.



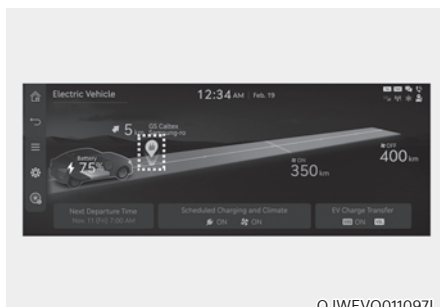
V2L conditions not met

If V2L is interrupted for any of the following reasons, a warning message is displayed.

- V2L connector switch off
- V2L connector overheating
- Opening the charging door whilst using the V2L indoor outlet

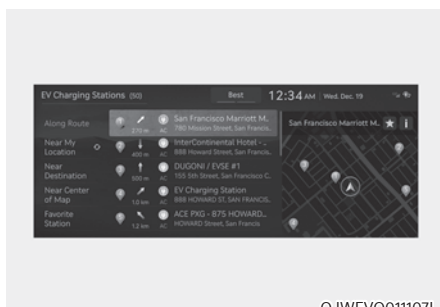
Make sure there are no problems with the V2L connector and the vehicle indoor outlet.

Nearby charging stations



OJWEVQ011097L

Select 'Search for charging stations' on the screen.



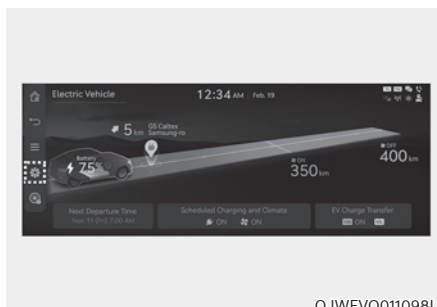
OJWEVQ011107L

The area surrounding the current location, the route selected and the set destination will all be searched for charging stations. If you select a charging station the detailed information for that charging station will be provided

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

EV settings



OJWEVQ011098L

Select 'EV → EV Settings' on the screen. You can set the charging limit, charging current, battery conditioning mode and utility mode functions.

Charging limit (Max. % Charge)



OJWEVQ011099L

- The target battery charge level can be selected when charged with an AC charger or DC charger.
- The charging level can be changed by 10%.
- If the target battery charge level is lower than the high voltage battery charge level, the battery will not be charged.

Charging current



- You can adjust the charging current for an AC charger. Select an appropriate charging current.
- If the charging process does not start or abruptly stops during charging, reselect another appropriate current and re-try charging the vehicle.
- Charging time varies depending on which charging current is selected.

Battery Conditioning Mode



You can select or deselect the Battery Conditioning Mode.

The Battery Conditioning Mode is efficient during the winter time when the high voltage battery temperature is low.

This mode is recommended to maintain driving and DC charging performances during winter by raising the battery temperature to an adequate level.

However, the driving distance may be reduced as energy is required to increase the battery temperature.

Also, if the battery temperature is low during driving or when the scheduled air conditioning/heating is activated, this mode is used to improve driving performance.

However, battery conditioning mode does not operate when the battery SOC is low to ensure driving distance.

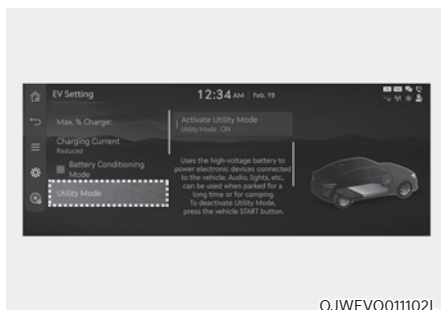


Information

Battery Conditioning Mode mode is available for the vehicles equipped with the battery heater.

Utility Mode

The high voltage battery is used instead of the 12V auxiliary battery for operating the convenient features of the vehicle. When driving is not necessary such as whilst camping or when stopping the vehicle for a long time, it is possible to use the electrical devices (audio, lights, air conditioning, heating, etc.) for longer periods of time.



OJWEVQ011102L

System Setting and Activation

System setting

The driver can activate the Utility mode function when the following conditions are satisfied.

- The vehicle is in the ready (**READY**) mode and the gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) is not malfunctioning.
- 'EV Settings→Utility Mode' is selected on the infotainment system screen.

System Activation

When the system is activated:

- The ready (**READY**) indicator will turn off, and the utility (**UTIL**) indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster, and the EPB is applied.
- All electric devices are usable but the vehicle cannot be driven.
- The EPB can be cancelled by pressing the EPB switch.

Gear cannot be shifted out of P (Park). If a shift attempt is made, a message "Shifting conditions not met" will be displayed on the infotainment system screen.

System Deactivation

The Utility mode can be deactivated by pressing the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. The function cannot be deactivated from the EV settings.

CHARGE TYPES FOR ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Charging Information

- **AC Charge:** The electric vehicle is charged by plugging into an AC charger installed at your home or a public charging station. (For further details, refer to the 'AC Charge'.)
- **DC Charge:** You can charge at high speeds at public charging stations. Refer to the respective company's manual that is provided for each DC charger type.
Battery performance and durability can deteriorate if the DC charger is used constantly.
Use of DC charge should be minimised in order to help prolong high voltage battery life.
- **Portable Charge:** The Electric vehicle can be charged by using household electricity. The electrical outlet at your home must comply with regulations and can safely accommodate the Voltage / Current (Amps) / Power (Watts) ratings specified on the portable charge.

Charging time information

Charging type	Standard battery type	
AC charge	Takes approx. 7 hours 20 minutes at room temperature when charged to 100%	
DC charge	350 kW charger	Takes about 18 minutes at room temperature when charged from 10% to 80%. Can be charged to 100%.
	50 kW charger	Takes about 73 minutes at room temperature when charged from 10% to 80%. Can be charged to 100%.
Portable charge	Takes approx. 33 hours at room temperature when charged to 100%.	

Information

- Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the high voltage battery may vary.
- If the charger is worn out, exposed, or there exists any type of damage, charging may stop for your safety. Use another charger that works normally.
- When charging the battery, an additional 3 minutes may be required to check battery condition.

Charging types

Category	AC Charge	DC Charge	Portable Charge
Charging Inlet (Vehicle)	 OJWEVQ011001L	 OJWEVQ011003L	 OJWEVQ011001L
Charging Connector	 ONE1Q011088L	 OAEEQ016022L	 ONE1Q011088L
Charging Outlet	 ORG3EVQ011071	 OSQCEQ019005	 ONX4EPHQ011019L
How to Charge	Use AC charger installed at home or public charging stations	Use the DC charger at public charging stations	Use household current

- Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the high voltage battery may vary.
- Actual charger image and charging method may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

CHARGE INDICATOR LAMP FOR ELECTRIC VEHICLE

When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

Charging status

Electric charging door



OJWEVQ011002L

Lamp status	Battery SOC [%]
 OJWEVQ011005L	0~12.5
 OJWEVQ011006L	12.5~25
 OJWEVQ011007L	25~37.5
 OJWEVQ011008L	37.5~50
 OJWEVQ011009L	50~62.5
 OJWEVQ011010L	62.5~75
 OJWEVQ011011L	75~87.5
 OJWEVQ011012L	87.5~100

Locking charging cable



OJWEVQ011103L

You may select when the charging connector can be locked and unlocked in the charging inlet.

Select 'EV → Charging Connector Locking Mode' in the infotainment.

i Information

- The charging inlet is locked during the DC charge regardless of 'Always lock'/'Locking whilst charging' mode. After charging is complete the locked charging inlet is unlocked.
- The charging inlet locks when the V2L connector is connected, regardless of the settings of charging connector locking.

After use, the lights can be turned off by pressing the switch on the V2L connector. The charging inlet can be unlocked by pressing the vehicle door unlock button.

When the Charging Connector Is Locked

	Always lock	Lock whilst charging	Do not lock (if equipped)
Before charging	O	X	X
Whilst charging	O	O	X
Finished charging	O	X	X

O : Locked

X : Not Locked

- 'Always lock' mode:

The connector locks when the charging connector is plugged into the charging inlet. The connector is locked until all doors are unlocked by the driver. This mode can be used to prevent charging cable theft.

- The charging connector unlocks when all doors are unlocked. If the charging cable is not disconnected within 15sec, it will automatically lock again.
- If the charging connector is unlocked when all doors are unlocked, but all doors are locked again, immediately, the connector will be automatically locked again.

- 'Lock whilst charging' mode:

The connector locks when charging starts. The connector unlocks when charging is complete. This mode can be used when charging in a public charging station.

- 'Do not lock' mode (if equipped):

The connector unlocks regardless of the state of charging. Press the charging connector release button, disconnect the connector. Be careful portable charger can be stolen if left unsupervised.

SCHEDULED CHARGING

Scheduled charging (if equipped)

- You can set-up a charging schedule for your vehicle using the Infotainment system or Genesis Connected Service application. Refer to the Multimedia manual or the Genesis Connected Service for detailed information about setting scheduled charging.
- Scheduled charging can only be done when using an AC charger or the portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box).



- When scheduled charging is set and the AC charger or the portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box) is connected for charging, the indicator lamp blinks sequentially from the first level to the last for about 3 minutes to indicate that scheduled charging is set.
- When scheduled charging is set, charging is not initiated immediately when the AC charger or portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box) is connected. When immediate charging is required, press the charging door open button on the smart key for 2 seconds or deactivate the scheduled charge setting using the infotainment system.

Refer to “AC Charge (Station) or Portable Charge” for details about connecting the AC charger and the portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box).

Charging precautions

■ AC Charger



■ DC Charger



Actual charger image and charging method may vary depending on the the charger manufacturer.

**WARNING**

- Electromagnetic waves that are generated from the charger can seriously impact electronic medical implants such as a cardiac pacemaker.
If you are fitted with any electronic medical implants (e.g. cardiac pacemaker), make sure to ask the medical team and manufacturer whether charging your electric vehicle will impact the operation of electronic medical implants. no need for a second such as in the same bullet point.
- Check to make sure there is no water or dust on the charging cable connector and plug before connecting to the charger and charging inlet. Connecting whilst there is water or dust on the charging cable connector and plug may cause a fire or electric shock.

**WARNING**

- Be careful not to touch the charging connector, charging plug, and the charging inlet when connecting the cable to the charger and the charging inlet on the vehicle.
- Comply with the following in order to prevent electrical shock when charging:
 - Use a waterproof charger.
 - Do not touch the charging connector and charging plug with your hands wet, or do not stand in water or snow whilst connecting the charging cable.
 - Be careful when there is lightning.
 - Be careful when the charging connector and plug are wet.

**WARNING**

- Immediately stop charging when you notice abnormal symptoms (odour, smoke).
- Replace the charging cable if the cable sheath is damaged to prevent electrical shock.
- When connecting or removing the charging cable, make sure to hold the charging connector handle and charging plug.
If you pull the cable itself (without using the handle), the the internal wires may be disconnected or get damaged. This may lead to electric shock or fire.

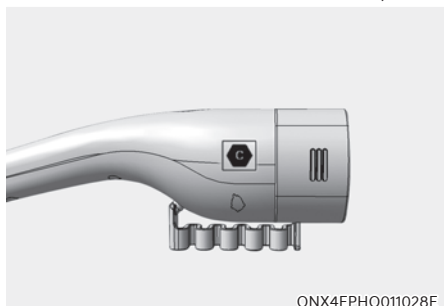
**CAUTION**

- Always keep the charging connector and charging plug in a clean and dry environment. Be sure to keep the charging cable in an environment where there is no water or moisture.
- Be sure to use only certified electric vehicle chargers. Using an uncertified charger may cause damage to the vehicle.
- Before charging the battery, turn the vehicle OFF.
- When the vehicle is switched OFF during charging, the cooling fan inside the motor compartment operate automatically. Do not touch the cooling fan whilst charging.
- Be careful not to drop the charging connector. The charging connector can be damaged.

How to check the symbol on the charging label



QJWEVQ011013L



ONX4EPHQ011028E

Charging label is located near charging inlet and you can find the suitable symbol for your vehicle type in the charging connector outlet.

Precautions for AC and portable charger charging

1. After opening the charging door, check the charging symbol at the bottom of the warning label.
2. Check the charging connector symbol of the AC and Trickle charger cable.
3. After checking the alphabet letter of the charging symbol, proceed the charging step (Refer to “Electric charging label symbol table” in this chapter).

Precautions for DC charging

1. After opening the charging door, check the charging symbol at the bottom of the warning label.
2. Check the charging connector symbol at the high speed charging station.
3. After checking the alphabet letter of the charging symbol, proceed the charging step (Refer to “Electric charging label symbol table” in this chapter).



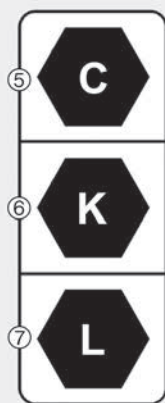
WARNING

Risk of failure, fire, injury, etc., expected when using the charging connector with unmatched symbol.

Electric charging label



OJWEV013027L



OJWEV013028L

1. Warning for high voltage
2. Symbol for charging door
3. For further details, refer to “How to check the symbol on the charging label” in this chapter.
4. Charging voltage and current
 - ⎵ : AC single phase
 - ≡ : AC 3 phase
- 5, 6, 7. Symbols for charging type. Refer to “Electric charging label symbol table”.

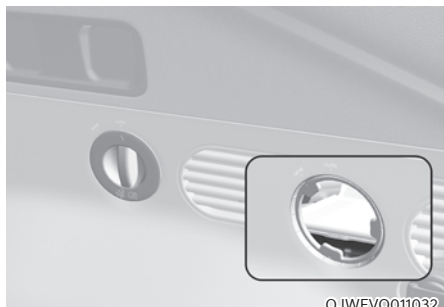
Electric charging label symbol table***AC and portable charger charging***

Supply Type	Configuration	Type of accessory	Voltage range	Symbol
AC	7P	Vehicle connector and vehicle inlet	≤480V RMS	

DC charging

Supply Type	Configuration	Type of accessory	Voltage range	Symbol
DC	7P COMBO	Vehicle connector and vehicle inlet	50 V to 500 V	
			200 V to 920 V	

Disconnecting charging connector in emergency



OJWEVQ011032

If the charging connector does not disconnect from the charging inlet due to battery discharge and failure of electric wires, open the tailgate and slightly pull the emergency cable located on the right side of the luggage compartment. The charging connector will be disconnected from the charging inlet.

AC charge

■ AC Charger



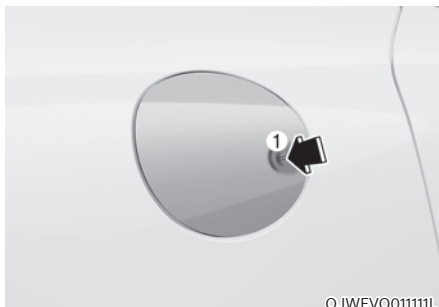
ORG3EVQ011071

Actual charger image and charging method may vary depending on the charger manufacturer.

How to Connect AC Charger

1. Press the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.

If charging is initiated without the gear in P (Park), the charging will start after the gear is automatically shifted to P (Park).



OJWEVQ011111L

3. Open charging door using the push button on electric charge door (1. triangle symbol) or button on smart key.



Information

If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather, tap lightly or remove any ice near the charging door. Do not try to forcibly open the charging door.

4. Check if there is dust on the charging connector and charging inlet.
5. Hold the charging connector handle and connect it to the vehicle charging inlet. Push the connector all the way in. If the charging connector and charging terminal are not connected properly, this may cause a fire.

Information

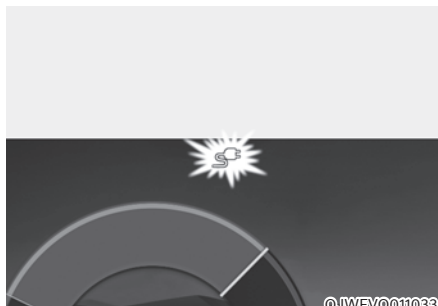
Locking Charging Cable

Select 'EV → Charging Connector Locking Mode' in the infotainment system menu. The charging connector will lock to the inlet depending upon the locking mode selected within the infotainment.

- **Always mode :** The connector locks when the charging connector is plugged into the charging inlet.
- **Whilst charging mode :** The connector locks when charging starts.

For more details, refer to "Locking Charging Cable" in this chapter.

6. Connect the charging plug to the electric outlet at an AC charging station to start charging.



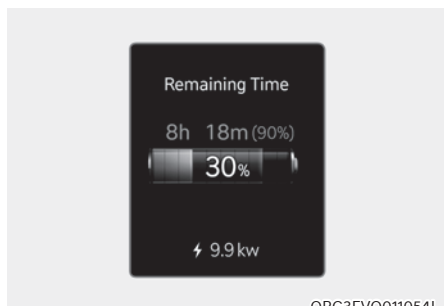
7. Check if the charging indicator light () of the high voltage battery on the instrument cluster is turned ON. Charging is not active when the charging indicator light () is OFF. If the charging cable is not connected to the vehicle side inlet properly, charging may not start. In this case, try reconnecting charging cable to veh inlet again.

Information

To control the temperature of the high voltage battery whilst charging or when the battery temperature is high, the air-conditioning is used to cool down the battery. This may generate noise or vibration from operation of the air-conditioning compressor and cooling fan, but it is a normal condition when charging the high voltage battery. Also, the air-conditioning performance may be reduced due to operation of the cooling system to charge the high voltage battery. This is a normal condition.

Information

- Even though charging is possible with the Start/Stop button in the ON/START position, for your safety, start charging when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park). After charging has started, you can use electrical components such as the radio by pressing the Start/Stop button to the ACC or ON position.
- During AC charging, the radio reception may be poor.
- During charging, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear.



ORG3EVQ011054L

8. After charging has started, the estimated charging time is displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute.

If you open the driver's door whilst charging, the estimated charging time is also displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute. When scheduled charging or scheduled air-conditioning/heating is set, the estimated charging time is displayed as "--".

Information

Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the battery may vary.

Checking Charging Status

When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

For more details, refer to 'Charge Indicator Lamp for Electric Vehicle' in this chapter.

How to Disconnect AC Charger

■ AC Charger



ORG3EVQ011071

1. When charging is complete, remove the charging plug from the electrical outlet of the AC charging station.



2. Press release button, then remove charging connector from veh inlet.

i Information

To prevent charging cable theft, the charging connector cannot be disconnected from the inlet when the doors are locked or the charging connector is in the 'Locking whilst charging' mode. Unlock all doors to disconnect the charging connector from the inlet.

However, if the vehicle is in the charging connector 'Locking whilst charging' mode, the charging connector automatically unlocks from the inlet when charging is completed.

If you attempt to disconnect the charging connector without pressing the release button, the connector and the inlet may be damaged. For more details, refer to "Charging Connector 'Always lock'/'Locking whilst charging' Mode" in this chapter.

If the release button does not work even after the all doors are unlocked, pull the emergency cable (located on the right side of luggage compartment) and then press the release button to remove charging connector from vehicle inlet. If the release button still does not work, we recommend to consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

i Information

Some connectors installed in public charging stations stop charging by pressing the charge release button whilst charging is locked, and the connector can be disconnected.

3. Make sure to completely close the charging door.
4. Close the protection caps of the charging connector and the charging plug to protect them from foreign substances.
5. If the personal charging connector is used, store the connector in the cable compartment.

DC charge

■ DC Charger



OSQCEQ019005

You can charge at high speeds at public charging stations. Refer to the respective company's manual that is provided for each DC charger type.

Battery performance and durability can deteriorate if the DC charger is used constantly.

Use of DC charge should be minimised in order to help prolong high voltage battery life.

Actual charger image and charging method may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.

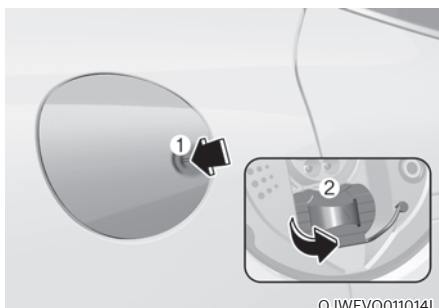


Information

If you use a DC charger when the vehicle is already fully charged, some DC chargers will send out an error message. When the vehicle is fully charged, do not charge the vehicle.

How to Connect DC Charger

1. Press the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.



OJWEVQ011014L

3. Push the charging door where the triangle symbol (1) is located to open. The charging door opens only when the vehicle is unlocked.
4. Remove the inlet cover (2) and allow to hang.



Information

If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather, tap lightly or remove any ice near the charging door. Do not try to forcibly open the charging door.

5. Check whether there is dust or foreign substances inside the charging connector and charging inlet.
6. Hold the charging connector handle and connect it to the vehicle charging inlet. Push the connector all the way in. If the charging connector and charging terminal are not connected properly, this may cause a fire.

Refer to the manual for each type of DC charger for how to charge and remove the charger.



7. Check if the charging indicator light (☛) of the high voltage battery on the instrument cluster is turned ON. Charging is not active when the charging indicator light (☛) is OFF.

When charging cable is not connected properly to inlet, press release button, remove charging cable and reconnect again.

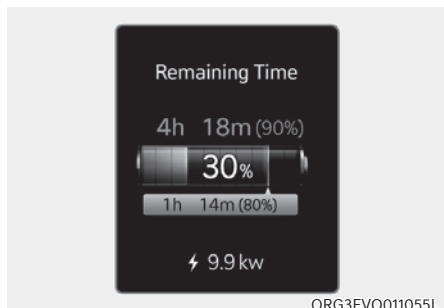
During cold weather, DC charging may not be available to prevent high voltage battery degradation.

i Information

To control the temperature of the high voltage battery whilst charging or when the battery temperature is high, the air-conditioning is used to cool down the battery. This may generate noise or vibration from operation of the air-conditioning compressor and cooling fan, but it is a normal condition when charging the high voltage battery. Also, the air-conditioning performance may be reduced due to operation of the cooling system to charge the high voltage battery. This is a normal condition.

i Information

- Even though charging is possible with the Start/Stop button in the ON/START position, for your safety, start charging when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park). After charging has started, you can use electrical components such as the radio by pressing the Start/Stop button to the ACC or ON position.
- During charging, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear.



8. After charging has started, the estimated charging time is displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute.

If you open the driver seat door whilst charging, the estimated charging time is also displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute.

i Information

- Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the battery may vary.
- In rare cases, you might hear a high frequency noise (very little beep sound) outside the vehicle when charging with a 400V DC charger that is deteriorated or has long communication delay. The high frequency noise can be generated only when the vehicle tries to reduce its own electromagnetic waves to keep DC charging possible.

Do not worry about this little beep noise, this is an intentional function of the vehicle and does not affect any charging performance or the vehicle itself at all.

Checking Charging Status

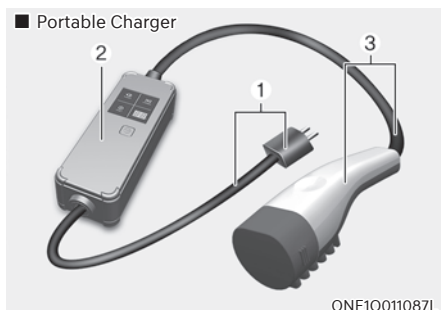
When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

For more details, refer to 'Charge Indicator Lamp for Electric Vehicle' in this chapter.

How to Disconnect DC Charger

1. Press release button and then remove charging connector when DC charging is completed, or after you stop charging using the DC charger. Refer to each respective DC charger manual for details about how to disconnect the charging connector.
2. Make sure to completely close the charging door.

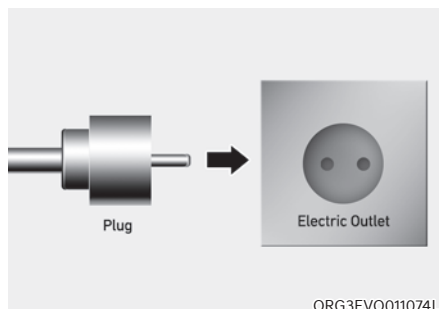
Portable charge



- (1) Code and Plug (Code set)
- (2) Control Box
- (3) Charging Cable and Charging Connector

Portable Charge can be used when AC Charge or DC Charge is not available, by using household electricity.

How to Set the Charge Level of the Portable Charger



1. Check the current rating of the electric outlet prior to connecting the plug to the outlet.
2. Connect the plug to a household electric outlet.
3. Check the display window on the control box.



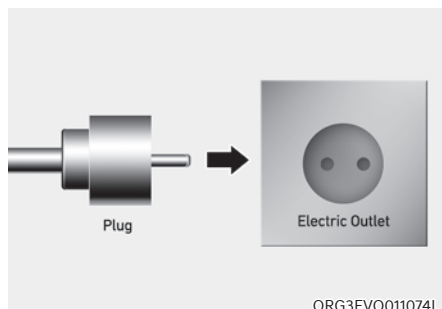
4. Press the button (1) on the front of the control box for 2 to 8 seconds to adjust the charge level. (Refer to charging cable type and example for setting the charge level.)
5. The charge level on the display window of the control box changes every time you press the button (1).
6. When setting the charge level is complete, start charging according to the portable charge instructions.

* Example for setting the ICCB charge level
The example is only for reference and may vary according to the surrounding environment.

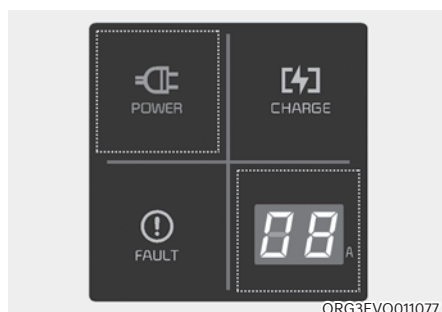
Outlet current	ICCB charge level	Control box display window
14-16A	12A	 ORG3EVQ011076
13-12A	10A	
11-10A	8A	
9-8A	6A	

 **CAUTION**
Please make sure that charge level selection matches the capacity of your circuit breaker to avoid blowing a fuse.

How to Connect Portable Charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box)

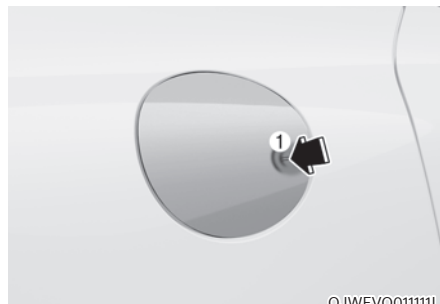


1. Connect the plug to a household electric outlet.



2. Check if the power lamp (green) illuminates on the control box.
3. Press the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
4. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.

If charging is initiated without the gear in P (Park), the charging will start, only after gear is shifted to P (Park).



5. Push the charging door where the tringle symbol (1) is located to open. The charging door opens only when the vehicle is unlocked.

i Information

If you cannot open the charging door due to freezing weather, tap lightly or remove any ice near the charging door. Do not try to forcibly open the charging door.

6. Remove the protection caps of the charging connector and the charging plug.
7. Hold the charging connector handle and connect it to the vehicle charging inlet. Push the connector all the way in. If the charging connector and charging terminal are not connected properly, and charging may not start.

i Information

Locking Charging Cable

Select 'EV → Charging Connector Locking Mode' in the infotainment menu. The charging connector will lock to the inlet depending upon the locking mode selected within the infotainment.

- **Always mode :** The connector locks when the charging connector is plugged into the charging inlet.
- **Whilst charging mode :** The connector locks when charging starts.

For more details, refer to "Locking Charging Cable" in this chapter.



8. Charging starts automatically (charging lamp illuminates).



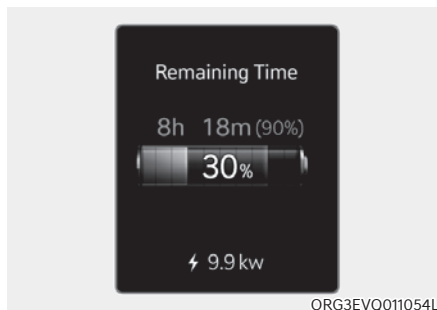
9. Check if the charging indicator light (☎) of the high voltage battery on the instrument cluster is turned ON. Charging is not active when the charging indicator light (☎) is OFF.

When charging cable is not connected properly to inlet, press release button, remove charging cable and reconnect again.

i Information

Even though charging is possible with the Start/Stop button in the ON/START position, for your safety, start charging when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park). After charging has started, you can use electrical components such as the radio by pressing the Start/Stop button to the START or ON position.

During charging, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear.



10. After charging has started, the estimated charging time is displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute.

If you open the driver's door whilst charging, the estimated charging time is also displayed on the cluster display for about 1 minute. When scheduled charging or scheduled air-conditioning/heating is set, the estimated charging time is displayed as "--".

i Information

Depending on the condition and durability of the high voltage battery, charger specifications, and ambient temperature, the time required for charging the battery may vary.

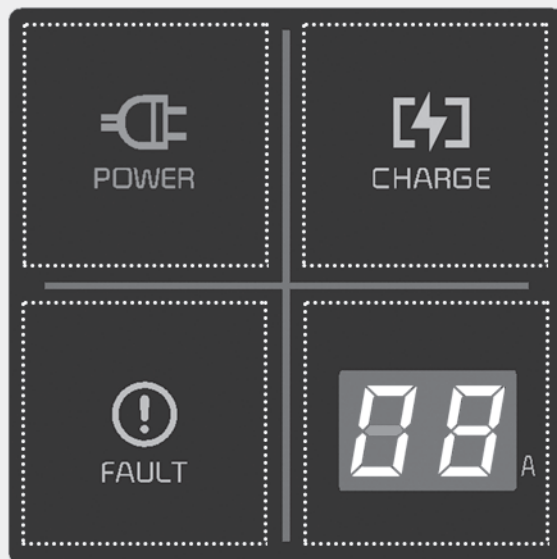
Checking Charging Status

When charging the high voltage battery, the charge level can be checked from outside the vehicle.

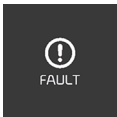
For more details, refer to "Charge indicator lamp for electric vehicle" in this chapter.

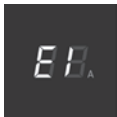
Charging Status Indicator Lamp for Portable Charger

■ Control Box



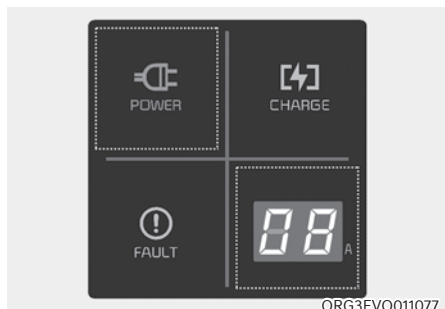
ORG3EVQ011079

Indicator	Details
POWER	 On : Power on
CHARGE	 On : Charge Blink : Current limit due to high plug temperature or high internal temperature
FAULT	 Blink : Charging interrupted

Indicator		Details		
Error code		On : Error whilst charging/ Error during self-diagnosis		
		Error code	Item	Cause
		E1	Control Pilot communication	Vehicle communication error
		E2	Leakage	Current leakage
		E3		Charger error
		E4	Plug temperature	Plug overtemperature warning
		E5		Plug temperature failure
		E6		Charger error
		E7	Overcurrent	Charging overcurrent warning
		E8	Internal temperature	Charger overheating
		E9		Charger error
		F1	Relay fusion	Charger error
		F2	Ground Monitoring/ Interrupt	Poor grounding of outlet
		F3	Switched mode power supply power failure (North America Only)	Switched mode power supply error (voltage failure)
		F4		Switched mode power supply error (abnormal voltage)
		F5	Control Pilot voltage error	Control Pilot (-) voltage error
		F6		Control Pilot (+) voltage error
		F7	Temperature sensor error	Plug temperature sensor error
		F8		PCB internal temperature sensor error

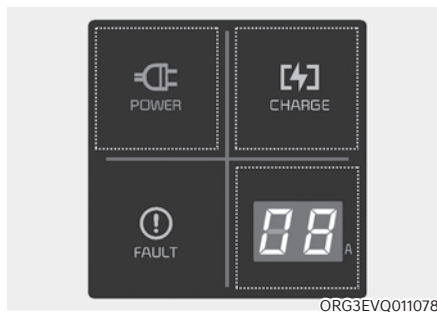
Indicator	Details
	12 A
	10 A
	8 A
	6 A
CHARGE LEVEL The charging current changes whenever the button (1) is pressed for less than 1 sec with the charger plugged into an electrical outlet but not the vehicle. * The control box  ORG3EVQ011075	

Status / Diagnosis / Countermeasure



- Charging connector plugged into vehicle (POWER Green ON)
- Plug connected to an electrical outlet (POWER Green ON)

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.



Whilst charging

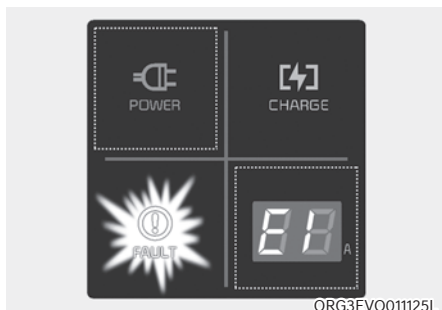
- Charge indicator (POWER Green ON / CHARGE Blue ON)
- Charging current



Before plugging charging connector into vehicle if the POWER Green - ON or FAULT Red - blinks, this indicates:

- Abnormal temperature
- ICCB (In-Cable Control Box) failure

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.



ORG3EVQ011125L

Plugged into vehicle if the POWER Green - ON or FAULT Red - blinks, this indicates:

- Diagnostic device failure
- Current leakage
- Abnormal temperature

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.



ORG3EVQ011127L

Power saving mode

- 7-segment display is turned off if there is no status change for more than 1 minute.



ORG3EVQ011126L

- Leakage current failure if the POWER Green - ON or FAULT Red - blinks, this indicates:
- After disconnecting and reconnecting the power plug, press and release the button for 2 seconds or longer to clear the error.

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

How to Disconnect Portable Charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box)



OJWEVQ012145L

1. Hold the charging connector handle and pull it out.

i Information

To prevent charging cable theft, the charging connector cannot be disconnected from the inlet when the doors are locked or the charging connector is in the 'Locking whilst charging' mode. Unlock all doors to disconnect the charging connector from the inlet.

However, if the vehicle is in the charging connector 'Always lock' mode, the charging connector automatically unlocks from the inlet when charging is completed.

If you attempt to disconnect the charging connector without pressing the release button, the connector and the inlet may be damaged.

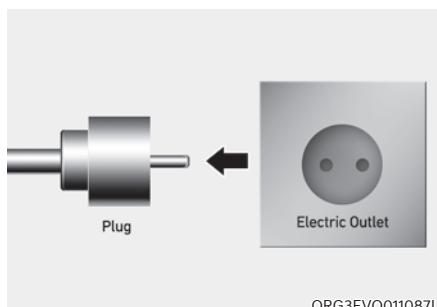
For more details, refer to "Charging Connector 'Always lock'/'Locking whilst charging' Mode" in this chapter.

If the release button does not work even after the all doors are unlocked, pull emergency cable (located in right side of luggage compartment) and press the release button in the connector to disconnect it from the vehicle. If the release button still does not work, we recommend to consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

i Information

Some connectors installed in public charging stations stop charging by pressing the charge release button whilst charging is locked, and the connector can be disconnected.

2. Make sure to completely close the charging door.



ORG3EVQ011087L

3. Disconnect the plug from the household electric outlet. Do not pull the cable when disconnecting the plug.
4. Close the protection caps of the charging connector and the charging plug to protect them from foreign substances.
5. If the personal charging connector is used, store the connector in the cable compartment.

Precautions for Portable Charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box)

- Use the portable charger that is certified by Genesis vehicle.
- Do not try to repair, disassemble, or adjust the portable charger.
- Do not use an extension cord or adapter.
- Stop using immediately when failure occurs.
- Do not touch the plug and charging connector with wet hands.
- Do not touch the terminal part of the AC charging connector and the AC charging inlet on the vehicle.
- Do not connect the charging connector to voltage that does not comply with regulations.
- Do not use the portable charger if it is worn out, exposed, or there is existing damage on the portable charger.
- If the ICCB case and AC charging connector are damaged, cracked, or the wires are exposed in any way, do not use the portable charger.
- Do not let children operate or touch the portable charger.
- Keep the control box free of water.
- Keep the normal charging connector or plug terminal free of foreign substances.
- Do not step on the cable or cord. Do not pull the cable or cord and do not twist or bend it.
- Do not charge when there is lightning.
- Do not drop the control box or place a heavy object on the control box.
- Do not place an object that can generate high temperatures near the charger when charging.
- Charging with the worn out or damaged household electric outlet can increase the risk of electric shock. If you have doubts about the condition of a household electric outlet condition, have it checked by a licenced electrician.
- Stop using the portable charger immediately if the household electric outlet or any components are overheated or you notice burning odours.

CHARGING THE ELECTRIC VEHICLE (ABRUPT STOP)

Action to be taken when charging stops abruptly

When the high voltage battery does not charge:

1. Check the charging setting for the vehicle. Refer to “Charge Management”, in this chapter (for example, if target battery charge level is lower than high voltage battery charge level, If scheduled charging is set, charging is not initiated immediately when the AC charger or portable charger (ICCB: In-Cable Control Box) is connected.)
 2. Check the operation status of AC charger, portable charger and DC charger.
(Charging Status Indicator Lamp for Portable Charger, refer to “Checking Charging Status” for trickle charge in this chapter.)
- * Actual method for indicating the charging status may vary in accordance with the charger manufacturer.
3. When the vehicle does not charge and a warning message appears on the cluster display, check the corresponding message. Refer to “Cluster display messages”, in this chapter.
 - If the charging connector and charging inlet are not connected properly, the connector may droop or vibrate.
 - In this case, hold the charging connector handle and push it all the way in.
 4. If the vehicle is properly charged when charged with another working charger, contact the charger manufacturer.
 5. If the vehicle does not charge when charged with another normally working charger, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis Repairer for inspection.
 6. If charging fails and the service warning light () illuminates on the instrument cluster, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

Stopping charging immediately

If you cannot stop charging the electric vehicle using the charger whilst charging with an AC charger, DC charger, or portable charger, follow the instructions below:

1. Press the door lock or unlock button of the vehicle.
2. Within 15 seconds after pressing the button, press the charging door HOLD button on the smart key for more than two seconds.

DRIVING ELECTRIC VEHICLE

How to start the vehicle

1. Holding the smart key, sit in the driver's seat.
2. Fasten the seat belt before starting the vehicle.
3. Make sure to engage the parking brake.
4. Turn OFF all electrical devices.
5. Press and hold the brake pedal whilst pressing the Start/Stop button.



OJWEVQ012034

6. When the ready (**READY**) indicator is ON, you can drive the vehicle.

When the ready (**READY**) indicator is OFF, you cannot drive the vehicle. Start the vehicle again.

7. Press and hold the brake pedal and shift to the desired gear position.

Information

Whilst the charging cable is connected, the gear cannot be shifted from P (Park) to any other gear for safety reasons.

8. Release the parking brake and slowly release the brake pedal. Check if the vehicle slowly moves forward, then press the accelerator pedal.

How to Shut Off the vehicle

1. Hold down the brake pedal whilst the vehicle is stopped.
2. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, shift to P (Park).
3. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, engage the parking brake.
4. Whilst pressing the brake pedal, press the Start/Stop button and turn off the vehicle.



OJWEVQ012035

5. Check if the ready (**READY**) indicator is turned OFF on the instrument cluster.

When the ready (**READY**) indicator is ON and the gear is in a position other than P (Park), the driver can accidentally press the accelerator pedal, causing the vehicle to move unexpectedly.

Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS)

The Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS) generates sound for pedestrians to hear because there is no sound because there is no sound whilst the Electric Vehicle (EV) is operating.

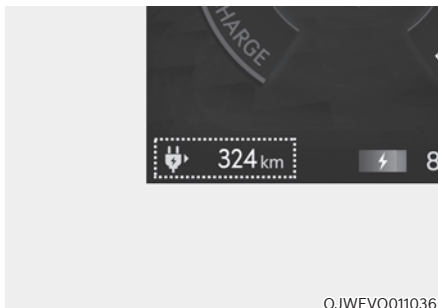
- If the vehicle is in the ready (**READY**) mode and any gear other than P (Park) is selected, the VESS will be operated.
- When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), an additional warning sound will be heard.



CAUTION

- **The vehicle is much quieter whilst driving than a conventional petrol-powered vehicle. Be aware of your surroundings and always drive safely.**
- **After you park the vehicle or whilst you are waiting at a traffic light, check whether there are children or obstacles around the vehicle.**
- **Check if there is something behind the vehicle when driving in reverse. Pedestrians may not hear the sound of the vehicle.**

Distance to empty



The distance to empty range displayed will vary depending upon which drive mode is selected in Drive Mode Integrated Control System.

For more information, refer to “Drive Mode Integrated Control System” in chapter 6.

When destination is not set

- On average, a vehicle can drive about 320 km.
- Under certain circumstances when the air-conditioning/heating is ON, the distance to empty is impacted, resulting in a possible distance range from 300 km. When using the heating during cold weather or driving at high speed, the high voltage battery consumes a lot more electricity. This may reduce the distance to empty significantly.
- After ‘0 km’ has been displayed, the vehicle can drive an additional 3~8 km depending on driving speed, air-conditioning/heating, weather, driving style, and other factors.

- Distance to empty that is displayed on the instrument cluster after completing a recharge may vary significantly depending on previous operating patterns.

When previous driving patterns include high speed driving, resulting in the high voltage battery using more electricity than usual, the estimated distance to empty is reduced. When the high voltage battery uses little electricity in ECO mode, the estimated distance to empty increases.

- Distance to empty may depend on many factors such as the charge amount of the high voltage battery, weather, temperature, durability of the battery, geographical features, and driving style. When the ambient temperature is low such as in winter, the actual driving distance may reduce due to degradation of the battery.
- Natural degradation may occur with the high voltage battery depending on the number of years the vehicle is used. This may reduce the distance to empty.

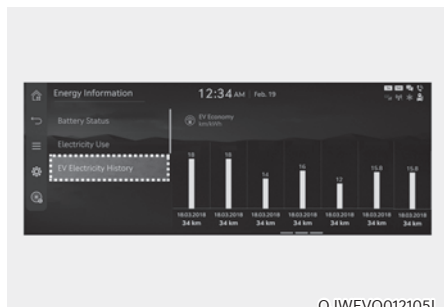
When destination is set

When the destination is set, the distance to empty may change. The distance to empty is recalculated using the information of the destination. However, the distance to empty may vary significantly based on traffic conditions, driving habits and condition of the vehicle.

Tips for improving distance to empty

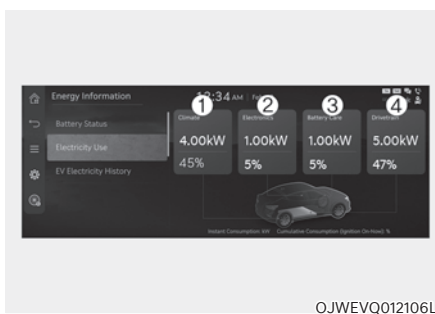
- If you operate the air-conditioning/heating too much, the driving battery uses too much electricity. This may reduce the distance to empty. Therefore, it is recommended that you set the cabin temperature to 22°C AUTO. This setting that has been certified by various assessment tests to maintain optimal energy consumption rates whilst keeping the temperature fresh.
Turn OFF the air-conditioning/heating if you do not need them.
- When the air-conditioning/heating systems are ON, the energy consumption is reduced if recirculation mode is selected instead of selecting the fresh mode. The fresh mode requires large amount of energy consumption as the outside air has to be re-heated or cooled.
- When using the air-conditioning/heating systems use the DRIVER ONLY or scheduled air conditioner/ heater function.
- Press and hold the accelerator pedal to maintain speed and drive economically.
- Gradually press and release the accelerator pedal when accelerating or decelerating.
- Always maintain specified tyre pressures.
- Do not use unnecessary electrical components whilst driving.
- Do not load unnecessary items in the vehicle.
- Do not mount parts that may increase air resistance.

Electric energy economy history



It is possible to check the history of electric energy economy with the date and distance of previous driving. The information displayed is the most efficient electric energy economy record.

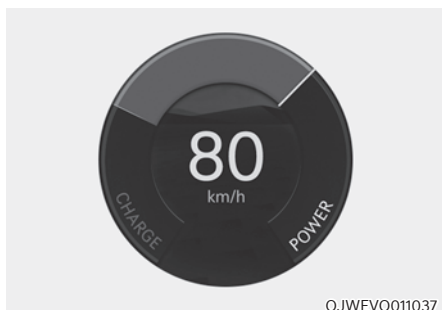
Electricity use



In order to check the current energy consumption for each system of the vehicle, select 'EV → Electricity Use' on the screen.

1. 'Climate' shows the power and energy consumption which are used by the air-conditioning/heating.
2. 'Electronics' shows the power and energy consumption which are used by the vehicle systems including the cluster display, infotainment system (speaker and navigation), headlamps, vehicle control unit, etc.
3. 'Battery care' shows the momentary power and energy consumption which are used when:
 - Operating the winter mode to increase the battery temperature during winter to improve the driving performance.
 - Cooling down the battery temperature during summer to prevent over heating of the battery.
4. 'Driving' shows the total power and energy consumption of the heating motor's driving energy and regenerative energy.

Power/Charge Gauge



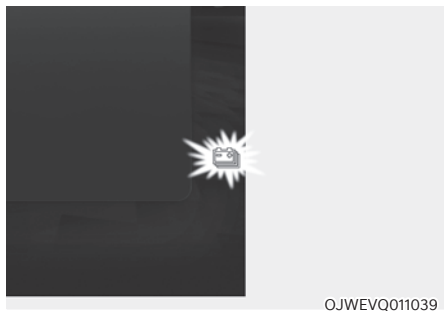
The Power/Charge Gauge shows the energy consumption and recovery status of the electric motor.

- **POWER:**
It shows discharging status of the electric motor when vehicle is accelerating or driving on an uphill gradient. The more electric energy is discharged (used), the higher the gauge level.
- **CHARGE:**
It shows the charging status of the electric motor when vehicle is decelerating or driving on a downhill gradient (being charged by the regenerative brakes). The more electric energy is charged, the higher the gauge level.

State Of Charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery



- The SOC gauge shows the charging status of the high voltage battery.
- The lower the SOC %, the lower the energy is stored in high voltage battery, and the more battery charging is required to increase driving range. 100 % indicates that the driving battery is fully charged.
- When driving on highways or motorways, make sure to check in advance if the driving battery is charged enough.



1. When the remaining battery is lower than 10 % on the SOC gauge, the warning light (🔋⚡) turns ON to alert you of the battery level.
2. When the warning light (🔋⚡) turns ON, the vehicle can drive an additional 30–50 km depending on the driving speed, air-conditioning/heating, weather, driving style, and other factors. Charging is required.

NOTICE

When the high voltage battery level is low, the power down indicator light illuminates and the vehicle power is limited. Charge the battery immediately since your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON.

Warning and Indicator lights (related to electric vehicle)

Ready indicator

READY

This indicator illuminates:

When the vehicle is ready to be driven.

- ON : Normal driving is possible.
- OFF : Normal driving is not possible, or a problem has occurred.
- Blinking : Emergency driving.

When the ready indicator goes OFF or blinks, there is a problem with the system. In this case, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Service Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a problem with related parts of the electric vehicle control system, such as sensors, etc.

When the warning light illuminates whilst driving, or does not go OFF after starting the vehicle, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Power Down Warning Light

This indicator light illuminates:

- To ensure the safety of the high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited for the following reasons. (Unless both Service Warning Light and Power Down Indicator Light illuminate at the same time, it is not a failure.)
 - The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
 - The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
 - The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- **Do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly when the power down warning light is ON.**
- **When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the power down indicator light illuminates. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON due to the limitation of vehicle power.**

Charging Indicator Light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the charging cable is connected

High Voltage Battery Level Warning Light

This warning light illuminates:

- When the high voltage battery level is low.
- When the warning light turns ON, charge the battery immediately.

Regenerative Brake Warning Light

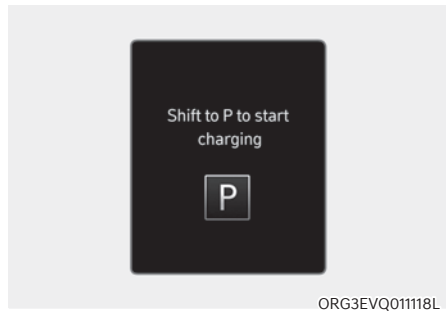
This warning light illuminates:

When the regenerative brake does not operate and the brake does not perform well. This causes the Brake Warning light (red) and Regenerative Brake Warning Light (yellow) to illuminate simultaneously.

In this case, drive safely and we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The operation of the brake pedal may be more difficult than normal and the braking distance can increase.

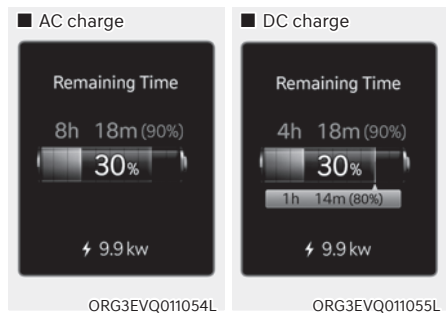
Cluster display messages
Shift to P to start charging



This message is displayed if you connect the charging cable without the gear in the P (Park) position.

Shift to P (Park) before connecting the charging cable.

Remaining time

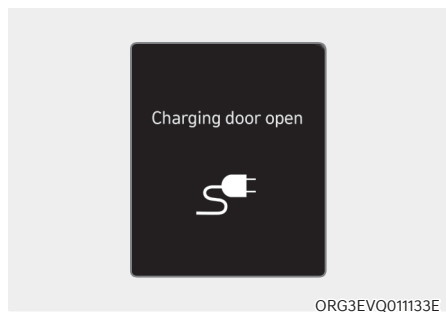


This message displays how much time remains until the battery is charged to the selected target battery charge level.

Unplug vehicle to start

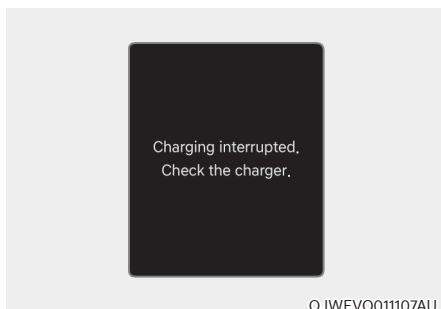


This message is displayed when you start the vehicle without unplugging the charging cable. Unplug the charging cable, and then turn on the vehicle.



This message is displayed when the vehicle is driven with the charging door opened. Close the charging door and then start driving.

Charging interrupted. Check the charger.

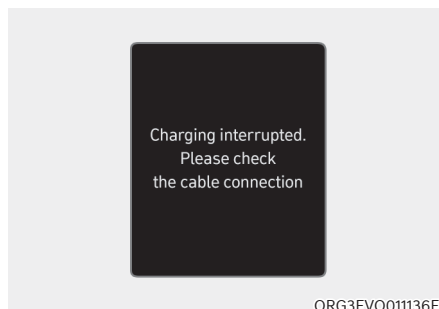


OJWEVQ011107AU

- This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped for the reasons below:
 - There is a problem with the external AC charger or DC charger
 - The external AC charger stopped charging
 - The charging cable is damaged

In this case, check whether there is any problem with the external AC or DC charger and charging cable. If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a normally operating AC charger or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Charging interrupted. Please check the cable connection



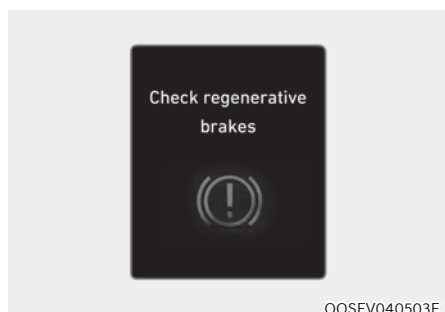
ORG3EVQ011136E

This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped because the charging connector is not correctly connected to the charging inlet.

In this case, separate the charging connector and re-connect it and check whether there is any problem (external damage, foreign substances, etc.) with the charging connector and charging inlet.

If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a replacement charging cable or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

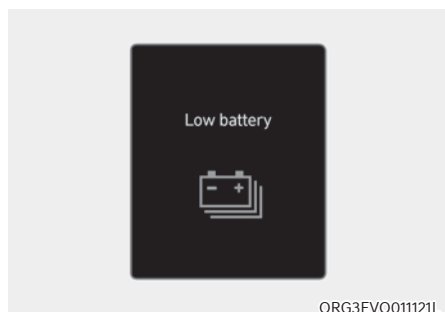
Check regenerative brakes



This warning message is displayed when the regenerative brake system does not work properly.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Low battery

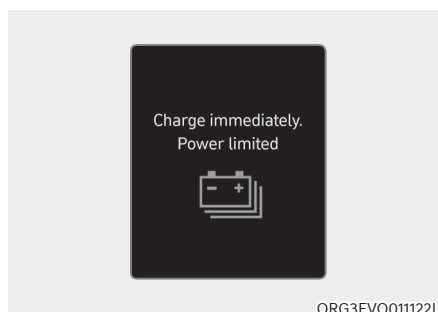


When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 12%, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light (🔋) on the instrument cluster will turn ON simultaneously.

Charge the high voltage battery immediately.

Charge immediately. Power limited

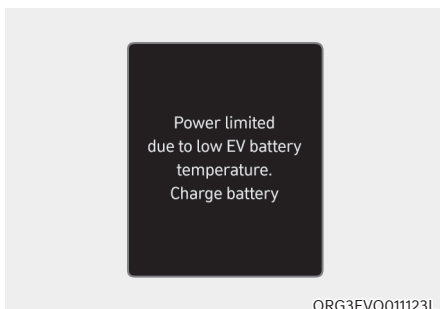


When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 6%, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light (🔋) on the instrument cluster will turn on simultaneously.

The vehicle's power will be reduced to minimise the energy consumption of the high voltage battery. Charge the battery immediately.

Power limited due to low EV battery temperature. Charge battery



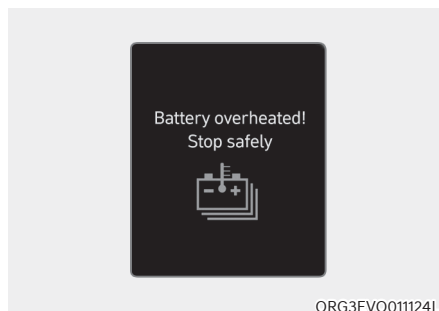
Both warning messages are displayed to protect the electric vehicle system when outside temperatures are low. If the high voltage battery charging level is low and parked outside in low temperatures for a long time, vehicle power could be limited.

Charging the battery before driving helps increase power.

NOTICE

If these warning messages still display even after the ambient temperature has increased, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

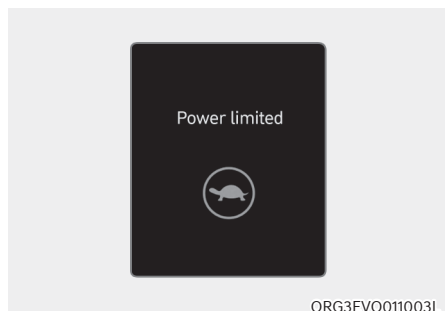
Battery overheated! Stop safely



This warning message is displayed to protect the battery and electric vehicle systems when the high voltage battery temperature is too high.

Turn off the Start/Stop button and stop the vehicle so that the battery temperature decreases.

Power limited



This warning message is displayed:

- To ensure the safety of the high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited for the following reasons. (Unless both Service Warning Light and Power Down Indicator Light illuminate at the same time, it is not a failure.)
 - The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
 - The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
 - The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- **Do not accelerate or start the vehicle suddenly when the power down warning light is ON.**
- **When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the warning message is displayed. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the warning message displayed due to the limitation of vehicle power.**

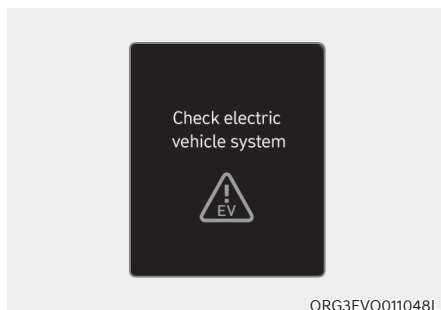
Stop safely and check power supply



This warning message is displayed when a failure occurs in the power supply system.

In this case, park the vehicle in a safe location and we recommend that you have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorised Genesis repairer and have the vehicle inspected.

Check electric vehicle system



This warning message is displayed when there is a problem with the electric vehicle control system.

Refrain from driving when the warning message is displayed.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS FOR ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Countermeasures for Accidents or Fire

When an accident occurs whilst driving the electric vehicle, turn on the hazard warning flasher, move the vehicle to a safe place, and do not let other people approach the site.



WARNING

When an accident occurs, and the high voltage battery is damaged, harmful gas and electrolytes may leak.

- Be careful not to touch the leaked liquid.
- When you suspect leakage of inflammable gas and other harmful gases, open the windows and immediately evacuate to a safe location.
- If any leaked fluid comes in contact with your eyes or skin, immediately clean the affected area thoroughly with tap water or saline solution and have doctors inspect it as soon as possible.

If the electric vehicle catches fire

If a fire occurs, evacuate to a safe place and do not let other people approach the site.

- Contact the fire department, report an electric vehicle fire, and then follow its instructions.



CAUTION

- If a fire occurs, evacuate to a safe place and wait until the firefighters arrive.
- If the lower part of the vehicle where the high voltage battery is located catches fire, large amount of water must be supplied continuously for a long time to completely extinguish the fire. It is hard to extinguish the fire without sufficient water and appropriate fire extinguishers. If you approach the vehicle carelessly, it may cause accidents, such as electric shock, and result in serious injury.

If the electric vehicle catches fire

If the electric vehicle is submerged whilst driving, follow the instructions below:

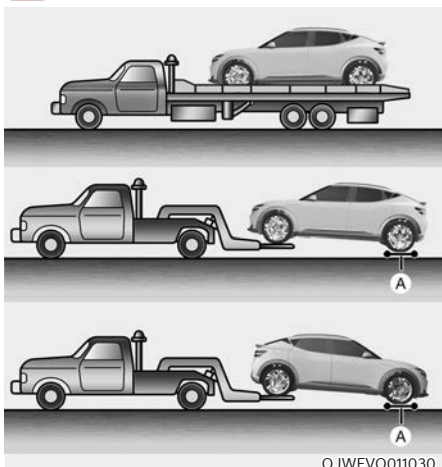
- Immediately turn off the vehicle and evacuate to a safe place with your key.
- Contact the emergency rescue service such as a fire department, or an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

Never touch the submerged electric vehicle. This may lead to an accident such as an electric shock or fire.

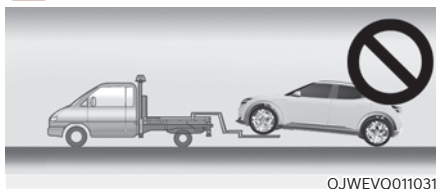
 WARNING



[A] : Dollies

- **AWD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.**

 WARNING

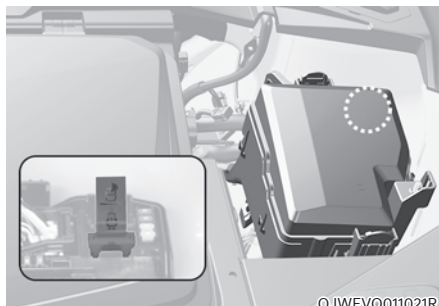


- **If you tow the vehicle whilst the 2WD: rear, AWD: front/rear wheels are touching the ground, the vehicle motor may generate electricity and the motor components may be damaged or a fire may occur.**
- **Contact the fire department when towing the vehicle after a fire. When a vehicle fire occurs due to the battery, there is a risk of a second fire.**

Other precautions for electric vehicle

- When you paint or apply heat treatment to the vehicle as a result of an accident, the performance of the high voltage battery can be reduced.
- If heat treatment is required, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
- When you clean the motor compartment, do not use high pressure water to wash. This may cause an electric shock due to a discharge in high voltage electricity, or damage the vehicle's electric system.
- We recommend that you use, , or install genuine Genesis parts or the equivalent (of the genuine part) specified for your vehicle.

High voltage cut-off switch



High voltage cut-off switch is a device located inside the motor compartment to block the battery's high voltage when your vehicle is inspected at an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

- **Never touch the high voltage cut-off switch. This could result in serious injury or death in a collision or electric shock.**
- **If the high voltage cut-off switch requires an inspection or repair, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Never disconnect or cut the high voltage cut-off switch except in an emergency situation. Serious problems may occur, such as the vehicle may not start.**

2. Vehicle information

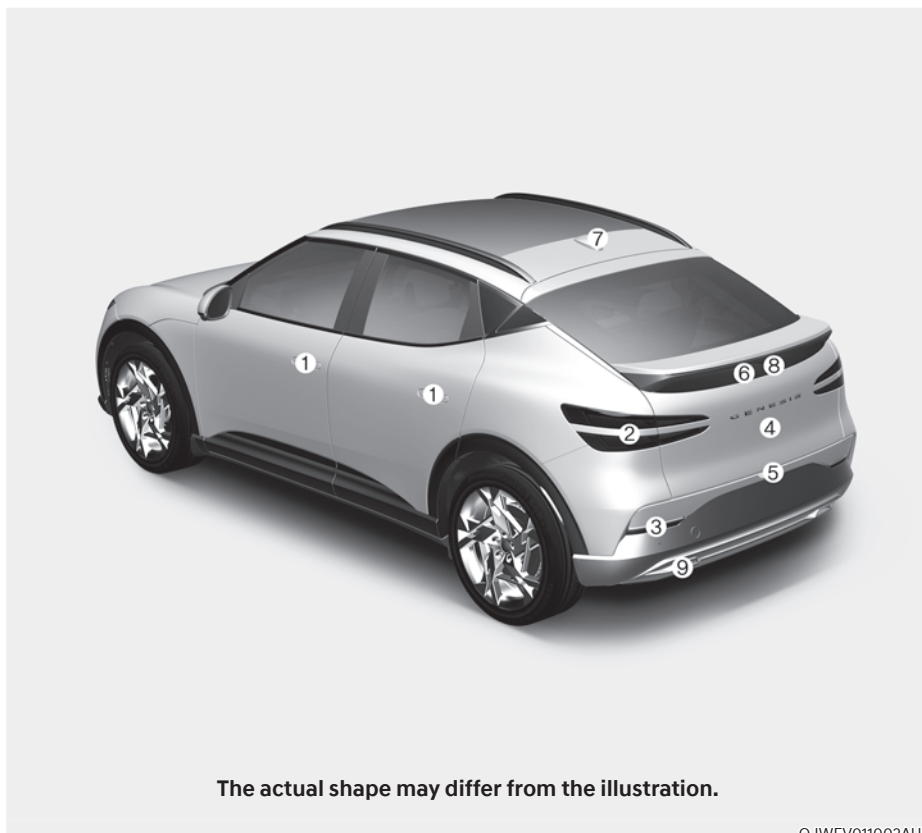
Exterior overview (front view)	2-2
Exterior overview (rear view)	2-3
Interior overview	2-4
Centre console overview	2-5
Steering wheel control overview	2-6
Motor compartment overview	2-7
Dimensions.....	2-8
Electric vehicle specifications	2-8
Bulb wattage	2-9
Tyres and wheels.....	2-10
Air conditioning system.....	2-11
Vehicle weight and luggage volume	2-11
Recommended lubricants and capacities	2-12
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	2-13
Vehicle certification label.....	2-13
Tyre specification and pressure label	2-14
Motor number	2-14
Air conditioner compressor label	2-15
Refrigerant label	2-15
Declaration of conformity	2-15
Open source software notice.....	2-15

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (FRONT VIEW)



1. Bonnet.....	5-62	5. Vision roof.....	5-129
2. Headlamp.....	9-46	6. Front windscreen wiper blades	5-130, 9-34
3. Tyres and wheels	9-24	7. Windows	5-52
4. Outside rearview mirror	5-131	8. Front radar	7-6

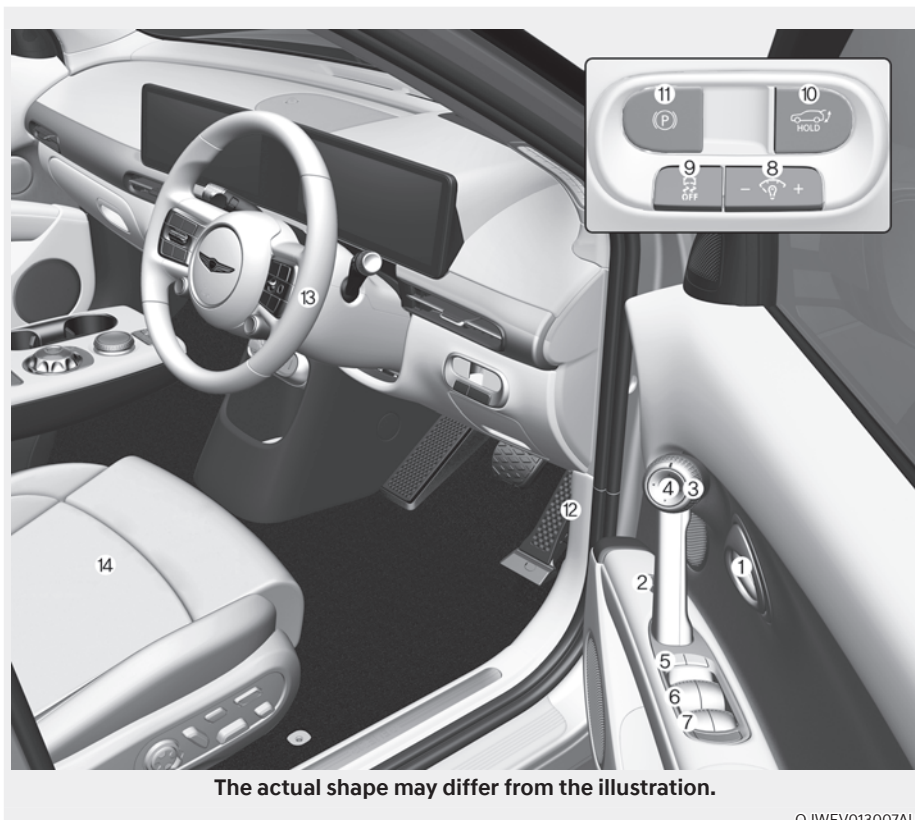
EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (REAR VIEW)



OJWEV011002AU

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Door.....5-76 | 5. Tailgate open/close button..... 5-95 |
| 2. Rear combination lamp.....9-15 | 6. High mounted stop lamp9-46 |
| 3. Rear turn signal lamp
& Rear retro reflector.....9-15 | 7. Antenna.....5-118 |
| 4. Tailgate.....5-115 | 8. Wide-rear view camera.....7-97 |
| | 9. Reversing lamp 9-15 |

INTERIOR OVERVIEW



- | | | | |
|--|--------------|--|------|
| 1. Inside door handle..... | 5-122 | 9. ESC (Electronic Stability Control) OFF
button..... | 6-40 |
| 2. Integrated memory system | 5-123 | 10. Power tailgate open/close button..... | 5-95 |
| 3. Outside rearview mirrors
control switch | 5-129 | 11. EPB (Electronic Parking Brake)
switch | 6-31 |
| 4. Outside rearview mirrors
folding button | 5-121 | 12. Bonnet release lever..... | 5-92 |
| 5. Central door lock switch | 5-119 | 13. Steering wheel..... | 5-36 |
| 6. Power window switches | 5-17 | 14. Seat..... | 3-3 |
| 7. Power window lock button/
Electronic child safety lock button..... | 5-36
5-28 | | |
| 8. Instrument panel illumination control
switch..... | 4-5 | | |

CENTRE CONSOLE OVERVIEW



OJWEV011008R

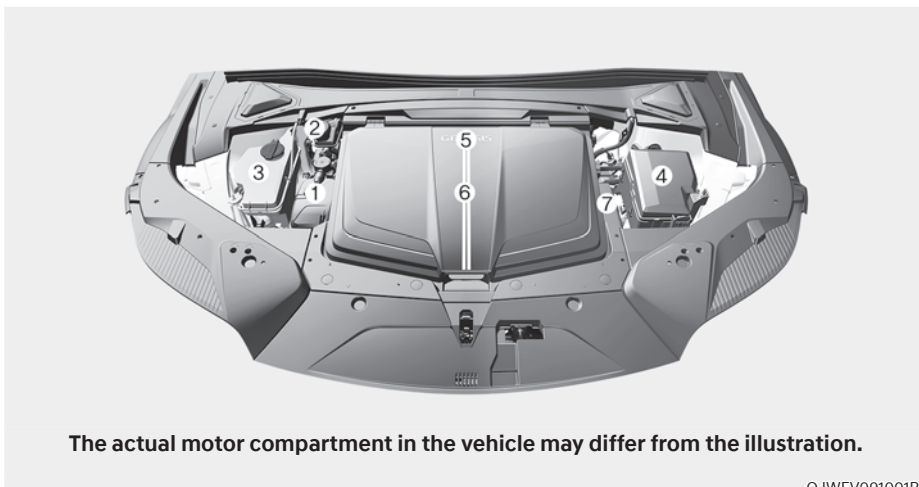
- | | | | |
|--|-------|--|------------|
| 1. Instrument cluster display | 4-4 | 12. USB charger | 5-122 |
| 2. Horn..... | 5-39 | 13. USB port..... | 5-129 |
| 3. Driver's front air bag..... | 3-48 | 14. Power outlet..... | 5-121 |
| 4. Start/Stop button | 6-4 | 15. Cup holder | 5-119 |
| 5. Infotainment system | 5-115 | 16. Rotary shifter (Rotary gear shift dial)..... | 6-11 |
| 6. Hazard warning flasher button..... | 8-2 | 17. Fingerprint authentication system..... | 5-17 |
| 7. Automatic climate control system | 5-95 | 18. Heated steering wheel button..... | 5-40 |
| 8. Passenger front air bag | 3-48 | 19. AUTO HOLD button | 6-35 |
| 9. Glove box | 5-118 | 20. Parking/View button | 7-99 |
| 10. Wireless charging system indicator ... | 5-123 | 21. Parking Safety button..... | 7-121 |
| 11. Wireless charging system pad..... | 5-123 | 22. Seat Warmer/Air ventilation seat.. | 3-22, 3-24 |
| | | 23. Rear seat USB charger | 5-122 |

STEERING WHEEL CONTROL OVERVIEW



- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Lighting control lever5-76 | 7. Vehicle Distance button.....7-78 |
| 2. Wiper and washer control lever..... 5-92 | 8. Drive mode button 6-55 |
| 3. Paddle shifters6-19 | 9. Boost mode button 6-58 |
| 4. Instrument cluster display control4-31 | 10. Voice recognition button5-130 |
| 5. Lane driving Assist button7-32 | 11. Steering wheel audio controls.....5-129 |
| 6. Driving Assist button7-78 | 12. Bluetooth wireless technology hands-free
button.....5-131 |

MOTOR COMPARTMENT OVERVIEW



- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. Coolant reservoir 9-12 | 5. Cabin air filter 9-16 |
| 2. Brake fluid reservoir 9-14 | 6. Front boot 5-62 |
| 3. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir 9-15 | 7. Battery 9-21 |
| 4. Fuse box 9-34 | |

DIMENSIONS

Items		mm	
Overall length		4,515	
Overall width		1,890	
Overall height		1580 / 1590*1 / 1595*2	
Track	Tyre size	Front	Rear
	235/55 R19	1,633	1,642
	255/45 R20	1,628	1,637
	255/40 R21		
Wheelbase		2,900	

*1: with roof rack

*2: with shark fin antenna

ELECTRIC VEHICLE SPECIFICATIONS

Items		Standard type		Performance type
		2WD	AWD	AWD
Motor (Front/Rear)	Max. output (kW)	168	234	320/360*3
	Max. torque (Nm)	350	605	700
Battery (Lithium-ion)	Capacity (kWh)	77.4	77.4	77.4
	Power output (kW)	350	350	394
	Voltage (V)	697	697	697
Charger (OBC)	Max. output (kW)	10.5	10.5	10.5

OBC : On-Board Battery Chargers

*3: if equipped with boost mode

BULB WATTAGE

Light bulb			Bulb type	Wattage
Front	Headlamp	Low	LED	LED
		High	LED	LED
	Turn signal lamp		LED	LED
	Parking lamp		LED	LED
	Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)		LED	LED
	Puddle lamp		LED	LED
	Side repeater lamp		LED	LED
Rear	Stop lamp		LED	LED
	Tail lamp		LED	LED
	Turn signal lamp		LED	LED
	Reversing lamp		LED	LED
	Licence plate lamp		LED	LED
	High mounted stop lamp		LED	LED
Interior	Map lamp		LED	LED
	Personal lamp		LED	LED
	Vanity mirror lamp		LED	LED
	Glove box lamp		LED	LED
	Mood lamp		LED	LED
	Luggage compartment lamp		LED	LED
	Front boot lamp		LED	LED

TYRES AND WHEELS

Items	Tyre size	Wheel size	Inflation pressure kPa (psi)				Wheel bolt torque [kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)]
			Normal load		Maximum load		
			Front	Rear	Front	Rear	
Full size tyre	235/55 R19	8.0J x 19	250 (36)		260 (38)	290 (42)	14~16 (101~116, 137~157)
	255/45 R20	8.5J x 20					
	255/40 R21	8.5J x 21					

NOTICE

- Ambient temperature affects the tyre pressure (about 7kPa (psi) for every 7°C (12°F) change). If colder temperatures are anticipated, it is permissible to increase cold tyre inflation pressure by up to 20 kPa (3 psi) over the specification. If extreme temperature changes are expected, be sure to check and adjust tyre pressure accordingly.
- Tyre inflation pressure decreases with higher elevation, and increases with lower elevation (about 10 kPa (2.4 psi) for every kilometre elevation change). Be sure to check and adjust tyre pressure accordingly when driving through changing elevations.
- Do not exceed the maximum inflation pressure, as found on the sidewall of the tyre(s).



CAUTION

When replacing tyres, **ALWAYS** use the same size, type, brand, construction and tread pattern as those originally supplied with the vehicle. If not, it can damage the related parts or make them work irregularly.

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

g (oz.)

Item	Weight of volume	Classification
Refrigerant	950±25	R-134a
Compressor lubricant	190±10	POE

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for more details.

VEHICLE WEIGHT AND LUGGAGE VOLUME

Items	Standard type		Performance type
	2WD	AWD	AWD
Gross vehicle weight	2,495 kg	2,610 kg	2,660 kg
Luggage volume	680 ℓ		

Information

Elevator type automated parking is not possible due to the weight of the vehicle.

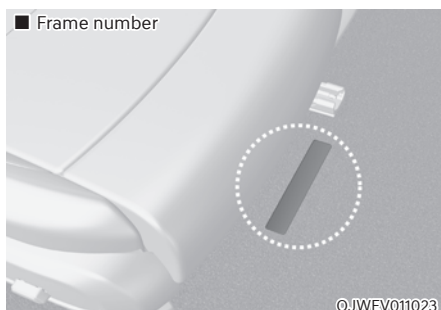
RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper vehicle performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality.

These lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle.

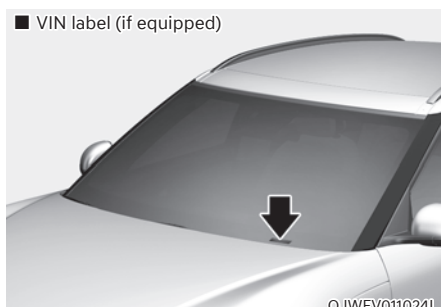
Lubricant			Volume	Classification
Reduction gear fluid	2WD	Rear	3.4~3.5 ℓ (3.6~3.7 US qt.)	HK ATF 65 SP4M-1
	AWD	Front	3.2~3.3 ℓ (3.4~3.5 US qt.)	
		Rear	3.4~3.5 ℓ (3.6~3.7 US qt.)	
Coolant	2WD		18.07 ℓ (19.09 US qt.)	Mixture of antifreeze and water (Phosphate-based Ethylene glycol coolant for aluminium radiator)
	AWD	Standard	17.13 ℓ (18.10 US qt.)	
		Performance	17.20 ℓ (18.17 US qt.)	
Brake fluid			As required	SAE J1704 DOT-4 LV, FMVSS 116 DOT-4, ISO 4925 CLASS-6

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)



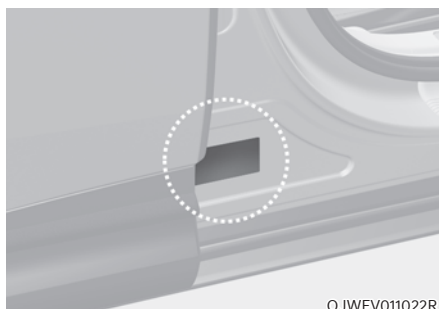
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the floor under the right front seat. To check the number, open the cover.



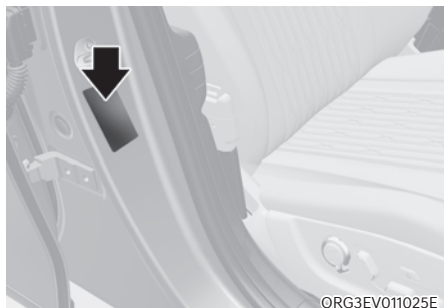
The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the left side instrument panel. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the windscreen from outside.

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



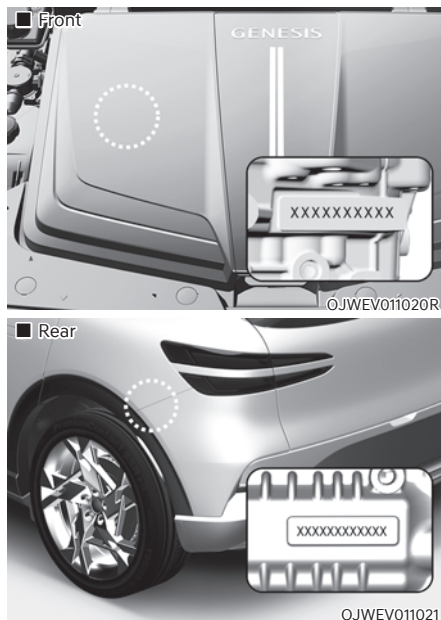
The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side centre pillar gives the vehicle identification number (VIN).

TYRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL



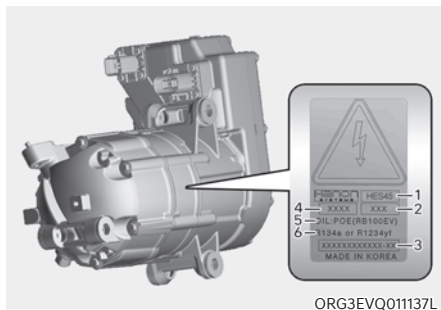
The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving. The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar gives the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

MOTOR NUMBER



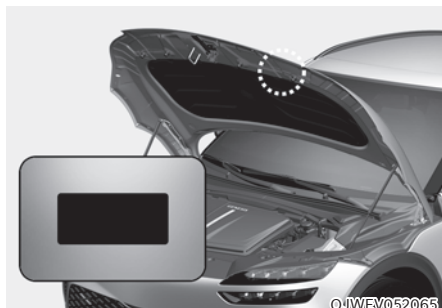
The motor numbers are stamped as shown in the images above.

AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL



A compressor label informs you of the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with, such as model (1), serial number (2), supplier part number (3), lot number (4), refrigerant oil (5) and refrigerant (6).

REFRIGERANT LABEL (IF EQUIPPED)



You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the bonnet.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Example

CE CE 0678

CE0678

The radio frequency components of the vehicle comply with requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1995/5/EC.

OPEN SOURCE SOFTWARE NOTICE

This vehicle contains software with open source licences.

Open source software information including the source code, copyright notices and referred licence terms may be obtained on the website <https://www.genesis.com/worldwide/en/opensource.html>

Hyundai Motor Company will provide the open source code to you in storage medium such as CD-ROM for minimum charge covering the cost of performing source distribution upon email request to opensource@genesis.com within a period of 3 years from the date of product purchase.

3. Safety system

Important safety precautions	3-2
Always wear your seat belt	3-2
Restrain all children.....	3-2
Air bag hazards.....	3-2
Driver distraction.....	3-2
Control your speed.....	3-2
Keep your vehicle in safe condition	3-2
Seats	3-3
Safety precautions	3-6
Front seats	3-7
Rear seats	3-14
Headrest.....	3-18
Seat warmers.....	3-22
Air ventilation seats.....	3-24
Seat belts.....	3-26
Seat belt safety precautions	3-26
Seat belt warning light.....	3-27
Seat belt restraint system	3-29
Pre-active Seat Belt (PSB)	3-33
Additional seat belt safety precautions	3-34
Care of seat belts.....	3-36
Child Restraint System (CRS)	3-37
Our recommendation: children always in the rear	3-37
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS).....	3-38
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)	3-40
Air bag - supplemental restraint system	3-46
Where are the air bags?	3-48
How does the air bags system operate?.....	3-51
What to expect after an air bag inflates	3-54
Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat	3-55
Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?.....	3-56
SRS care	3-61
Additional safety precautions.....	3-62
Air bag warning labels.....	3-62

IMPORTANT SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

You will find many safety precautions and recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The safety precautions in this section are among the most important.

Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of accidents. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with air bags, ALWAYS make sure you and your passengers wear a seat belt, and wear them properly.

Restrain all children

All children under age 13 should travel in your vehicle properly restrained in a rear seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in an appropriate Child Restraint System. Larger children should use a booster seat with the lap/shoulder belt until they can use the seat belt properly without a booster seat.

Air bag hazards

Whilst air bags can save lives, they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or who are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Driver distraction

Driver distraction presents a serious and potentially deadly danger, especially for inexperienced drivers. Safety should be the first concern when behind the wheel and drivers need to be aware of the wide array of potential distractions, such as drowsiness, reaching for objects, eating, personal grooming, other passengers, and using mobile phones.

Drivers can become distracted when they take their eyes and attention off the road or their hands off the wheel to focus on activities other than driving. To reduce the risk of distraction and an accident:

- ALWAYS set up your mobile devices (for example, MP3 players, phones, navigation units, etc.) when your vehicle is parked or safely stopped.
- ONLY use your mobile device when allowed by laws and conditions permit safe use. NEVER text or email whilst driving. Most countries have laws prohibiting drivers from texting. Some countries and cities also prohibit drivers from using handheld phones.
- NEVER let the use of a mobile device distract you from driving. You have a responsibility to your passengers and others on the road to always drive safely, with your hands on the wheel as well as your eyes and attention on the road.

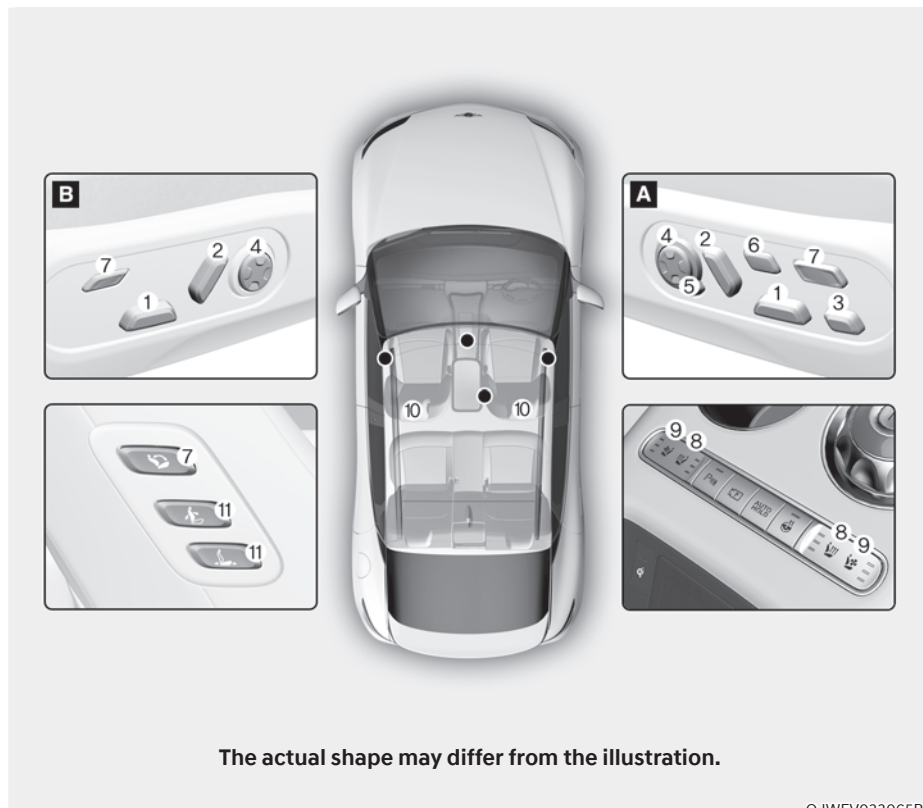
Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

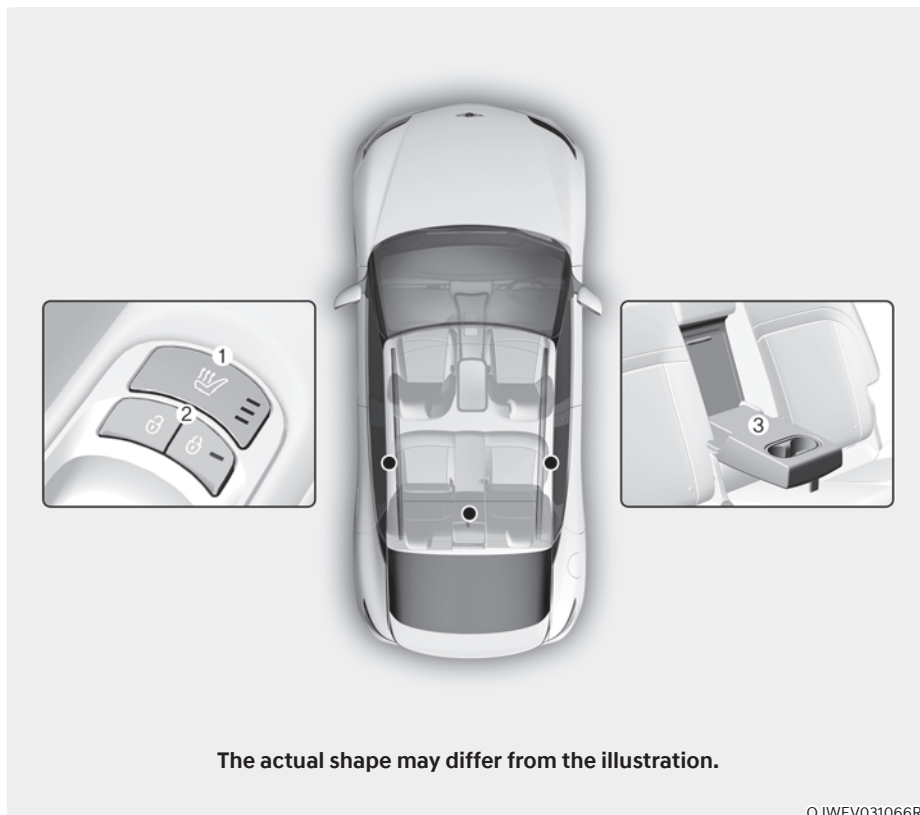
SEATS



[A] : Driver's side, [B] : Passenger's side

Front seat

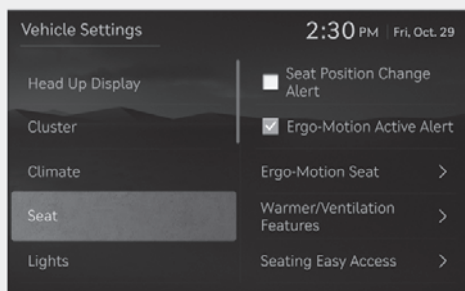
- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| (1) Seat sliding forward or rearward /
Seat cushion tilt / Seat height | (6) Comfortable stretch |
| (2) Seatback angle | (7) Relaxation comfort seat switch |
| (3) Seat cushion extension /
Seat cushion support | (8) Seat warmer |
| (4) Lumbar support | (9) Air ventilation seat |
| (5) Seatback bolster | (10) Headrest |
| | (11) Walk-in seat switch |



Rear seat

- (1) Seat warmer
- (2) LOCK button

- (3) Armrest



OJWEV071312L

Infotainment system

Select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen, you may use various convenience functions.

- Seat position change alert : Detailed information of the seat switch and image is displayed when the seat position moves.
- Heated/Ventilated features
 - Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat) : The seat temperature is automatically controlled.
 - Seat warmer balance : When the seat warmer is on, you may lower the seat warmer setting, or may turn the seat warmer off for either the seatback or seat cushion.
- Seating easy access
 - Steering wheel easy access : Moves the steering wheel when the driver enters or leaves the vehicle.
 - Driver seat easy access : The distance (Normal/Extended/Off) the seat automatically moves when the driver enters or leaves the vehicle may be selected.
 - Passenger seat easy access : Moves the passenger seat when the passenger enters or leaves the vehicle.



Information

- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
- The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

Safety precautions

Adjusting the seats so that you are sitting in a safe, comfortable position plays an important role in driver and passenger safety, together with seat belts and air bags, in an accident.



WARNING

Do not use a cushion that reduces friction between the seat and a passenger. A passenger's hips may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop.

Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate properly.

Air bags

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Sitting too close to an air bag greatly increases the risk of injury in the event the air bag inflates. Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.



WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating air bag, take the following precautions:

- **Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible whilst maintaining the ability to control the vehicle.**
- **Adjust the front passenger seat as far to the rear as possible.**
- **Hold the steering wheel by the rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.**
- **NEVER place anything or anyone between you and the air bag.**
- **Do not allow the front passenger to place feet or legs on the instrument panel to minimise the risk of leg injuries.**

Seat belts

Always fasten your seat belt before starting any trip. At all times, passengers should sit upright and be properly restrained. Infants and small children must be restrained in appropriate Child Restraint Systems. Children who have outgrown a booster seat and adults must be restrained using the seat belts.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat belt:

- **NEVER use one seat belt for more than one occupant.**
- **Always position the seatback upright with the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips.**
- **NEVER allow children or small infants to travel on a passenger's lap.**
- **Do not route the seat belt across your neck, across sharp edges, or reroute the shoulder strap away from your body.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to become caught or jammed.**

Front seats

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so that you can easily control the steering wheel, foot pedals and controls on the instrument panel.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat:

- **NEVER attempt to adjust the seat whilst the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Do not place anything under the front seats. Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, causing an accident.**
- **Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position and proper locking of the seatback.**
- **Do not place a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may escape from the lighter causing a fire.**
- **Use extreme caution when picking up small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the centre console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.**
- **If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful whilst adjusting the front seat position.**
- **Make sure that the seat is locked in place after the adjustment. If not, the seat might move unexpectedly resulting in an accident.**



CAUTION

To prevent injury:

- **Do not adjust your seat whilst wearing your seat belt. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on your abdomen.**
- **Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.**



WARNING

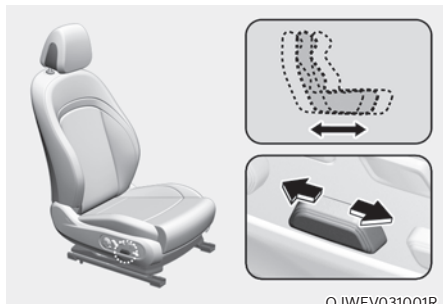
NEVER allow children in the vehicle unsupervised. The power seats are operable when the vehicle is turned off.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seats:

- Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has been adjusted as far forward or rearward as possible.
- Do not adjust the seats longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.
- Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.

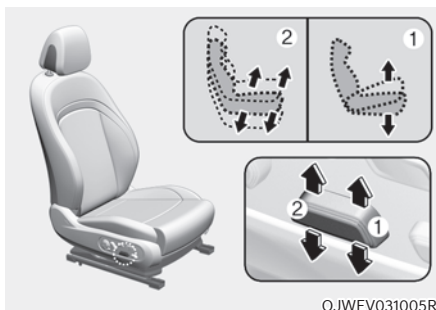
Forward and rearward adjustment



To move the seat forward or rearward:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seat cushion tilt/height adjustment



Seat cushion tilt (1)

To change the angle of the front part of the seat cushion:

Move the front portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the front part of the seat cushion.

Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

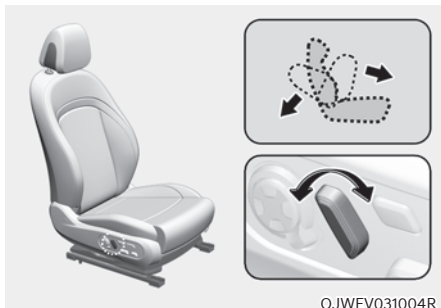
Seat height (2)

To change the height of the seat cushion:

Move the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the height of the seat cushion.

Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seatback angle adjustment



OJWEV031004R

To recline the seatback:

1. Move the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seatback reaches the desired position.

Reclining seatback

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint systems (seat belts and air bags) are greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.



WARNING

NEVER travel with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.

The driver and any passengers should ALWAYS sit well back in their seats, properly restrained, and with the seatbacks upright.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. When the seatback is reclined, the shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be snug against your chest. Instead, it will be in front of you. During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.

Seat cushion extension adjustment (for driver's seat) (if equipped)



OJWEV031002R

To move the front part of the cushion forward or rearward:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seat cushion reaches the desired length.

Seat cushion support adjustment (for driver's seat) (if equipped)



OJWEV031003R

To adjust cushion support:

1. Move the control switch up to increase cushion support or down to decrease cushion support.
2. Release the switch once the seat cushion support reaches the desired position.

Lumbar support (if equipped)



OJWEV031006R

To adjust the lumbar support:

1. Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.
2. Press switch (3) or (4) to move the support position up or down.
3. Release the switch once the lumbar support reaches the desired position.

Seat bolster adjustment (for driver's seat) (if equipped)

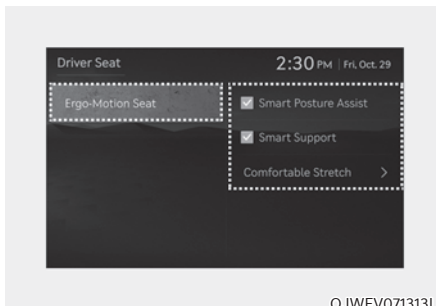


OJWEV031007R

To adjust seat bolster:

1. Move the adjustment lever clockwise, the seatback bolster will be adjusted inward. Move the switch anti-clockwise, the seatback bolster will be adjusted outward.
2. Release the lever once the bolster reaches the desired position.

Ergo-motion seat (for driver's seat) (if equipped)



OJWEV071313L

Select 'Seat → Driver Seat → Ergo Motion Seat' from the infotainment system's Settings menu to select and set up supplemental functions for the driver.



WARNING

Before actually using each function, try the functions with the vehicle parked.

Comfortable stretch

Comfortable stretch is a function that helps relieve fatigue of the driver's pelvis and lower back due to driving.



Every time you press the button, you may select a mode or turn off the function in the following order.

- Pelvic stretching: The cushion portion moves, helping the left and right movement of the pelvis.
- Lumbar stretching: The seatback portion moves, helping back and forth movement of the lower back.
- Whole Body stretching: The cushion and seatback moves in sequence, helping the whole body reduce fatigue.
- OFF: Turns off Comfortable Stretch.

Also, you can change the operation intensity and operation time from the Settings menu on the infotainment system screen.

- Intensity: Seat → Driver Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Comfortable Stretch → Strong/Normal
- Time: Seat → Driver Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Comfortable Stretch → Operational Time → Short (10 min.)/Normal (15 min.)/Long (20 min.)

Smart Posture assist

After driving for an hour, Smart Posture Assist automatically adjusts the pelvis and back portion of the driver's seat to assist the driver's posture.

You can activate or deactivate Smart Posture Assist function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Seat → Driver Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Smart Posture Assist

Smart support

The driver's seat bolster support increases when SPORT mode is selected for Drive Mode or when driving at high speed.

You can activate or deactivate Smart Support function from the Settings menu on the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Seat → Driver Seat → Ergo-Motion Seat → Smart Support

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

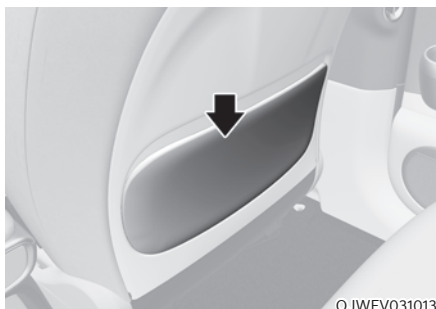
Walk-in switch (if equipped)



The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the front passenger seat.

- Sliding forward or rearward:
Press the switch (1) or (2) to move the front passenger seat forward or rearward.
- Seatback angle:
Press the switch (3) or (4) to lean the front passenger seatback forward or rearward.

Seatback pocket



The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front seatbacks.



CAUTION

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could become loose from the pocket and injure occupants.

Pre-active Safety Seat (PSS) (if equipped)

Pre-active Safety Seat enhances crashworthiness and driving stability by pulling up the backrest before collision and hazardous situations when the passenger seat is reclined.



WARNING

Pre-active Safety Seat is a supplementary device. The driver should keep their eyes on the road and verify that there are no obstructions ahead. If there is no a passenger or the seatbelt is not fastened, the system does not work. In addition, the seat belt interval is increased whilst a passenger's seat is reclined which may reduce its performance.

System Operation

- **Crashworthiness**
Pre-active Safety Seat limits passenger's movement and decreases the chance of injury in the early stage of a collision by reducing the seat belt interval by putting the seat in the upright position. The operation conditions are as follows.
 - System senses a risky situation due to emergency braking.
 - System senses a dangerous situation due to the difficulties of vehicle operation.
 - System senses a hazardous situation due to vehicle distance detection sensor.
- **Driving stability**
Pre-active Safety Seat pulls up the seat back during sudden braking or rapid turning to boost the tightness of seat belt in order to prevent leaning forward or laterally as well as increase driving stability. The operation conditions are as follows.
 - There is a leaning forward of the upper body due to sudden braking.
 - There is a lateral leaning of the upper body because of rapid turning.
 - Driving on a slippery frozen road
 - Driving on an unpaved road
 - High risk of rollover



WARNING

Whilst the system operates automatically, do not be surprised or misunderstand it as a system failure.

- **Inoperative status**
If the passenger adjusts the seat manually, the system stops immediately. However, it becomes operative after 5 seconds when a hazardous motion is detected.
- **Malfunction**
If the Pre-active Safety Seat system does not operate properly, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Rear seats

Additional switches for adjusting the front passenger seat



OJWEV031014R

Walk-in seat switch (if equipped)

The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the front passenger seat.

- Sliding forward or rearward:
To move the front passenger seat forward, press the switch (1). To move the front passenger seat rearward, press the switch (2).
- Angle adjustment:
To recline the front passenger seat forward, press the switch (3). To recline the front passenger seat rearward, press the switch (4).



WARNING

Do not adjust the passenger seat when a passenger is seated.



WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- Adjusting the seats
 - **NEVER** attempt to adjust the seat whilst the vehicle is moving. The seat may suddenly move and may injure the passenger.
 - Make sure that the seat is locked in place after the adjustment. If not, the seat might move unexpectedly resulting in an accident.
- Folding the seats
 - Do not fold the seatback when the seat is occupied (for example, passenger, pets or luggage). It may injure the passenger or pet, or damage the luggage.
 - Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop.
 - Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.
 - When returning the rear seatback from a folded to an upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. In an accident or sudden stop, the unlocked seatback could allow cargo to move forward with great force and enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.

- **Loading cargo**
 - Make sure the vehicle is off, the gear shifted to P (Park), and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading cargo. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift button or shift dial is inadvertently pressed or rotated to another position.
 - When cargo is loaded through the rear passenger seats, ensure the cargo is properly secured to prevent it from moving whilst driving.
- Do not place objects in the rear seats, since they cannot be properly secured and may hit vehicle occupants in a collision causing serious injury or death.



CAUTION

Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms whilst adjusting the seats.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

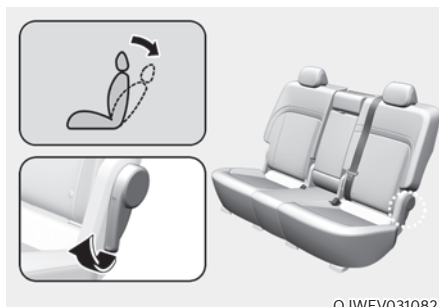
Rear seat belts:

- Before folding the seatback, insert the seat belt buckle in the holder between the seatback and cushion. And insert the seat belt webbing in the guide to prevent the seat belt from being damaged.

Cargo:

- Be careful when loading cargo through the rear passenger seats to prevent damage to the vehicle interior.

Manual adjustment



Seatback angle

To recline the seatback:

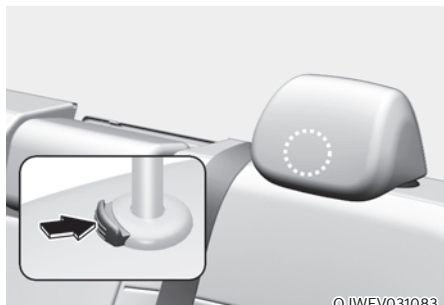
1. Pull up the seatback recline lever.
 2. Hold the lever and adjust the seatback of the seat to the position you desire.
 3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. The lever **MUST** return to its original position for the seatback to lock.
- * The seatbacks can be folded with the seatback recline lever.

Folding the rear seats

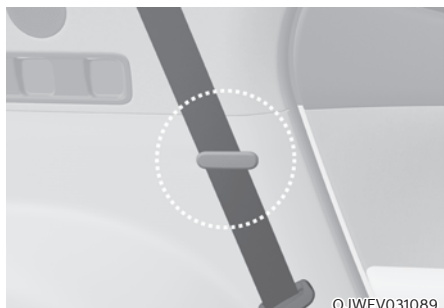
The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

To fold down the rear seatback:

1. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary slide the front seat forward.



2. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.



3. Route the seat belt webbing through rear seat belt guides to prevent the belts from being trapped behind or under the seats.



4. Pull up the seatback folding lever, then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle. When you return the seatback to its upright position, always be sure it has locked into position by pushing on the top of the seatback.



OJWEV031085

5. To use the rear seat, lift and unfold the seatback to the upright position by pulling up the folding lever. Push the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.
6. Return the rear seat belt to the proper position.

Armrest



OJWEV031016R

The armrest is located in the centre of the rear seat.

Grab the handle (1) on the upper end of the arm rest. Then, pull down the handle to use the arm rest.

NOTICE

Do not put any items on the rear centre seat. Those items may get damaged, when the arm rest is pulled down.

Headrest

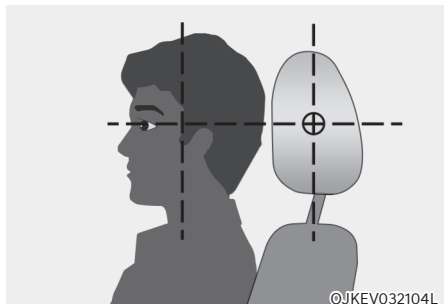
The vehicle's front and rear seats have adjustable headrests. The headrests provide comfort for passengers, but more importantly they are designed to help protect passengers from whiplash and other neck and spinal injuries during an accident, especially in a rear impact collision.



WARNING

To help reduce the risk of serious injury or death in an accident, take the following precautions when adjusting your headrests:

- Always properly adjust the headrests for all passengers **BEFORE** starting the vehicle.
- **NEVER** let anyone ride in a seat with the headrest removed or reversed.



- Adjust the headrests so the middle of the headrest is at the same height as the height of the top of the eyes.
- **NEVER** adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat when the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust the headrest as close to the passenger's head as possible. Do not use a seat cushion that holds the body away from the seatback.
- Make sure the headrest locks into position after adjusting it.



WARNING



When sitting on the rear seat, do not adjust the height of the headrest to the lowest position.



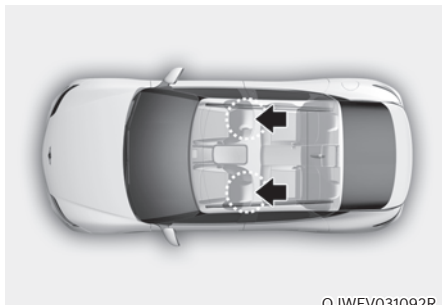
CAUTION

When there is no occupant on the rear seats, adjust the height of the headrests to their lowest position. The rear seat headrest can reduce the visibility through the rear window.

NOTICE

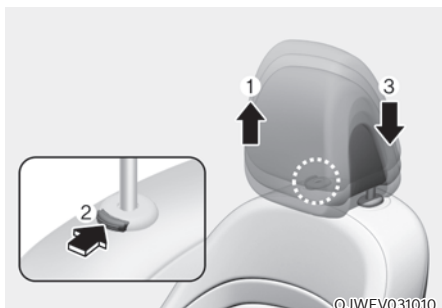
To prevent damage, **NEVER** hit or pull on the headrests.

Front seat headrests



OJWEV031092R

The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with adjustable headrests for the passengers safety and comfort.



OJWEV031010

Adjusting the height up and down

To raise the headrest:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).



OJWEV031009

Forward and rearward adjustment

The headrest can be adjusted forward to 3 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent. To adjust the headrest to it's furthest rearwards position, pull it fully forward to the farthest position and release it.

NOTICE



ORG3EV031015

If you lean the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.



Removal/Reinstall

To remove the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback (2) with the seatback angle switch (1).
2. Raise the headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) whilst pulling the headrest up (4).

WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to travel in a seat with the headrest removed.



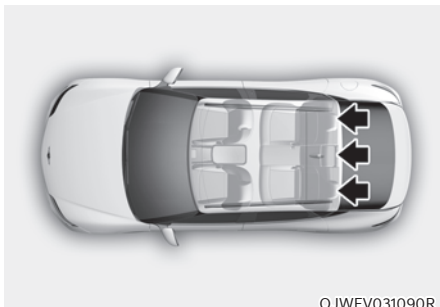
To reinstall the headrest :

1. Recline the seatback.
2. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1).
3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.
4. Recline the seatback (4) with the seatback angle switch (3).

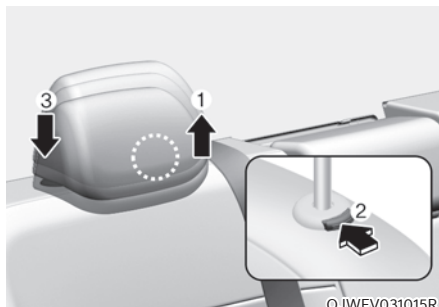
WARNING

Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.

Rear seat headrests



The rear seats are equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for passenger safety and comfort.



Adjusting the height up and down

To raise the headrest:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

Seat warmers

Seat warmers are provided to warm the seats during cold weather.

During mild weather or in conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the seat warmers OFF.



WARNING

The seat warmers can cause a **SERIOUS BURN**, even at low temperatures and especially if used for long periods of time.

Passengers must be able to feel if the seat is becoming too warm so they can turn it off, if needed.

People who cannot detect temperature change or pain to the skin should use extreme caution, especially the following types of passengers:

- Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients.
- People with sensitive skin or who burn easily.
- Fatigued individuals.
- Intoxicated individuals.
- People taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness.



WARNING

NEVER place anything on the seat that insulates against heat when the seat warmer is in operation, such as a blanket or seat cushion. This may cause the seat warmer to overheat, causing a burn or damage to the seat.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seat warmers and seats:

- Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or petrol to clean the seats.
- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers.
- Do not change the seat cover. It may damage the seat warmer.

Front seat warmers



- Whilst the vehicle is running, press either of the seat warmer switches to warm the driver's seat or front passenger's seat.
- Each time you press either of the seat warmer switches, Each time you touch the icon, the temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows :



- **Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)**
The seat warmer automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.
To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu on the infotainment system screen. Select:
 - Setup → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings → Seat Warmer/Ventilation
- **Seat Warmer Balance**
You may lower the seat warmer setting, or may turn the seat warmer off for either the seatback or seat cushion, when the seat warmer is on.
To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
 - Setup → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Seat Warmer Balance
- Pressing the seat warmer switches for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmers operating causes the seat warmers to turn OFF.
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings function is ON, the driver's seat warmer will turn on and off depending on the ambient temperature.

Rear seat warmers (if equipped)



- Whilst the vehicle is running, press either of the seat warmer switches to warm the rear seat.
- Each time you press the switch, the temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows :



You may manually push the switch to increase seat temperature. However, the seat temperature is automatically adjusted again.

- Pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmers operating causes the seat warmers to turn OFF.
- The seat warmer defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position.

Air ventilation seats

The air ventilation seats are provided to cool the front seats by blowing air through small vent holes on the surface of the seat cushions and seatbacks.

When the operation of the air ventilation seat is not needed, keep the air ventilation seats OFF.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the air ventilation seats:

- **Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or petrol to clean the seats.**
- **Avoid spilling liquids on the surface of the front seats and seatbacks; this may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.**
- **Do not place materials such as plastic bags or newspapers under the seats. These may block the air intake causing the air vents not to work properly.**
- **Do not change the seat covers. It may damage the air ventilation seat.**
- **If the air vents do not operate, restart the vehicle. If there is no change, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**

Front air ventilation seats (if equipped)



- Whilst the vehicle is running, press either of the air ventilation switches to cool the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.
- Each time you press the air ventilation switches, the airflow changes as follows:



- If the air ventilation seat is positioned at HIGH, the airflow speed will increase according to vehicle speed.
- Use the air ventilation seat with the air conditioning on for more effective ventilation.
- It may take 3~5 minutes after switch operation to feel a temperature change.

- Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

The air ventilation seat automatically controls the seat temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu on the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings → Seat Warmer/Ventilation
- Pressing the air ventilation switches for more than 1.5 seconds with the air ventilation seats operating, causes the operation to turn OFF.
- The air ventilation seats defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings function is ON, the driver's seat ventilation will turn on and off depending on the ambient temperature.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

SEAT BELTS

This section describes how to use the seat belts properly. It also describes some of the things not to do when using seat belts.

Seat belt safety precautions

Always fasten your seat belt and make sure all passengers have fastened their seat belts before starting any trip. Air bags are designed to supplement the seat belt as an additional safety device, but they are not a substitute. Most countries require all occupants of a vehicle to wear seat belts.



WARNING

Seat belts must be used by ALL occupants whenever the vehicle is moving. Take the following precautions when adjusting and wearing seat belts:

- Children under the age of 13 should be properly restrained on the rear seats.
- Never allow children to travel in the front passenger seat. If a child is seated in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. And the child must always be restrained in the seat properly.
- NEVER allow an infant or child to be carried on an occupant's lap.
- NEVER travel with the seatback reclined when the vehicle is moving.
- Do not allow children to share a seat or seat belt.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.

- Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.
- Do not use the seat belt if it is twisted. A twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.
- Do not use a seat belt if the webbing or hardware is damaged.
- Do not latch the seat belt into the buckles of other seats.
- NEVER unfasten the seat belt whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- Make sure there is nothing in the buckle interfering with the seat belt latch mechanism, because any materials in the buckle can cause the seat belt not to be fastened securely.
- No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.



WARNING

Damaged seat belts and seat belt assemblies will not operate properly. Always replace:

- Frayed, contaminated, or damaged webbing.
- Damaged hardware.
- The entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in an accident, even if damage to webbing or assembly is not apparent.



WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided. Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.

The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Seat belt warning light

Driver's seat belt warning



As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the warning chime will sound for about 6 seconds and the warning light will stay ON until the driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the seat belt is not fastened, when vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds. (warning chime will sound in three stages)

Front passenger's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

If the passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the warning light will stay ON until the passenger's seat belt is fastened.

If the seat belt is not fastened, when vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, the warning light will blink and warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds. (warning chime will sound in three stages)



WARNING

Sitting in an improper position adversely affects the front passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to ensure the front passenger sits in the front seat as instructed in this manual.



Information

- Although the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.
- The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.

Rear passenger's seat belt warning



Rear outboard seat seatbelt

As a reminder to the rear outboard seat passengers, the corresponding seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Start/Stop button is in the ON position regardless of belt fastening.

And then, if the seat belt is still not fastened whilst driving, or unfastened whilst driving, it will operate as follows depending on vehicle speed.

- Below 20 km/h:

The corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate until the seatbelt is fastened.

- Above 20 km/h:

The corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and the warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds, and the warning light will continue to illuminate until the seatbelt is fastened.

Rear centre seatbelt

With the Start/Stop button in the ON position, if the second row centre seat passenger's seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for 70 seconds. But, if the seatbelt is fastened after 6 seconds, the corresponding seat belt warning light will immediately turn off.

If the seat belt was fastened, and was unfastened whilst driving below 20 km/h, the corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for 70 seconds.

If the seat belt was fastened, and was unfastened whilst driving above 20 km/h, the corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and the warning chime will sound for approximately 35 seconds.

Seat belt restraint system



WARNING



Improperly positioned seat belts may increase the risk of serious injury in an accident. Take the following precautions when adjusting the seat belt:

- Position the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across your hips, not on your waist, so that it fits snugly. This allows your strong pelvic bones to absorb the force of the crash, reducing the chance of internal injuries.
- Position one arm under the shoulder belt and the other over the belt, as shown in the illustration.
- Always position the shoulder belt anchor into the locked position at the appropriate height.
- Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.

Lap/shoulder belt



To fasten your seat belt:

Pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible “click” when the tab locks into the buckle.



You should place the lap belt (1) portion across your hips and the shoulder belt (2) portion across your chest.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the belt will extend and move with you.

If there is a sudden stop or impact, the belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

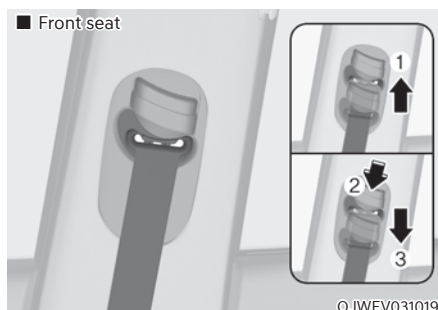
NOTICE

If you are not able to smoothly pull enough of the seat belt out from the retractor, firmly pull the seat belt out and release it. After release, you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

Height adjustment

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of the four different positions for maximum comfort and safety.

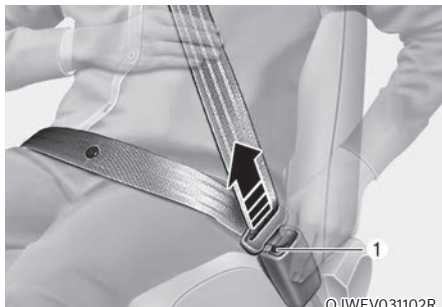
The shoulder portion should be adjusted so it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door, not over your neck.



To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) whilst pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.

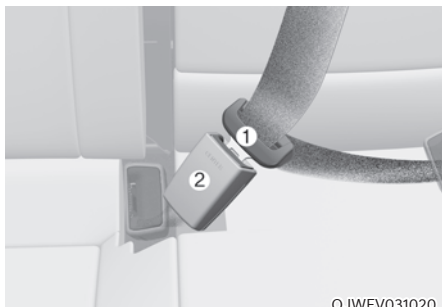


To release your seat belt:

Press the release button (1) on the locking buckle.

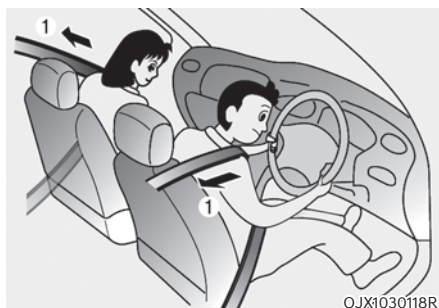
When it is released, the belt should automatically draw back into the retractor. If this does not happen, check the belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

Rear centre seat belt (if equipped)



1. Take out the buckle (2), which is stored between the seat/seatback cushions.
2. Insert the metal plate (1) into the buckle (2), until it clicks.
You can make sure its secure fastening by pulling the seatbelt webbing. The buckle with 'CENTER' mark should be used for the 3-point seatbelt.
3. Restore the buckle between the seat/seatback cushion after unfastening the seatbelt.

Pre-tensioner seat belt



[1] : Retractor pre-tensioner seat belt

Front seat and second row outboard seat

Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's and rear passengers Pre-tensioner Seat Belts (Retractor Pre-tensioner). The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal or side collision(s). The pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in crashes where the frontal or side collisions are severe enough, together with the air bags or sometimes it activate alone when wearing a seat belt.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position.

In certain frontal collisions, the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner system activates, the load limiter inside the retractor pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt (if equipped with load limiter).



WARNING

- Always wear your seat belt and sit properly in your seat.
- Do not use the seat belt if it is loose or twisted. A loose or twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.
- Do not place anything near the buckle. This may adversely affect the buckle and cause it to function improperly.
- Always replace your pre-tensioners after activation or an accident.
- NEVER inspect, service, repair or replace the pre-tensioners by yourself. We recommend that you have the pre-tensioners inspected, serviced, repaired or replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Do not hit the seat belt assemblies.



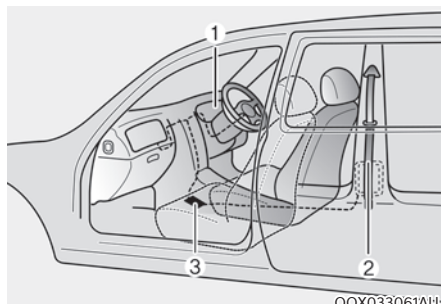
WARNING

Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated. When the pre-tensioner seat belt mechanism deploys during a collision, the pre-tensioner can become hot and can burn you.

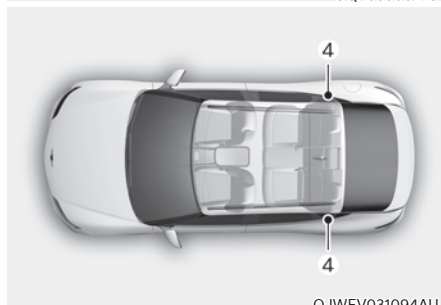


CAUTION

Body work on the front area of the vehicle may damage the pre-tensioner seat belt system. Therefore, we recommend the system be serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer.



OQX033061AU



OJWEV031094AU

The Pre-Tensioner Seat Belt System consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration above:

- (1) SRS air bag warning light
- (2) Retractor pre-tensioner
- (3) SRS control module
- (4) Rear Retractor pre-tensioner

NOTICE

The sensor that activates the SRS control module is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belts. The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument cluster will illuminate for approximately three to six seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, and then it should turn off.

If the pre-tensioner is not working properly, the warning light will illuminate even if the SRS air bag is not malfunctioning. If the warning light does not illuminate, stays illuminated or illuminates when the vehicle is being driven, we recommend the pre-tensioner seat belts and/or SRS control module be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

**Information**

- Pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in certain frontal or side collisions or rollover situations (if equipped with rollover sensor).
- When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.
- Although it is non-toxic, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be inhaled for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.

Pre-active Seat Belt (PSB) (if equipped)

The purpose of the Pre-Active Seat Belt is to tighten the seat belt when a collision is detected, during emergency braking, or when a loss of control is detected.

NOTICE

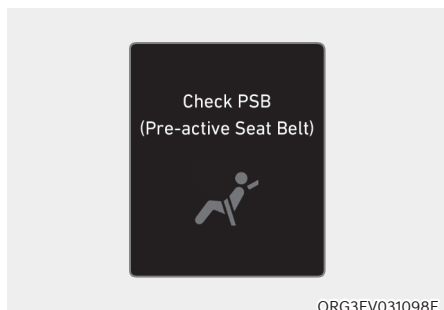
Pre-Active Seat Belt is a supplementary system. Pre-Active Seat Belt activates only when the passenger is wearing his/her seat belt.

Pre-Active Seat Belt operation

In order to help maximise the safety of the passenger, Pre-Active Seat Belt system may operate in the situations below.

- Full retraction
 - The seat belt is tightened when:
 - Emergency braking situation occurs
 - Losing control of the vehicle
 - The vehicle senses a collision
 - Driving on a slippery frozen road
 - Driving on a rough road with severe impact
 - Unstable rolling of the vehicle occurs
- Slack removal
 - Tightens a loose seat belt if vehicle speed is over 15 km/h.
- Belt parking
 - Tightens a loose seat belt when the seat belt is unfastened.

Warning message



Check Pre-Active Seat Belt

The Pre-Active Seat Belt warning message will appear if there is a problem with your Pre-Active Seat Belt.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer if the warning message comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion. When the Pre-Active Seat Belt warning message disappears, the master warning light (⚠) will illuminate.

Additional seat belt safety precautions

Seat belt use during pregnancy

The seat belt should always be used during pregnancy. The best way to protect your unborn child is to protect yourself by always wearing the seat belt.

Pregnant women should always wear a lap-shoulder seat belt. Place the shoulder belt across your chest, routed away from your neck. Place the lap belt below your abdomen so that it fits SNUGLY across your hips and pelvic bone, under the rounded part of the belly.



WARNING

- **Pregnant women and patients are more vulnerable to any impacts on the abdomen during an abrupt stop or accident. If you are in an accident whilst pregnant, consult your doctor.**
- **To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to an unborn child during an accident, pregnant women should NEVER place the lap portion of the seat belt above or over the area of the abdomen where the unborn child is located.**

Seat belt use and children

Infant and small children

Most countries have Child Restraint System laws which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint System devices, including booster seats. The age at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling. Infant and Child Restraint System must be properly placed and installed on a rear seat.

For more information refer to the "Child Restraint System (CRS)" section in this chapter.



WARNING

ALWAYS properly restrain infants and small children in a Child Restraint System appropriate for the child's height and weight.

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to a child and other passengers, NEVER hold a child in your lap or arms when the vehicle is moving. The violent forces created during an accident can tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior of the vehicle.

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained on a rear seat by a Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Australian standards. Before buying any Child Restraint System, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets the requirements of the Australian standards. The Child Restraint System must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the Child Restraint System for this information. Refer to "Child Restraint System (CRS)" in this chapter.

Larger children

Children under age 13, who are too large for a booster seat should always occupy a rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. A seat belt should lie across the upper thighs and be snug across the shoulder and chest to restrain the child safely. Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming could put the belt out of position. In the event of an accident, children are afforded the best safety restrained by a proper Child Restraint System in the rear seats.

If a larger child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, the child must be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rearmost position.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck, they need to be returned to an appropriate booster seat in the rear seat.



WARNING

- **Always make sure larger children's seat belts are worn and properly adjusted.**
- **NEVER allow the shoulder belt to contact the child's neck or face.**
- **Do not allow more than one child to use a single seat belt.**

Seat belt use and injured people

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. Consult a physician for specific recommendations.

One person per belt

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries sustained in a collision.

Do not lie down

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint systems (seat belts and/or air bags) are greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly.

During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seat back is reclined, the greater the chance there is for the passenger's hips to slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck to strike the shoulder belt.



WARNING

- **NEVER travel with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Travelling with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.**
- **The driver and any passengers should always sit well back in their seats with the seatbacks upright and should be restrained properly.**

Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to ensure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

Periodic inspection

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (CRS)

Our recommendation: children always in the rear



WARNING

Always properly restrain children in the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when travelling on the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat.

Children under age 13 should always travel on the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have regulations which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs among countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Australian standards.

Child Restraint System (CRS)

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the seat of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.



WARNING

- **Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.**
- **Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.**
- **Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.**
- **After an accident, we recommend an authorised Genesis repairer checks the Child Restraint System, seat belts, ISOFIX anchorages and top-tether anchorages.**

Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

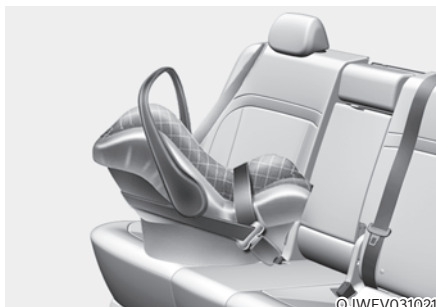
When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

- Make sure the Child Restraint System has a label certifying that it meets applicable Australian safety standards.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

Child Restraint System types

There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems: rearward-facing, forward-facing and booster seat Child Restraint Systems.

They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.



Rearward-facing Child Restraint System



WARNING

- **Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **NEVER install a child or infant restraint in the front passenger's seat.**

Placing a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat can result in SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if the child restraint is struck by an inflating air bag.

A rearward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the Child Restraint Systems and reduce the stress to the fragile neck and spinal cord.

All children under the age of one year must always travel in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. There are different types of rearward-facing Child Restraint Systems: infant-only Child Restraint Systems can only be used rearward-facing. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Keep using Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as children fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer.



Forward-facing Child Restraint System

A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

Booster seats

A booster seat is a Child Restraint System designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie comfortably across the upper thighs, not the stomach. The shoulder belt should lie comfortably across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)



WARNING

Before installing your Child Restraint System always:

Read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

Failure to follow all warnings and instructions could increase the risk of the SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if an accident occurs.



WARNING

If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System, the headrest of the respective seating position should be readjusted or entirely removed.

After selecting a proper Child Restraint System for your child and checking that the Child Restraint System fits properly on the seating position, there are three general steps for a proper installation:

- **Properly secure the Child Restraint System to the vehicle.** All Child Restraint Systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the ISOFIX top-tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage and/or with the support leg.

- **Make sure the Child Restraint System is firmly secured.** After installing a Child Restraint System to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. A Child Restraint System secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected.

When installing a Child Restraint System, adjust the vehicle seat and seatback (up and down, forward and rearward) so that your child fits in the Child Restraint System in a comfortable manner.

- **Secure the child in the Child Restraint System.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the Child Restraint System according to the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.



CAUTION

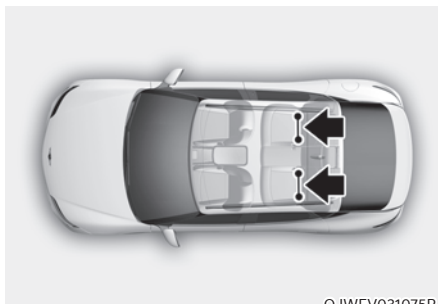
A Child Restraint System in a closed vehicle can become very hot. To prevent burns, check the seating surface and buckles before placing your child in the Child Restraint System.

ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children

The ISOFIX system holds a Child Restraint System during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the Child Restraint System easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the Child Restraint System to the rear seats. ISOFIX anchorages are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that will accommodate a Child Restraint System with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, you must have a Child Restraint System with ISOFIX attachments. (An ISOFIX-seat may only be installed if it has vehicle-specific or universal approval in accordance with the requirements of relevant regulation.)

The Child Restraint System manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the Child Restraint System with its attachments for the ISOFIX anchorages. (CRS with universal approval to relevant regulations need to be fixed additionally with a top-tether strap connected to the corresponding top-tether anchorage point on the back side of the rear seats.)



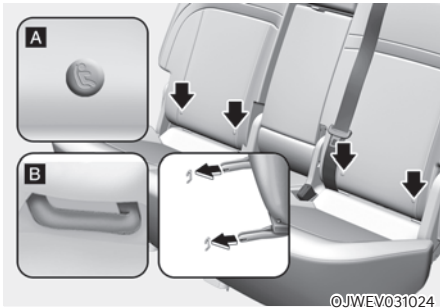
OJWEV031075R

ISOFIX anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration.



WARNING

Do not attempt to install a Child Restraint System using ISOFIX anchorages in the rear centre seating position. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for this seat. Using the outboard seat anchorages, for the CRS installation on the rear centre seating position, can damage the anchorages.



[A] : ISOFIX Anchorage Position Indicator

(Type A- , Type B- )

[B] : ISOFIX Anchorage

ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions, indicated by the symbols.

Securing a Child Restraint System with the “ISOFIX Anchorage System”

To install an i-Size or ISOFIX-compatible Child Restraint System in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX anchorages.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the Child Restraint System and the ISOFIX anchorages.
3. Place the Child Restraint System on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the ISOFIX anchorages according to the instructions provided by the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
4. Follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System's manufacturer for proper installation and connection of the ISOFIX attachments on the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages.

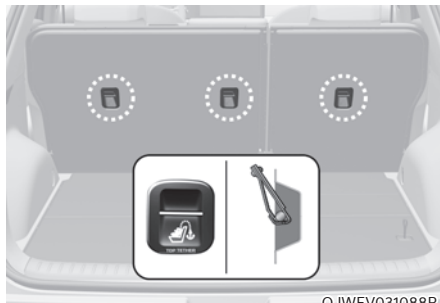


WARNING

Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:

- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. Children can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.
- **NEVER** attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single anchorage. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.
- Always have the ISOFIX system inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer after an accident. An accident can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the Child Restraint System.

Securing a Child Restraint System seat with “Top-tether Anchorage” system



OJWEV031088R

Top-tether anchorages for Child Restraint Systems are located on the package tray.



OJWEV031023

1. Route the Child Restraint System top-tether strap over the seatback. To place the top tether strap, follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
2. Connect the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchorage, then tighten the top-tether strap according to the instructions of your Child Restraint System's manufacturer to firmly attach the Child Restraint System to the seat.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when installing the top-tether:

- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single ISOFIX top-tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.
- Do not attach the top-tether to anything other than the correct top-tether anchorage. It may not work properly if attached to something else.
- Child Restraint System anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted Child Restraint System.

Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Securing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

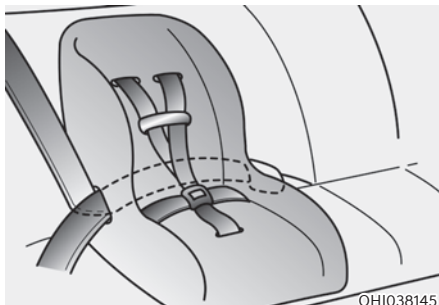
When not using the ISOFIX system, all Child Restraint Systems must be secured to a rear seat with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.



WARNING

ALWAYS place a rear-facing child restraint on a rear seat of the vehicle. Placing a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the child restraint is struck by an inflating air bag.

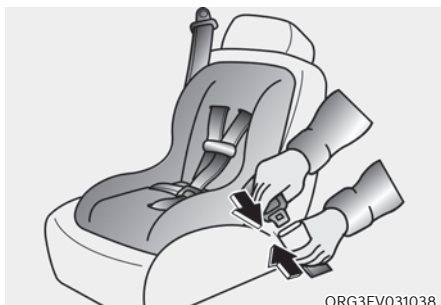
Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!



Installing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

To install a Child Restraint System on the rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the Child Restraint System on a rear seat and route the lap/shoulder belt around or through the Child Restraint System, following the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.



2. Fasten the lap/shoulder belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct “click” sound.



Information

Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.



3. Remove as much slack from the belt as possible by pushing down on the Child Restraint System whilst feeding the shoulder belt back into the retractor.
4. Push and pull on the Child Restraint System to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.

If your Child Restraint System manufacturer recommends the use of a top-tether with the lap/shoulder belt, see page 3-43.

To remove the Child Restraint System, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder belt out of the Child Restraint System and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

If the child seat moves, readjust the length of the seat belt. In Australia the child restraint manufacturer's instructions must be followed when fitting the unit to the vehicle.



WARNING

If a child restraint is installed in the second row centre seat, move the second row seat far back as possible, to minimise contact with the front centre side air bag (if equipped with front centre side air bag).

AIR BAG - SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM



OJWEV033103AU

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Driver's front air bag | 5. Curtain air bag |
| 2. Passenger's front air bag | 6. Driver's knee air bag |
| 3. Front side air bag | 7. Front centre side air bag |
| 4. Rear side air bag | |

This vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Air Bag System for the driver's seat and front passenger's seats.

The front air bags are designed to supplement the three-point seat belts. For these air bags to provide protection, the seat belts must be worn at all times when driving.

You can be severely injured or killed in an accident if you are not wearing a seat belt. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, but do not replace them. Also, air bags are not designed to deploy in every collision. In some accidents, the seat belts are the only restraint protecting you.



WARNING

AIR BAG SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

ALWAYS use seat belts and Child Restraint Systems - every trip, every time, everyone! Even with air bags, you can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if you are improperly restrained or not wearing your seat belt when the air bag inflates.

NEVER place a child in any Child Restraint System or booster seat in the front passenger seat.

An inflating air bag could forcefully strike the infant or child causing serious or fatal injuries.

ABC - Always Buckle Children under age 13 into a back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to travel. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front seat, they must be properly restrained and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.

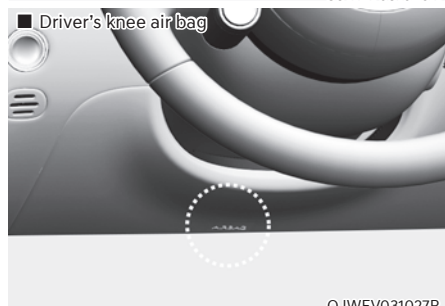
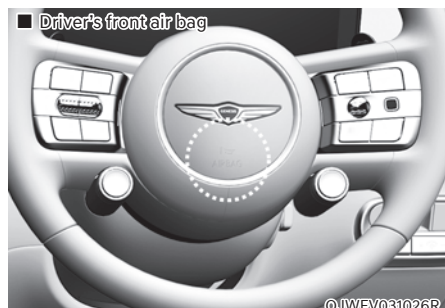
All occupants should sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the vehicle is turned off. If an occupant is out of position during an accident, the rapidly deploying air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.

You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags or lean against the door or centre console.

Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Where are the air bags?

Driver's and passenger's front air bags



Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) and lap/shoulder belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The SRS consists of air bags which are located in the centre of the steering wheel, in the driver's side lower crash pad below the steering wheel, and the passenger's side front panel pad above the glove box.

The air bags are labelled with the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the pad covers.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.



WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from inflating front air bags, take the following precautions:

- **Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.**
- **Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.**
- **Never lean against the door or centre console.**
- **Do not allow the front passenger to place their feet or legs on the instrument panel.**
- **No objects (such as instrument panel cover, mobile phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windscreen glass, and the front passenger panel above the glove box. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.**
- **Do not attach any objects on the front windscreen and inside mirror.**

Side air bags and front centre side air bag

■ Front side air bag



■ Rear side air bag



■ Front centre side air bag (Driver's seat)



Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front and outboard second row seat. Additionally, a front centre side air bag is provided on the inboard side of the driver seatback. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the occupants additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

The side air bags and front centre side air bag are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the front centre side air bag, side and/or curtain air bags and pre-tensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The side air bags and front centre side air bag are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.



WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating side air bag and front centre side air bag, take the following precautions:

- Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.
- Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.
- Hold the steering wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.
- Do not use any accessory seat covers. This could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.
- Do not hang other objects except clothes. In an accident these may cause vehicle damage or personal injury especially when air bag is inflated.
- Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.
- Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side air bag inflates.
- Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bags.
- Do not cause impact to the doors when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position as this may cause the side air bags to inflate.
- If the seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Curtain air bags



Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity.

For vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor the side and/or curtain air bags and pre-tensioners on both sides of the vehicle may deploy if a rollover or possible rollover is detected.

The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

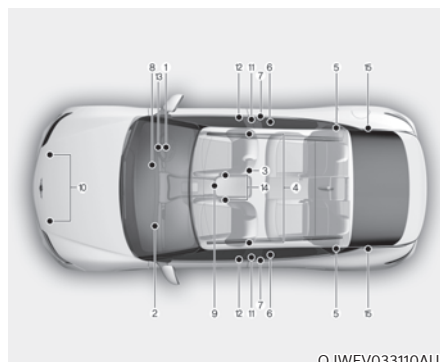


WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating curtain air bag, take the following precautions:

- All occupants must wear seat belts at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.
- Properly secure any Child Restraint System as far away from the door as possible.
- Do not place any objects over an air bag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area where the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, roof side rail.
- Do not hang other objects except clothes, especially hard or breakable objects.
In an accident, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.
- Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.
- Do not attempt to open or repair the side curtain airbags. If the side curtain airbags require repair or maintenance, we recommend that the vehicle is inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

How does the air bags system operate?



OJWEV033110AU

The SRS consists of the following components:

- (1) Driver's front air bag module
- (2) Passenger's front air bag module
- (3) Front centre side air bag module
- (4) Front side air bag modules
- (5) Rear side air bag modules
- (6) Curtain air bag modules
- (7) Front retractor pre-tensioner
- (8) Air bag warning light
- (9) SRS control module (SRSCM) / Rollover sensor
- (10) Front impact sensors
- (11) Side impact sensors (acceleration)
- (12) Side impact sensors (pressure)
- (13) Driver's knee air bag module
- (14) Driver's and passenger's seat belt buckle sensors
- (15) Rear Retractor Pretensioner

The SRSCM (Supplemental Restraint System Control Module) continually monitors all SRS components whilst the Start/Stop button is ON to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pre-tensioner seat belt deployment.



SRS warning light

The SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) air bag warning light on the instrument panel displays the air bag symbol depicted in the illustration. The system checks the air bag electrical system for malfunctions. The light indicates that there is a potential problem with your air bag system, which could include your side and/or curtain air bags used for rollover protection (if equipped with rollover sensor).



WARNING

If your SRS malfunctions, the air bag may not inflate properly during an accident, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

If any of the following conditions occur, your SRS is malfunctioning:

- The light does not turn on for approximately three to six seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- The light stays on after illuminating for approximately three to six seconds.
- The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.
- The light blinks when the vehicle is running.

We recommend that an authorised Genesis repairer inspect the SRS as soon as possible if any of these conditions occur.

During a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration. If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will inflate the front air bags, at the time and with the force needed.

The front air bags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which seat belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the side air bags help provide protection in the event of a side impact or rollover by supporting the side upper body area.

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position and it can be activated within about 3 minutes of the the vehicle being turned off.
- Air bags inflate in the event of certain frontal or side collisions to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate. Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/inflation signal.
- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant. It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.

- In addition to inflating in serious side collisions, vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side and/or curtain air bags and front centre side air bag will inflate if the sensing system detects a rollover.

When a rollover is detected, curtain air bags will remain inflated longer to help provide protection from ejection, especially when used in conjunction with the seat belts. (if equipped with a rollover sensor)

- To help provide protection, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of the extremely short time period in which to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

However, the rapid air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.

- There are even circumstances under which contact with the air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the air bag.

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. The greatest risk is sitting too close to the air bag. An air bag needs space to inflate. It is recommended that drivers sit as far as possible between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

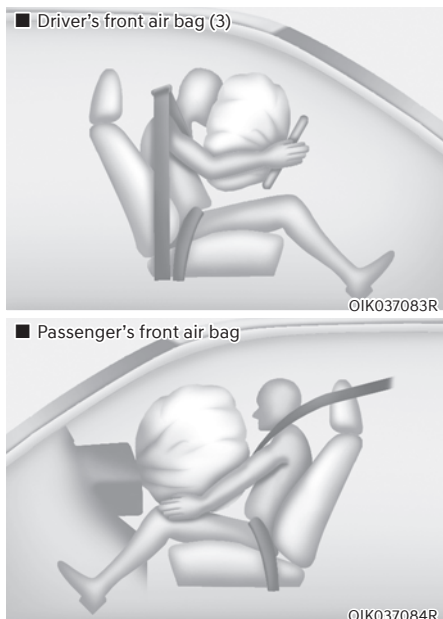


When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.



Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers allows full inflation of the air bags.

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver and front passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.



After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

WARNING

To prevent objects from becoming dangerous projectiles when the front passenger air bag inflates:

- Do not install or place any objects (drink holder, CD holder, stickers, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box where the passenger's air bag is located.
- Do not install a container of liquid air freshener near the instrument cluster or on the instrument panel surface.

What to expect after an air bag inflates

After a frontal or side air bag inflates, it will deflate very quickly. Air bag inflation will not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windscreen or being able to steer. Curtain air bags may remain partially inflated for some time after they deploy.



WARNING

After an air bag inflates, take the following precautions:

- Open your windows and doors as soon as it is safe to do so after impact to reduce prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder released by the inflating air bag.
- Do not touch the air bag storage area's internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated. The parts that come into contact with an inflating air bag may be very hot.
- Always wash exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and mild soap.
- We recommend that an authorised Genesis repairer replace all of the air bags immediately after deployment. Air bags are designed to be **SINGLE USE** only.

Noise and smoke from inflating air bag

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and may produce smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort when breathing because of the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from inhaling the smoke and powder. The powder may aggravate asthma for some people. If you experience respiratory problems after an air bag deployment, seek medical attention immediately.

Though the smoke and powder are nontoxic, they may cause irritation to the skin, eyes, nose, throat, etc. If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and seek medical attention if the symptoms persist.

Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat



Never install a Child Restraint System in the front passenger seat.



WARNING

- **Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **NEVER use a rearward facing Child Restraint System on a seat protected by an AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **Never put a Child Restraint System in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries.**

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?

There are certain types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection. These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts. Damage to the vehicle indicates a collision energy absorption, and is not an indicator of whether or not an air bag should have inflated.

Air bag collision sensors



WARNING

To reduce the risk of an air bag deploying unexpectedly and causing serious injury or death:

- Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bags or sensors are installed.
- Do not perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. If the location or angle of the sensors is altered, the air bags may deploy when they should not or may not deploy when they should.
- Installing bumper guards with non-genuine Genesis parts or non-equivalent parts may adversely affect the collision and airbag deployment performance.

To ensure correct function of the airbag system, we recommend that you replace the bumper with a genuine Genesis part or the equivalent (of the genuine part) specified for your vehicle.

- Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF or ACC position and wait for 3 minutes, when the vehicle is being towed to prevent inadvertent air bag deployment.
- We recommend that all air bag repairs are conducted by an authorised Genesis repairer.



OJWEV031041/OJWEV031042R/OJWEV031043/OJWEV031044R/OJWEV031045/OJWEV031046

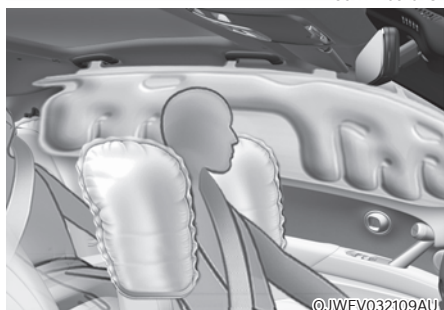
- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. SRS control module / Rollover sensor | 4. Side impact sensor (Acceleration) |
| 2. Front impact sensors | 5. Side impact sensor (Acceleration) |
| 3. Side impact sensor (Pressure) | |

Air bag inflation conditions



Front air bags

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the severity of impact of the front collision.



Side and curtain air bags and front centre side air bag

Side and curtain air bags and the front centre side air bag are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the severity of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the driver's and front passenger's air bags are designed to inflate in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side and curtain air bags and the front centre side air bag are designed to inflate in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

Also, the side and curtain air bags and the front centre side air bag are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor (if equipped with rollover sensor).

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

Air bag non-inflation conditions



In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts.



Front air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved rearward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not provide any additional benefit.

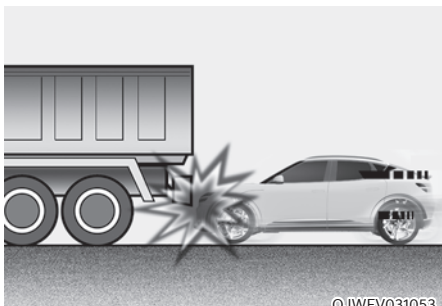


Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move in the direction of the collision, and therefore in side impacts, front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

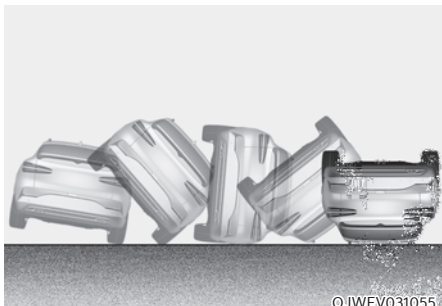
However, side and curtain air bags and the front centre side air bag may inflate depending on the severity of impact.



In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.



Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this “underride” situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “underride” collisions.



Front air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

Information

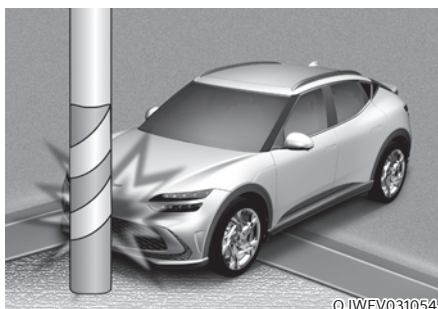
With rollover sensor

The side and curtain air bags and the front centre side air bag may inflate in a rollover situation, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.

Information

Without rollover sensor

The side and/or curtain air bags and the front centre side air bag may inflate when the vehicle is rolled over by a side impact collision, if the vehicle is equipped with side and/or curtain air bags.



Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated and the collision energy is absorbed by the vehicle structure.

SRS care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be immediately inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

We recommend any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats and roof rails be performed by an authorised Genesis repairer. Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.



WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death take the following precautions:

- Do not attempt to modify or disconnect the SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure.
- Do not place objects over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box.
- Clean the air bag pad covers with a soft cloth moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.
- We recommend that inflated air bags be replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer for the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions could increase the risk of personal injury.

Additional safety precautions

Passengers should not move out of or change seats whilst the vehicle is moving. A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or be ejected from the vehicle.

Do not use any accessories on seat belts. Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Do not modify the front seats. Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.

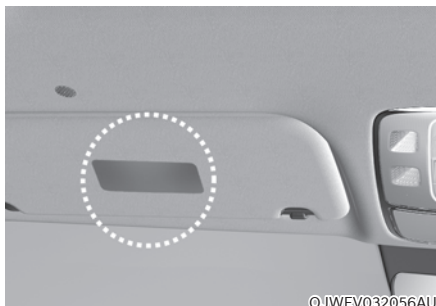
Do not place items under the front seats. Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.

Do not cause impact to the doors. Impact to the doors when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position may cause the air bags to inflate.

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

Air bag warning labels



Air bag warning labels are attached to alert the driver and passengers of potential risks of the air bag system.

Be sure to read all of the information about the air bags that are installed on your vehicle in this Owner's Manual.

4. Instrument cluster

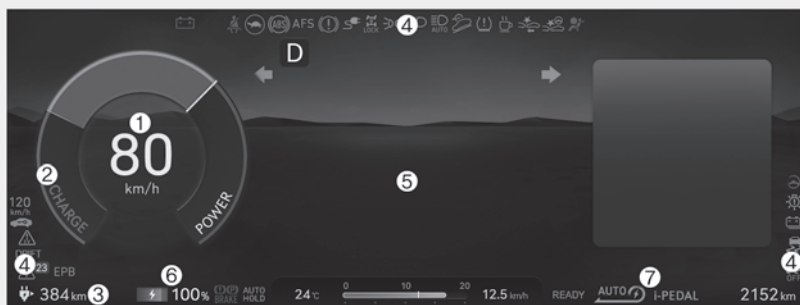
Instrument cluster	4-4
Instrument cluster control.....	4-5
Instrument panel illumination	4-5
Gauges and meters	4-6
Speedometer	4-6
Power/charge gauge	4-6
State Of Charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery.....	4-7
Outside temperature gauge.....	4-8
Odometer	4-8
Distance to empty	4-9
Fuel economy.....	4-9
Reduction gear shift indicator	4-10
Regenerative braking level indicator.....	4-10
Warning and indicator lights	4-11
Ready indicator.....	4-11
Service warning light.....	4-11
Power down indicator light	4-11
Charging indicator light.....	4-12
High voltage battery level warning light	4-12
Seat belt warning light	4-12
Air bag warning light	4-12
Regenerative brake warning light.....	4-12
Parking brake & brake fluid warning light	4-13
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) warning light	4-14
Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light	4-14
Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) warning light.....	4-15
Master warning light.....	4-15
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light	4-15
Low tyre pressure warning light	4-16
Emergency Steering warning light	4-16
Forward safety warning light	4-17
Lane safety indicator light	4-17
Inattentive Driving Warning light.....	4-18
LED headlamp warning light	4-18
Icy road warning light	4-19
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light.....	4-19
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator light.....	4-19
Immobiliser indicator light.....	4-20
Turn signal indicator light.....	4-20
High beam indicator light	4-20
Light ON indicator light.....	4-21
Intelligent Front-Lighting System indicator light	4-21

High Beam Assist indicator light	4-21
AUTO HOLD indicator light	4-21
Cluster display messages	4-22
Shift to P	4-22
Vehicle is in N. Press START button and shift to P (and turn vehicle off).....	4-22
Low key battery	4-22
Low washer fluid	4-22
Press brake pedal to start vehicle	4-22
Key not in vehicle	4-22
Key not detected.....	4-22
Press START button again	4-22
Place the smart key in the emergency start slot and press the start button.....	4-23
Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse	4-23
Shift to P to start vehicle	4-23
Battery discharging due to external / additional electrical devices	4-23
Door, Bonnet, Tailgate open indicator.....	4-23
Low tyre pressure	4-24
Lights	4-24
Wiper	4-24
Check haptic steering wheel system	4-25
Check headlight	4-25
Check turn signal	4-25
Check headlamp LED	4-25
Shift to P to charge/Shift to P to start charging	4-25
Remaining time.....	4-25
Unplug vehicle to start	4-26
Charging door open.....	4-26
Charging stopped. Please check the AC/DC charger	4-26
Charging interrupted. Please check the cable connection	4-27
Check regenerative brakes.....	4-27
Low EV battery / Low battery	4-27
Charge immediately. Power limited	4-28
Power limited due to low EV battery temperature. Charge battery.....	4-28
Battery overheated! Stop safely	4-29
Power limited	4-29
Stop vehicle and check power supply.....	4-30
Check virtual engine sound system.....	4-30
Check electric vehicle system	4-30

4. Instrument cluster

Cluster display.....	4-31
Cluster display control	4-31
View modes	4-31
Driving Assist view	4-32
Utility view.....	4-33
Option menu.....	4-35
Vehicle settings (infotainment system)	4-36
Setting your vehicle	4-36

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER



The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more information, refer to "Gauges and meters" section in this chapter.

OJWEV042061

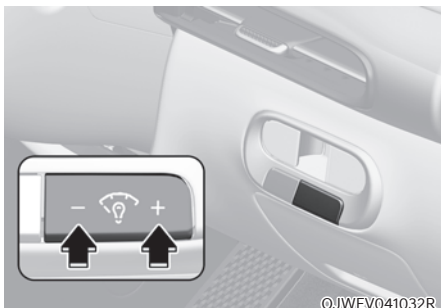
1. Speedometer
2. Power/Charge gauge
3. Distance to empty
4. Warning indicator light
5. Cluster display
6. Battery SOC (State of Charge) gauge
7. Smart recuperation system

Information

Changing the mode (SNOW/COMFORT/ECO/SPORT) by pressing the drive mode button will change the main theme of the instrument cluster.

Instrument cluster control

Instrument panel illumination (if equipped)



OJWEV041032R

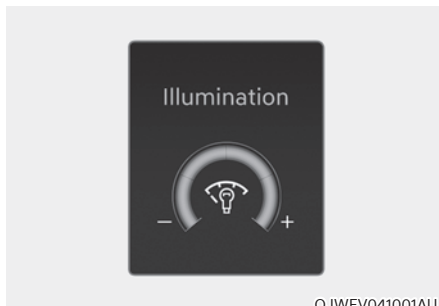
When the vehicle's parking lamps or headlamps are on, press the illumination control switch to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination.

When pressing the illumination control switch, the interior switch illumination intensity is also adjusted.



WARNING

Never adjust the instrument cluster whilst driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or vehicle damage.

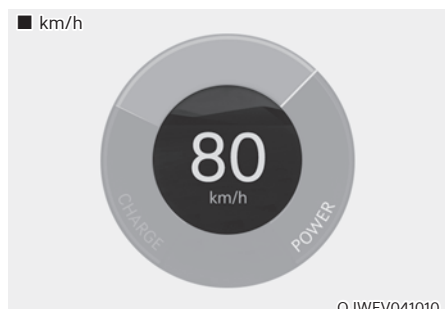


OJWEV041001AU

- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- When the brightness reaches the maximum or minimum level, a chime will sound.

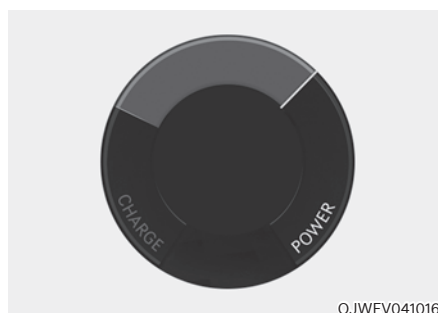
Gauges and meters

Speedometer



The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and the speed is expressed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

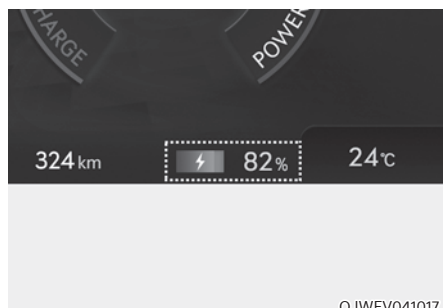
Power/charge gauge



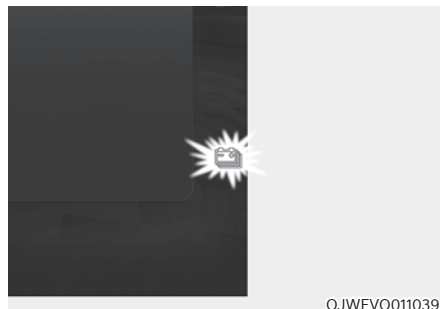
The Power/Charge Gauge shows the energy consumption and recovery status of the electric motor.

- **POWER:**
This gauge shows discharging status of the electric motor when vehicle is accelerating or driving on a uphill road. As more electrical energy is discharged (used) the higher the level on this gauge.
- **CHARGE:**
This gauge shows the charging status of the electric motor when vehicle is decelerating or driving on a downhill road (being charged by the regenerative brakes). As more electrical energy is charged (created) the higher the level on this gauge.

State Of Charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery



- The SOC gauge shows the charging status of the high voltage battery.
- A low percentage number on the indicator would indicate there is not enough energy in the high voltage battery. 100% indicates that the driving battery is fully charged.
- When driving on highways or freeways, make sure to check in advance if the driving battery is sufficiently charged.



1. When the remaining battery is lower than 10 % on the SOC gauge, the warning light (🔋) turns ON to alert you of the battery level.
2. When the warning light (🔋) turns ON, the vehicle can drive an additional 30 ~ 50 km depending on the driving speed, Air-conditioning/heating, weather, driving style, and other factors. Charging is required.

NOTICE

When the high voltage battery level is low, the power down indicator light illuminates and the vehicle power is limited. Charge the battery immediately since your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON.

Outside temperature gauge



OJWEV042014E

This gauge indicates the current outside air temperatures by 1°C (1°F).

Note that the temperature indicated on the instrument cluster may not change as quickly as the outside temperature (there may be a slight delay before the temperature changes.)

You can change the temperature unit from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

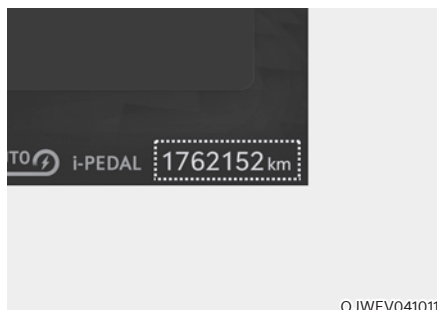
- General Settings → Unit → Temperature
Unit → °C/°F

Both the temperature unit on the instrument cluster and climate control screen will change.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

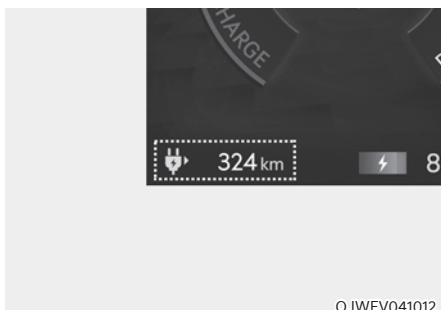
Odometer



OJWEV041011

The odometer indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

Distance to empty



OJWEV041012

- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining electric energy available.
- The distance to empty varies depending on which drive mode is selected between ECO/COMFORT/SPORT mode.

For more detail information, refer to "Distance to empty" in chapter 1.

i Information

- If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.
- The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.
- The distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, condition of the vehicle, ambient temperature & weather and varying terrain.

Fuel economy



OJWEV041040L

The average energy consumption (1) and instant energy consumption (2) is displayed at the bottom of the instrument cluster display.

Automatic reset

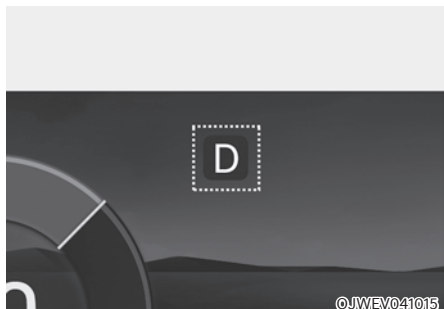
To automatically reset the average energy consumption, select between "After Ignition" or "After Refuelling" from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

Information

For 8-inch instrument cluster, you can check the energy consumption in the Utility view on the cluster display.

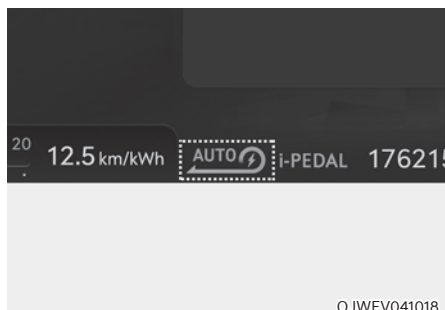
Refer to "View modes" section in chapter 4.

Reduction gear shift indicator



The indicator displays which gear is selected.

Regenerative braking level indicator



This indicator shows the level of the regenerative braking that you set as well as indicating the Smart regenerative system's operation status.

For more details, refer to "Regenerative braking system" in chapter 6.

Warning and indicator lights



Information

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the vehicle. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

Ready indicator

READY

This indicator illuminates:

When the vehicle is ready to be driven.

- ON : Normal driving is possible.
- OFF : Normal driving is not possible, or a problem has occurred.
- Blinking : Emergency driving.

When the ready indicator goes OFF or blinks, there is a problem with the system. In this case, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Service warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a problem with related parts of the electric vehicle control system, such as sensors, etc.

When the warning light illuminates whilst driving, or does not go OFF after starting the vehicle, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Power down indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

- To ensure safety of high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited for the following reasons. (Unless both Service Warning Light and Power Down Indicator Light illuminate at the same time, this is not a failure.)
 - The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
 - The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
 - The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- **Do not start or accelerate the vehicle suddenly when the power down indicator light is ON.**
- **When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the power down indicator light illuminates. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the indicator light ON due to the limitation of vehicle power.**

Charging indicator light



This warning light illuminates:

- When charging the high voltage battery.

High voltage battery level warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the high voltage battery level is low.
- When the warning light turns ON, charge the battery immediately.

Seat belt warning light



This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

For more details, refer to "Seat belts" section in chapter 3.

Air bag warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The air bag warning light illuminates for about 6 seconds and then turns off when all checks have been performed.
- The air bag warning light will remain illuminated if there is a malfunction with the Safety Restraint System (SRS) air bag operation.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Regenerative brake warning light



This warning light illuminates:

When the regenerative brake does not operate and the brakes do not perform well. This causes the Brake Warning light (red) and Regenerative Brake Warning Light (yellow) to illuminate simultaneously.

In this case, drive safely and we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The operation of the brake pedal may be more difficult than normal and the braking distance can increase.

Parking brake & brake fluid warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button in the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds.
 - It remains on if the parking brake is applied.
- When the parking brake is applied.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
 - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
- When the regenerative brake does not operate.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the motor stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required (**For more details, refer to "Brake fluid" section in chapter 9**). After adding brake fluid, check all brake components for fluid leaks. If a brake fluid leak is found, or if the warning light remains on, or if the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Dual-diagonal braking system

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking system. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure is required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional vehicle braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



WARNING

Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning light

Driving the vehicle with a brake warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The ABS warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the ABS.

Note that the hydraulic braking system will still be operational even if there is a malfunction with the ABS.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light



When the ABS warning and Parking Brake warning lights are on simultaneously, it may indicate a problem with the Electronic Brake Force Distribution system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light

When both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

If this occurs, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system warning light

When the ABS warning light is on or both ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid warning lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or tripmeter may not work. Also, the MDPS warning light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS) warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The electric powering steering warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the motor driven power steering. If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Master warning light



This warning light illuminates:

When there is a malfunction in operation in any of the following systems:

- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked (if equipped)
- LED headlamps malfunction (if equipped)
- High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control radar blocked (if equipped)
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction

To identify the details of the warning, look at the cluster display.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light

EPB

This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The EPB warning light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with EPB. If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



Information

The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly. This does not indicate malfunction of EPB.

Low tyre pressure warning light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The low tyre pressure warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tyres are significantly underinflated. (The location of the underinflated tyres are displayed on the instrument cluster.)

For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" section in chapter 8.

This warning light remains ON after blinking for approximately 60 seconds, or repeatedly blinks ON and OFF in 3 second intervals:

When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" section in chapter 8.



WARNING

Safe Stopping

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.
- If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

Emergency Steering warning light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The Emergency Steering warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Forward/Side Safety of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is deselected, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.
- If the warning light remains on after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked when Forward/Side Safety is set, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

This warning light blinks:

- Red: When Forward/Side Safety function is operating.

For more details, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

Forward safety warning light**This warning light illuminates:**

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The Forward Safety warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Forward Safety of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is deselected, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow warning light remains on after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked when Forward Safety is set, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

This warning light blinks:

- Red: When Forward Safety or Forward Cross-Traffic Safety function is operating.

For more details, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

Lane safety indicator light**This indicator light illuminates:**

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The Lane safety indicator light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Grey: When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are not satisfied.
- Green: When Lane Keeping Assist operating conditions are satisfied.
- Yellow: When Lane Safety is deselected, disabled, or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow warning light remains on after the sensor has been uncovered or unblocked when Lane Safety is set, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

This warning light blinks:

- Green: When Lane Keeping Assist is operating.

For more details, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in chapter 7.

Inattentive Driving Warning light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The Inattentive Driving Warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Yellow: When Driver Attention Warning is disabled or a malfunction is detected.

If the yellow indicator light remains on after the front view camera has been uncovered or unblocked, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

This indicator light blinks:

- Yellow: When the Inattentive Driving Warning is operating.

For more details, refer to the "Driver Attention Warning (DAW)" section in chapter 7.

LED headlamp warning light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The LED headlamp warning light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with the LED headlight.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

This warning light blinks:

Whenever there is a malfunction with a LED headlamps related part.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

NOTICE

Continuous driving with the LED Headlamps warning light on or blinking can reduce LED headlamp life.

Icy road warning light (if equipped)



This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the temperature on the outside temperature gauge is approximately below 4°C (40°F), the Icy Road warning light and Outside Temperature Gauge blinks and then illuminates. Also, the warning chime sounds 1 time.

You can activate or deactivate Icy Road Warning function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Cluster → Content Selection → Icy Road Warning



Information

- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.
- If the Icy Road warning light appears whilst driving, you should drive more attentively and safely refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The Electronic Stability Control indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then goes off.
- Whenever there is a malfunction with ESC system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

This indicator light blinks:

Whilst ESC is operating.

For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" section in chapter 6.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you set the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - The ESC OFF indicator light illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" section in chapter 6.

Immobiliser indicator light



This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:

When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle with the Start/Stop button in the ACC or ON position.

- Once the smart key is detected, you can start the vehicle.
- The indicator light goes off after starting the vehicle.

This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:

When the smart key is not in the vehicle.

- If the smart key is not detected, you cannot start the vehicle.

This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:

If the smart key is in the vehicle and the Start/Stop button is ON, but the vehicle cannot detect the smart key.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

This indicator light blinks:

Whenever there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Turn signal indicator light



This indicator light blinks:

When you operate the turn signal lever.

If any of the following occur, there may be a malfunction with the turn signal system.

- The turn signal indicator light illuminates but does not blink
- The turn signal indicator light blinks rapidly
- The turn signal indicator light does not illuminate at all

If any of these conditions occur, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

High beam indicator light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlamps are on and in the high beam position
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

Light ON indicator light

This indicator light illuminates:

When the parking lamps or headlamps are on.

**Intelligent Front-Lighting
System indicator light
(if equipped)**


This indicator light illuminates:

When the high-beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, the Intelligent Front-Lighting System partially turns off the high beam LED lamps.

For more details, refer to "Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFS) (if equipped)" section in chapter 5.

**High Beam Assist indicator
light (if equipped)**


This indicator light illuminates:

When the high-beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO position.

- White: When High Beam Assist is ready to operate.
- Green: When High Beam Assist is operating.

If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, High Beam Assist will switch the high beam to low beam automatically.

For more details, refer to "High Beam Assist (HBA) (if equipped)" section in chapter 5.

AUTO HOLD indicator light


This indicator light illuminates:

- [White] When you activate Auto Hold by pressing the AUTO HOLD switch.
- [Green] When you stop the vehicle completely by pressing the brake pedal with Auto Hold activated.
- [Yellow] Whenever there is a malfunction with the Auto Hold function.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

For more details, refer to "Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)" section in chapter 6.

Cluster display messages

Shift to P

This message is displayed if you try to turn off the vehicle without the gear in the P (Park) position.

If this occurs, the Start/Stop button turns to the ACC position.

Vehicle is in N. Press START button and shift to P (and turn vehicle off)

This message is displayed if you try to turn off the vehicle with the gear in N (Neutral).

To turn off the vehicle:

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The button will change to the ON position.
2. Press the P button to shift to P (Park).
3. Press the Start/Stop button again, then the vehicle will turn off.

Low key battery

This message is displayed if the battery of the smart key is discharged whilst changing the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Low washer fluid (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty. Have the washer fluid reservoir refilled.

Press brake pedal to start vehicle

This message is displayed if the Start/Stop button changes to the ACC position twice by pressing the button repeatedly without pressing the brake pedal.

You can start the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and then pressing the Start/Stop button.

Key not in vehicle

This message is displayed if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you leave the vehicle with the Start/Stop button in the ON or Start position.

Always turn off the vehicle before leaving your vehicle.

Key not detected

This message is displayed if the smart key is not detected when you press the Start/Stop button.

Press START button again

This message is displayed if you were unable to start the vehicle when the Start/Stop button was pressed.

If this occurs, attempt to start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button again.

If the warning message appears each time you press the Start/Stop button, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Place the smart key in the emergency start slot and press the start button

This message is displayed if you press the Start/Stop button whilst the warning message “Key not detected” is displayed. At this time, the immobiliser indicator light blinks.

Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse

This message is displayed if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.

You need to replace the fuse with a new one before starting the vehicle.

If that is not possible, you can start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

Shift to P to start vehicle

This message is displayed if you try to start the vehicle in any other position except P (Park).



Information

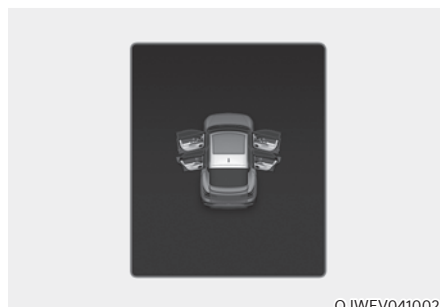
You can start the vehicle with the gear in N (Neutral). But, for your safety, we recommend that you start the vehicle with the gear shifted to P (Park).

Battery discharging due to external / additional electrical devices

This message is displayed if the 12V battery voltage is weak due to any non-factory electrical accessories (ex. instrument panel camera) whilst parking. Be careful that the battery is not discharged.

If the message appears after removing the non-factory electrical accessories, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Door, Bonnet, Tailgate open indicator



This warning is displayed if any door or bonnet or tailgate is left open. The warning will indicate which door is open on the display.



CAUTION

Before driving the vehicle, you should confirm that the doors/bonnet/tailgate are fully closed.

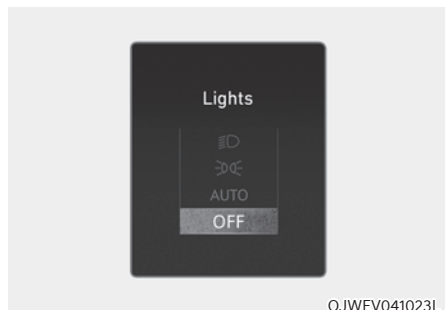
Low tyre pressure



This warning message is displayed if the tyre pressure is low. The corresponding tyre on the vehicle will be illuminated.

For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" section in chapter 8.

Lights

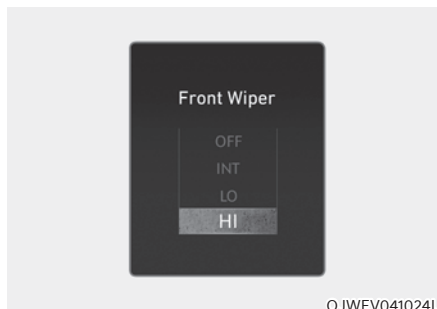


This indicator displays which exterior light is selected using the lighting control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Cluster → Content Selection → Wiper/Lights Display

Wiper



This indicator displays which wiper speed is selected using the wiper control.

You can activate or deactivate Wiper/Lights display function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Cluster → Content Selection → Wiper/Lights Display

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Check haptic steering wheel system (if equipped)

This message is displayed if there is a problem with the haptic steering wheel system. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Check headlight (if equipped)

This message is displayed if the headlamps are not operating properly. A bulb may need to be replaced.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Check turn signal (if equipped)

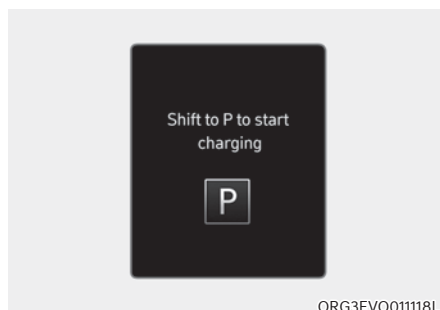
This message is displayed if the turn signal lamps are not operating properly. A bulb may need to be replaced.

We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Check headlamp LED (if equipped)

This message is displayed if there is a problem with the LED headlamps. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

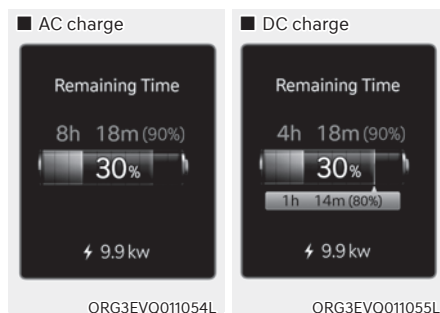
Shift to P to charge/Shift to P to start charging



This message is displayed if you connect the charging cable without the gear in the P (Park) position.

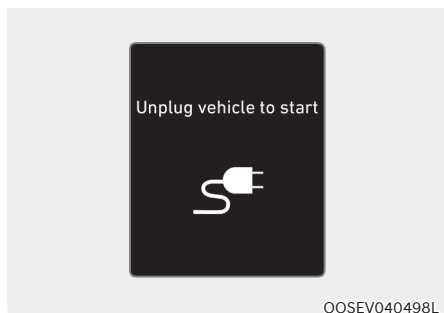
Shift to P (Park) before connecting the charging cable.

Remaining time



This message displays the remaining time needed to charge the battery to the selected target battery charge level.

Unplug vehicle to start



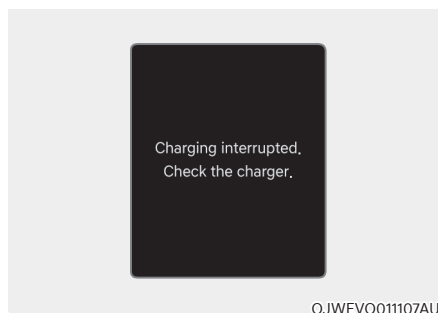
This message is displayed when you start the vehicle without unplugging the charging cable. Unplug the charging cable, and then turn on the vehicle.

Charging door open



This message is displayed when the vehicle is driven with the charging door opened. Close the charging door and then start driving.

Charging stopped. Please check the AC/DC charger

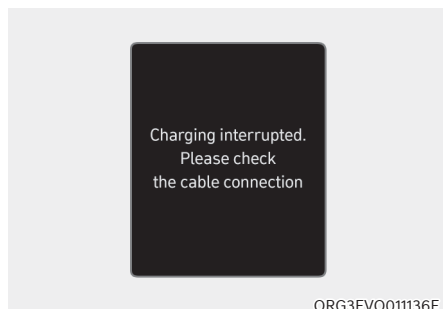


- This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped for the reasons below:
 - There is a problem with the external AC charger or DC charger
 - The external AC charger stopped charging
 - The charging cable is damaged

In this case, check whether there is any problem with the external AC or DC charger and charging cable.

If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle with a normally operating AC charger or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Charging interrupted. Please check the cable connection

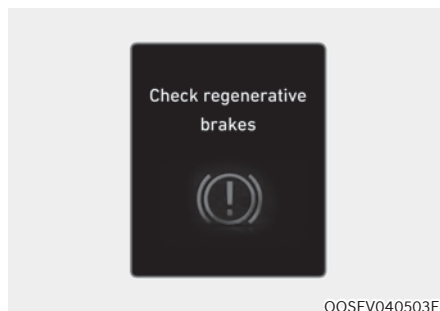


This warning message is displayed when charging is stopped because the charging connector is not correctly connected to the charging inlet.

In this case, separate the charging connector and re-connect it and check whether there is any problem (external damage, foreign substances, etc.) with the charging connector or charging inlet.

If the same problem occurs when charging the vehicle using a replacement charging cable or genuine Genesis portable charger, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

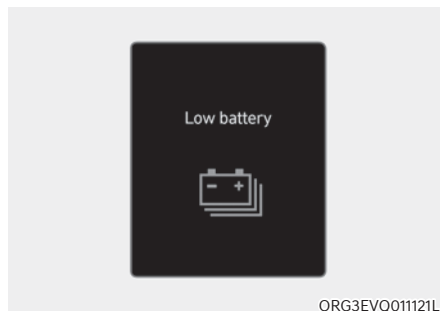
Check regenerative brakes



This warning message is displayed when the regenerative brake system does not work properly.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Low EV battery / Low battery

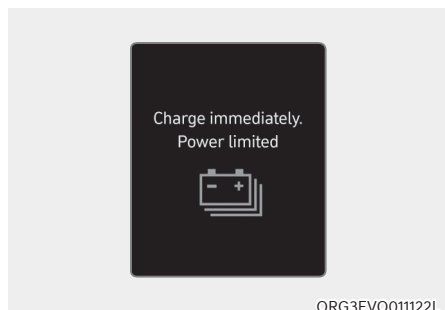


When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 12 %, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light (⚡) on the instrument cluster will turn ON simultaneously.

Charge the high voltage battery immediately.

Charge immediately. Power limited

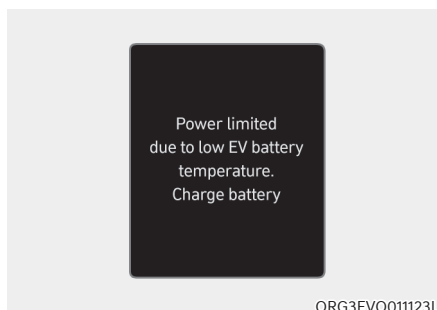


When the high voltage battery level reaches below approximately 6 %, this warning message is displayed.

The warning light (⚡) on the instrument cluster will turn on simultaneously.

The vehicle's power will be reduced to minimise the energy consumption of the high voltage battery. Charge the battery immediately.

Power limited due to low EV battery temperature. Charge battery

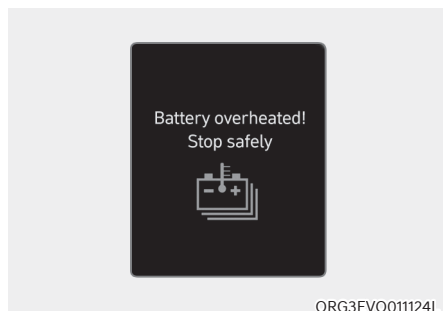


Both warning messages are displayed to protect electric vehicle systems when the temperature outside is low. If the high voltage battery charging level is low and parked outside in low temperature for a long time, vehicle power could be limited.

Charging the battery before driving helps increase power.

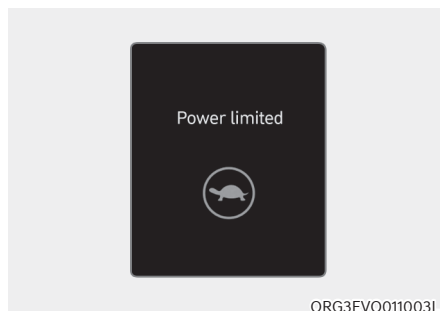
NOTICE

If these warning messages are still displayed even after the ambient temperature has increased, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Battery overheated! Stop safely

This warning message is displayed to protect battery and electric vehicle systems when the high voltage battery temperature is too high.

Turn off the Start/Stop button and stop the vehicle so that the battery temperature decreases.

Power limited

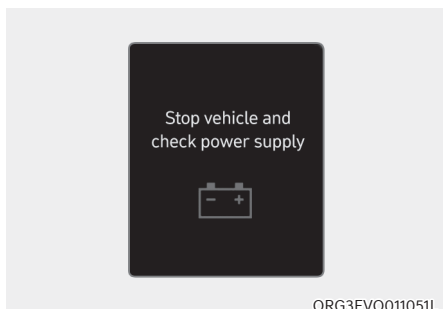
This warning message is displayed:

- To ensure safety of high-powered components of electric vehicles, the power is limited for the following reasons. (Unless both Service Warning Light and Power Down Indicator Light illuminate at the same time, this is not a failure.)
 - The high voltage battery level is too low or voltage is decreasing
 - The temperature of the high voltage battery is too high or too low
 - The temperature of the motor is high

NOTICE

- When this warning message is displayed, do not start or accelerate the vehicle suddenly.
- When the power is limited for the safety of the high-powered parts of an electric vehicle, the warning message is displayed. Your vehicle may not be driven, or may roll back on a slope with the warning message displayed due to the limitation of vehicle power.

Stop vehicle and check power supply



This warning message is displayed when a failure occurs in the power supply system.

In this case, park the vehicle in a safe location and we recommend that you tow your vehicle to the nearest by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Check electric vehicle system

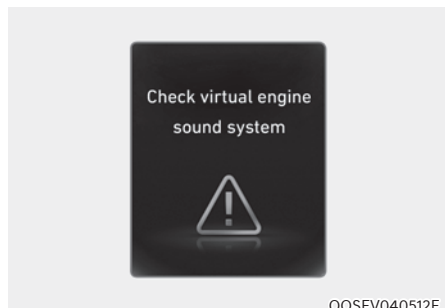
Check electric vehicle system



This warning message is displayed when there is a problem with the electric vehicle control system.

Refrain from driving when this warning message is displayed.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

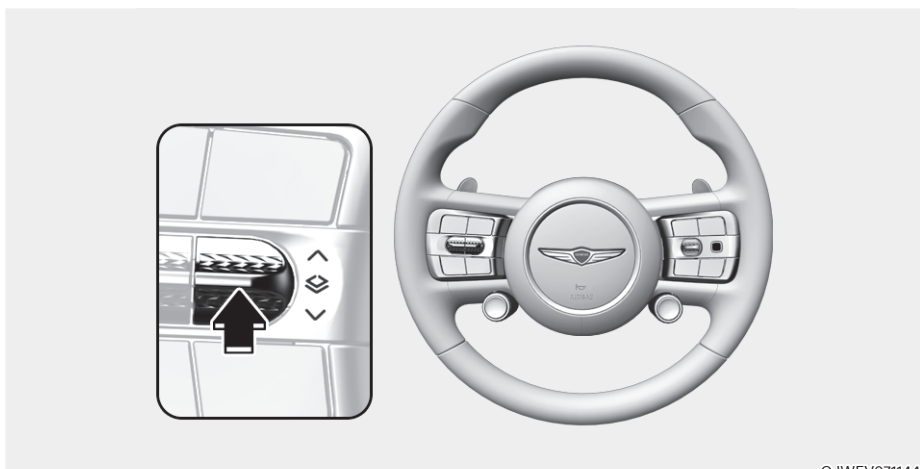


This message is displayed when there is a problem with the Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS).

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

CLUSTER DISPLAY

Cluster display control



OJWEV071144

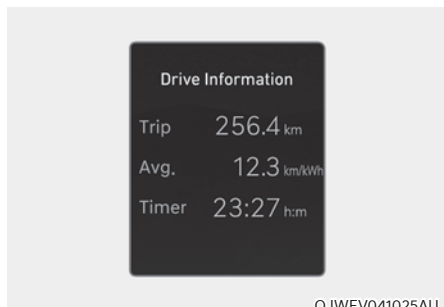
The cluster display modes can be changed by using the control switches.

Switch	Operation	Function
	Press	Classic / Digital gauge mode change
	Press	UP, DOWN switch for changing view mode
	Press	Select switch for pop up Widget navigation mode on/off
	Press and hold	Select/reset switch for pop up Hide/show widget
	Triple press x3	Reset for trip computer

View modes

View modes	Explanation
Driving Assist	Driving Assist view displays the status of the vehicle's Driver Assistance systems.
Map view	Show map and navigation related information
AR View	Show AR navigation and navigation related information
Normal view	Show trip computer or widget on centre without background information

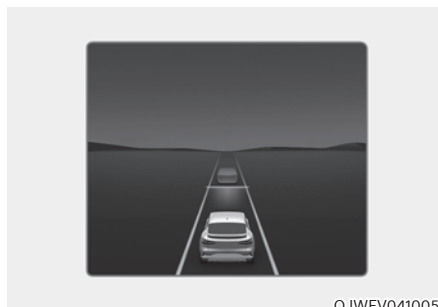
The information provided may differ depending on which features are applicable to your vehicle.



OJWEV041025AU

Driving Assist, Turn by Turn, Utility view modes are displayed in the centre of the cluster display.

Driving Assist view



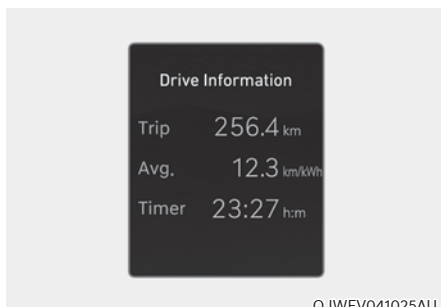
OJWEV041005

The status of Lane Keeping Assist, Smart Cruise Control, Lane Following Assist, etc., is displayed when Driving Assist view is selected.

For more details, refer to each function information section in chapter 7.

Utility view

In the Utility view, using the $\wedge$, $\vee$ (UP, DOWN) switch, you may change through items in the following order.



Drive info

This display shows the trip distance, the average energy consumption, and the total driving time.

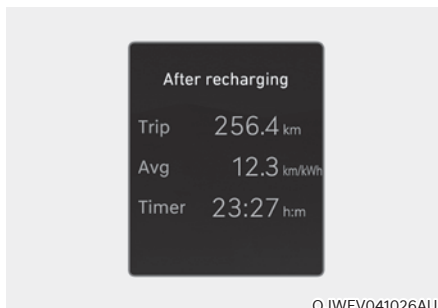
The information is combined for each ignition cycle.

To manually reset the information, triple press the $\blacksquare$ button when viewing the Drive Info. The trip distance, the average energy consumption, and total driving time will reset simultaneously.

The driving information will continue to be counted whilst the vehicle is in the ready (**READY**) mode (for example, when the vehicle is in traffic or stopped at a stop light.)

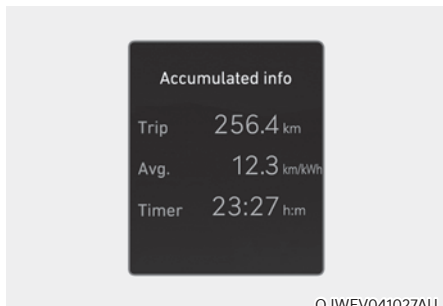
Information

The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 300 metres since the last ignition key cycle before the driving information is recalculated.



After Recharging

Trip distance, total driving time and average energy consumption after the vehicle has been recharged are displayed. To reset manually, triple press the $\blacksquare$ button the steering wheel when 'After recharging' is displayed.



OJWEV041027AU

Accumulated info

This display shows the accumulated trip distance, total driving time and average energy consumption.

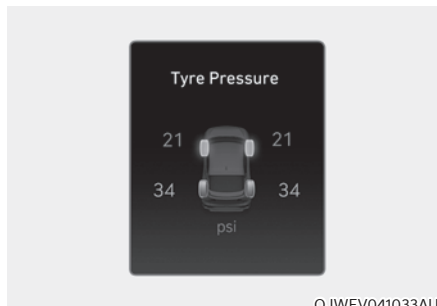
The information is accumulated starting from the last reset.

To manually reset the information, triple press the  button when viewing the Accumulated driving info. The trip distance, the average energy consumption, and total driving time will reset simultaneously.

The accumulated driving information will continue to be counted whilst the vehicle is in the ready (**READY**) mode (for example, when the vehicle is in traffic or stopped at a stop light).

Information

The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 300 metres since the last ignition key cycle before the accumulated driving information is recalculated.

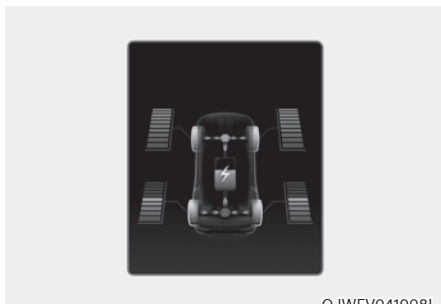


OJWEV041033AU

Tyre pressure / Tyre pressure

The tyre pressure of each tyre is displayed.

For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" section in chapter 8.

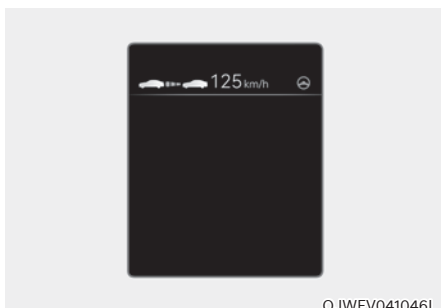


OJWEV041008L

Energy flow / Driving force distribution (if equipped)

- The electric vehicle system informs the driver of the energy flow in various operating modes.
- The distribution status of the driving power of the front and rear wheels are displayed when Auto AWD mode is activated.

For more details, refer to "All Wheel Drive (AWD) (if equipped)" section in chapter 6.



OJWEV041046L

Driving assist information

The current operation conditions of Manual Speed Limit Assist, Smart Cruise Control, Lane Following Assist, etc., is displayed.

Option menu

Press the OK switch to enter Option menu.



WARNING

To avoid driver distractions, do not adjust the setting whilst driving which may lead to an accident.



Information

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

Menu	Explanation
Service messages	To check vehicle warning messages.
Head-up display (if equipped)	To activate or deactivate head-up display.
Driver Assistance settings	To directly display "Driver Assistance" menu on the infotainment system screen
Speed unit	To set speed unit between km/h.

VEHICLE SETTINGS (INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM)



Vehicle Settings in the infotainment system provides user options for a variety of settings including door lock/unlock features, convenience features, driver assistance settings, etc.

Vehicle Settings menu

- Driver Assistance
- Drive Mode
- Head-up Display
- Cluster
- Climate
- Seats
- Lights
- Door
- Convenience

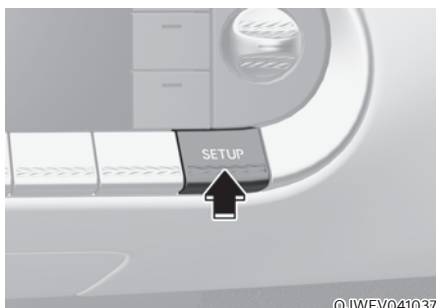
The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.



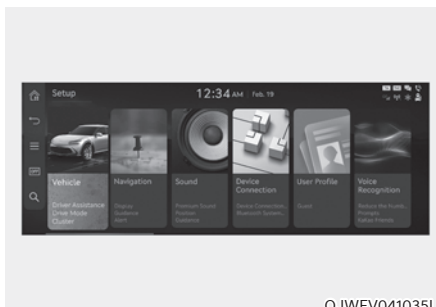
WARNING

Do not operate the Vehicle Settings whilst driving. This may cause distraction resulting in an accident.

Setting your vehicle



1. Press the SETUP button on the main keyboard.



2. Select 'Vehicle' to change the Vehicle Settings.



Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

5. Convenience features

Accessing your vehicle	5-5
Smart key	5-5
Immobiliser system	5-12
Face connect	5-13
Face connect settings	5-13
Face connect operation	5-15
Limitations of face connect	5-15
When purchasing a used vehicle	5-16
Legal compliance	5-16
Fingerprint authentication system	5-17
Fingerprint authentication system settings	5-17
Fingerprint authentication system operation	5-18
Limitations of the system	5-19
Used vehicle	5-19
OTA software update	5-20
Downloading software	5-20
Approving software update	5-20
Preparing software update	5-20
Updating software	5-21
Door locks	5-23
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle	5-23
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle	5-24
Automatic door lock and unlock features	5-27
Electronic child safety lock	5-28
Theft-alarm system	5-30
Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)	5-31
System setting	5-31
System operation	5-31
System precautions	5-32
Integrated memory system	5-34
Storing memory positions	5-34
Recalling memory positions	5-35
Resetting the system	5-35
Seat easy access	5-36
Steering wheel	5-37
Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS)	5-37
Tilt / Telescopic steering	5-38
Horn	5-39
Heated steering wheel	5-40

Mirrors	5-41
Inside rearview mirror	5-41
Outside rearview mirrors	5-42
Reverse parking aid	5-44
Digital Side Mirror (DSM)	5-46
Operating the digital side mirrors	5-47
DSM warnings and indicators	5-47
Displaying the guidelines	5-48
Adjusting the DSM cameras	5-48
Folding/Unfolding the DSM cameras	5-49
Switching to wide view when backing up	5-50
Setting the DSM screen brightness	5-51
DSM camera defroster	5-51
Windows	5-52
Power windows	5-53
Remote window opening/closing function	5-56
Vision roof	5-57
Resetting the power sunshade	5-59
Exterior features	5-60
Roof rack	5-60
Bonnet	5-61
Front boot	5-62
Power tailgate	5-64
Smart tailgate	5-70
Charging door	5-72
Head-Up Display (HUD)	5-74
Head-Up Display settings	5-74
Head-Up Display information	5-74
Precautions whilst using the Head-Up Display	5-75
Lighting	5-76
Exterior lights	5-76
Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFS)	5-81
System setting	5-81
System operation	5-81
System malfunction and limitations	5-82

5. Convenience features

High Beam Assist (HBA)	5-84
High Beam Assist setting	5-84
High Beam Assist operation	5-85
High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations	5-86
Interior lights	5-87
Interior lamp AUTO cut	5-87
Front lamps	5-87
Rear lamps	5-88
Vanity mirror lamp	5-88
Glove box lamp	5-88
Mood lamp	5-89
Tailgate lamp	5-89
Front boot lamp	5-90
Puddle lamp	5-90
Wipers and washers	5-92
Front windscreen wipers	5-92
Windscreen washers	5-94
Automatic climate control system	5-95
Automatic temperature control mode	5-96
Manual temperature control mode	5-97
System operation	5-108
System maintenance	5-109
Windscreen defrosting and defogging	5-111
To defog inside windscreen	5-111
To defrost inside windscreen	5-112
Defogging logic	5-112
Rear window defroster	5-113
Climate control additional features	5-114
Auto defogging system	5-114
Auto dehumidify	5-115
Recirculating air when washer fluid is used	5-116
Sunroof inside air recirculation	5-116
Auto. Controls that use climate control settings (for driver's seat)	5-116

Storage compartment	5-117
Centre console storage.....	5-117
Glove box	5-118
Sunglasses holder	5-118
Interior features	5-119
Cup holder	5-119
Sunvisor	5-120
Power outlet	5-121
USB charger	5-122
Wireless smart phone charging system	5-123
Vehicle to load (V2L)	5-125
Clock	5-125
Coat hook.....	5-125
Floor mat anchor(s).....	5-126
Rear side window sunshades	5-126
Luggage net holder	5-127
Cargo security screen	5-127
Infotainment system.....	5-129
USB Port.....	5-129
Antenna.....	5-129
Steering wheel remote controls.....	5-129
Infotainment system	5-130
Voice recognition	5-130
Bluetooth® wireless technology	5-131
Bang&Olufsen sound system	5-131

ACCESSING YOUR VEHICLE

Smart key



OJWEV051001L

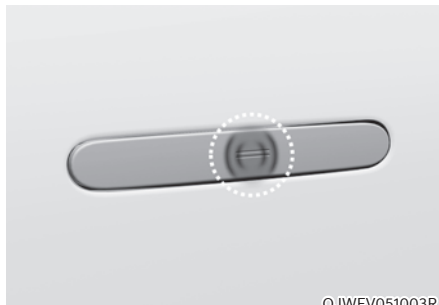


OJWEV051002L

Your Genesis vehicle uses a Smart Key, which you can use to lock or unlock the driver and passenger doors, the charging door or the rear tailgate.

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Tailgate open/close
4. Charging door open/close
5. Remote Start
6. Remote Smart Parking Assist (Forward)
7. Remote Smart Parking Assist (Rearward)

Locking your vehicle



OJWEV051003R

To lock your vehicle using the door handle touch sensor or the Smart Key:

1. Make sure all doors, the bonnet and the tailgate are closed.
2. Make sure you have the smart key in your possession.
3. Touch the touch sensor on the door handle (the engraved part) or press the Door Lock button (1) on the smart key. The hazard warning lights will blink.
4. Make sure the doors are locked by pulling the door handle.

Information

- The outside rearview mirrors will fold if 'Enable on Door Unlock' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
 - Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Welcome Mirror/Light → Enable on Door Unlock
- The door handle touch sensor will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m from the outside door handle.
- If the smart key is not recognised, the touch sensor will not work. For more information, refer to "Smart key precautions" section in this chapter.
- Touching the door handle touch sensor does not unlock the doors. To unlock the doors, refer to the following page.
- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Note that you cannot lock your vehicle using the door handle touch sensor if any of the following occur:

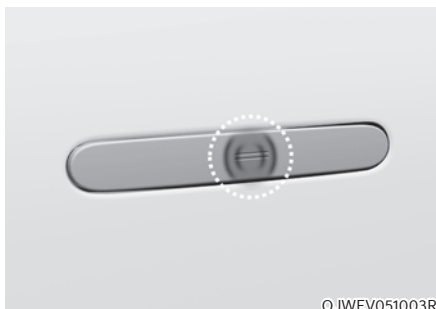
- The Smart Key is in the vehicle.
- The Start/Stop button is from ACC or ON position.
- Any of the doors are open except for the tailgate.



WARNING

Do not leave the Smart Key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unsupervised children could press the Start/ Stop button and may operate power windows, lock the doors or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious injury or death.

Unlocking your vehicle



To unlock your vehicle using the door handle touch sensor or the Smart Key:

1. Make sure you have the smart key in your possession.
2. Touch the touch sensor on the door handle or press the Door Unlock button (2) on the smart key. All doors will unlock and the hazard warning lights will blink two times.
3. After unlocking the doors, the doors will automatically relock after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

i Information

- The outside rearview mirrors will unfold if 'Enable on Door Unlock' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
 - Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Welcome Mirror/Light → Enable on Door Unlock

- The door handle touch sensor will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m from the outside door handle.

- The doors may lock or unlock if the touch sensor of the outer door handle is activated whilst washing your car or due to heavy rain.

- To prevent unintentional door lock or unlock:

Press the lock button on the smart key and immediately press the unlock button along with the lock button for more than 4 seconds. The hazard warning lights will blink four times. At this time, the doors will not lock or unlock even though the touch sensor is touched on the outside door handle.

To deactivate the function, press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key.

- The doors may not lock or unlock in the following situations.
 - If the touch sensor is touched with gloves on
 - If the door is approached at speed
- During a car wash or rain, in order to minimise unintentional operation of the touch sensor, the touch sensor may become insensitive. This is not a malfunction.

Opening the tailgate



To open the tailgate:

1. Make sure you have the smart key in your possession.
2. Press either the tailgate open/close button in the vehicle or press and hold the Tailgate Unlock button (3) on the smart key for more than one second. The hazard warning lights will blink two times and the tailgate will open.

i Information

The tailgate open/close button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7 m from the tailgate.

Remotely opening and closing the charging door

To open charging door remotely:

Press the Charging Door Open/Close button (4) on the smart key for more than one second, or press the charging door open/close button on the vehicle whilst carrying the smart key.

To close the charging door:

Press the Charging Door Open/Close button (4) on the smart key for more than a second whilst the door is open, or press the charging door open/close button on the vehicle whilst carrying the smart key when the charging door is opened.

Remotely initiating electricity charging

To remotely start charging the vehicle:

Press the charging door open/close button on the smart key whilst the charging connector is connected to the vehicle.

For more details, refer to “Charging the electric vehicle (abrupt stop)” section in chapter 1.

Remotely starting vehicle

You can start the vehicle using the Remote Start button (5) on the smart key.

To start the vehicle remotely:

1. Press the door lock button on the smart key within 10 m into the vehicle.
2. Press the Remote Start button (5) for more than 2 seconds within 4 seconds after pressing the door lock button.
3. The vehicle will start.



Information

- **The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the remote start function to start.**
- **The vehicle displays “Smart Key must be present to keep the vehicle running” if you get on the vehicle without a registered smart key.**
- **The vehicle turns off if you do not get on the vehicle within 10 minutes after remotely starting the vehicle.**
- **The Remote Start button (5) may not operate if the smart key is not within 10 m.**
- **The vehicle will not remotely start if the vehicle bonnet or tailgate is opened.**

Remotely moving vehicle forward or rearward (if equipped)

With the smart key, the driver can move the vehicle forward or rearward using the Forward/Rearward button (6, 7) on the smart key.

For more details, refer to “Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2) (if equipped)” section in chapter 7.

Start-up

You can start the vehicle without inserting the key.

For more details, refer to the “Start/Stop button” section in chapter 6.



Information

If the smart key is not moved for some time, the detection function for smart key operation will pause. Lift the smart key to activate the detection again.

NOTICE

To prevent damaging the smart key:

- Keep the smart key in a cool, dry place to avoid damage or malfunction. Exposure to moisture or high temperature may cause the internal circuit of the smart key to malfunction which may not be covered under warranty.
- Avoid dropping or throwing the smart key.
- Protect the smart key from extreme temperatures.

Mechanical key

If the Smart Key does not operate normally, you can lock or unlock the driver's door by using the mechanical key.



OJWEV051097

1. Press the Genesis text section of the Mechanical key to remove the case.



OJWEV051098

2. Remove the mechanical key from the case.
3. After use, reinstall the mechanical key in the reverse order of removal.

Loss of a smart key

A maximum of two Smart Keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you happen to lose your smart key, it is recommended that you should immediately contact your authorised Genesis repairer for assistance.

Smart key precautions

The smart key may not work if any of the following occur:

- The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
- Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- If your windows are tinted, especially with metallic window tint, it may cause frequency interference, reducing the smart key operating range.

If the smart key does not work correctly, you can lock and unlock the doors using the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

If the smart key is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phone's normal operational signals. This is specifically relevant when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails. When possible, avoid keeping the smart key and your mobile phone in the same location (such as pants or jacket pocket) in order to avoid interference between the two devices.

- Do not hang objects too much on the key chain of the smart key. The objects or smart key it may fall out.
- The smart key may become discoloured with prolonged use. Discolouration is not covered under warranty.

Information

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

WARNING

People with medical devices such as implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should not carry the smart key near the heart. The smart key system may affect the operation of such implanted medical devices. Failure to do so may result in interference with the medical device, which could result in serious injury.

NOTICE

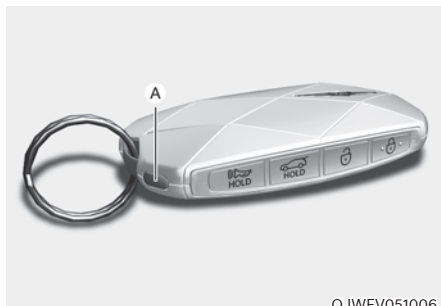
- **Keep the smart key away from electromagnetic materials that block electromagnetic waves to the key surface.**
- **Always have the smart key with you when leaving the vehicle. If the smart key is left near the vehicle, the vehicle battery may be discharged.**

Battery replacement

If the Smart Key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one.

Battery Type: CR2450

To replace the battery:



OJWEV051006

1. Press the button(A) to remove the keyring fixed appliance.
2. Insert a flat head screwdriver into the inner groove to remove the battery cover.



OJWEV051237

3. Remove battery cover using a flat head screwdriver.
4. Remove the old battery and insert the new battery. Make sure the battery position is correct.
5. Reinstall the battery cover and smart key cover in the reverse order of removal.

If you suspect your smart key might have sustained some damage, or you feel your smart key is not working correctly, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

THIS PRODUCT CONTAINS A BUTTON BATTERY

If swallowed, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries within 2 hours.

Keep batteries out of reach of children.

If you think batteries may have been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek immediate medical attention.



Information



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

Immobiliser system

The immobiliser system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the vehicle is disabled.

When the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the immobiliser system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, the system does not recognise the coding of the key.

Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, then press the Start/Stop button to the ON position again.

In some circumstances, the vehicle may not recognise your smart key if another smart key device is nearby or a metal object such as a key chain is causing interference with the smart key.

If this occurs, your vehicle may not start. Remove any metal objects or additional keys near the smart key before attempting to start the vehicle again.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of the key, it is recommended that you contact your authorised Genesis repairer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.



WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle.

NOTICE

The transponder in your key is an important part of the immobiliser system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobiliser system malfunction could occur.

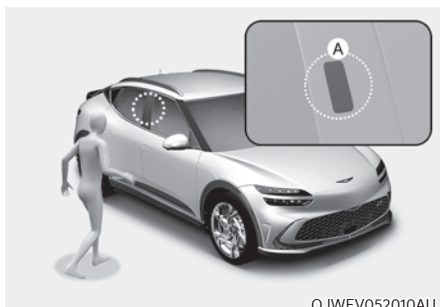
FACE CONNECT (IF EQUIPPED)

Face Connect allows the driver to lock and unlock the vehicle without a smart key, by recognising the driver's face. Register the face in the 'Driver Profile' from the infotainment system to use Face Connect. A maximum of 2 faces can be registered, one for each driver profile.

Face connect settings

The driver can register a new face or delete the registered face from the profile menu in the infotainment system.

Registering face



OJWEV052010AU

[A]: face recognition camera

1. Place both smart keys inside the vehicle.
2. Select 'Vehicle Settings → User Profile → Driver 1 or Driver 2' from the infotainment system whilst the Start/ Stop button is ON.
3. Enter the profile password and select 'Face Register/Remove → Register'. The circular light on the face recognition camera illuminates in white and starts rotating.

It indicates the progress of face registration:

Progress	Circular light (A)
Face registration in progress	Rotating in white
Face registration completed	Green
Face registration failed	Red

4. Follow the instruction and exit the vehicle. Look into the camera lens whilst keeping your face 0.3 m – 0.8 m away from the camera. The system will start registering your face.
- Keep the driver's door opened whilst registering your face. Audio guidance may be provided from the speaker inside the vehicle.
 - If the audio guidance is provided whilst the door and window are both closed, the window may open automatically.
 - Check if the camera lens is covered with foreign substances such as raindrops or dust. If so, clean the camera lens before registering your face.

Information

To increase recognition rates whilst registering a face.

- Do not cover the face with masks or other accessories and look into the face recognition camera lens straight ahead.
- From the centre of the face, naturally change directions of the face to register.
- Register the face indoors or away from direct sunlight.

- If face registration is not possible, audio guidance is provided from the vehicle's interior speaker 15 seconds after registration starts. Faces cannot be registered in the following situations.
 - When the face is covered by a mask, sunglasses, hat, etc.
 - When the driver is not in front of the face recognition camera.
 - When the face is not directly facing the camera lens.
 - When the face is too far away (over 0.8 m) from the camera.
 - When the face is too close (0.3 m or less) to the camera.
- Face registration may be cancelled in the following situations.
 - When the infotainment system screen is changed.
 - When the vehicle is turned off.
 - When you start driving.
- After registration, if there are difficulties recognising the face due to changes in appearance such as makeup, beard, or glasses, register the face again.

Deleting registered face information

1. Place one or more smart keys inside the vehicle.
2. Whilst the Start/Stop button is ON, select 'Vehicle Settings → User Profile → Driver 1 or Driver 2 → Face Recognition' from the infotainment system.
3. Enter the profile password and select 'Register/Remove Face → Remove'.
4. Delete the registered face information according to the message 'Are you sure you want to delete all information of driver 1?'

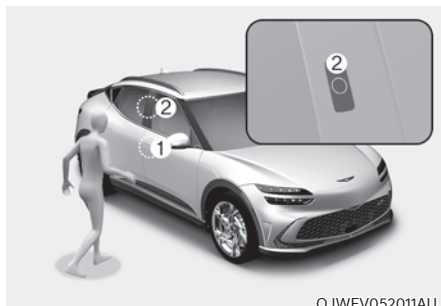


Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Face connect operation

Lock/Unlocking doors with face recognition



OJWEV052011AU

By recognising a registered face, the vehicle door can be locked or unlocked without a smart key. Touch the centre of the door lock/unlock sensor (1) on the outer door handle to start face recognition. The circular light (2) on the face recognition camera illuminates in white and starts rotating. Look into the camera lens straight ahead within a distance of 0.3 – 0.8 m. When the face recognition is complete, the circular light will change its colour to green and the vehicle door will lock or unlock.

Category	Circular light colour
Recognising	White
Recognition successful	Green
Recognition failed	Red

i Information

- The camera cannot recognise a face if it is covered with a mask. Take off the mask or at least lower the mask until the nose is completely visible.
- Touching the sensor on the outer door handle whilst carrying a smart key will lock or unlock the door. At this time, Face Connect does not operate.
- For more details on locking and unlocking the door, refer to “Smart key” in chapter 5.

Limitations of face connect

- Face Connect may not work when:
 - Scanning an unregistered face.
 - The registered face is not directly in front of the camera.
 - The camera lens is covered with water or foreign substances.
 - The face is significantly different from the registered face due to changes in appearance from heavy makeup, beard, or plastic surgery.
 - The eyes are not visible due to wearing sunglasses.
 - The sunlight is strong, or when there is heavy rain or snow.
 - The face is partially covered with an umbrella or raincoat during bad weather.

- Faces of similar appearance (such as twins) may be recognised by Face Connect and lock or unlock the door.
- If you cannot lock or unlock the vehicle door due to malfunction of the face recognition camera or controller, we recommend that you have your vehicle be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- When you have your vehicle serviced due to failures of the Face Connect system or related parts, all registered faces may be deleted during the repair. Carry two smart keys to your visit and re-register your face immediately after your vehicle is repaired.
- You cannot use the Face Connect system when the vehicle is discharged.
- If the face entry check box in infotainment system is unchecked, face connect system is deactivated. It is activated automatically when a face is registered
- If you have left your smart key or digital key in your vehicle and locked the vehicle door with Face Connect, keep the smart key out of sight to prevent theft.



WARNING

Do not register a child's face on the vehicle as unexpected accidents may occur.

When purchasing a used vehicle

If you purchase a used vehicle, you should confirm and delete all registered faces in Driver 1 and Driver 2 profiles. If a face is registered, the message “Biometric authentication active” appears on the instrument cluster once when the vehicle is turned on whilst the doors are unlocked

Legal compliance

This system uses facial recognition and authentication which may be considered “biometrics” under law. Use of this system consents to the collection, use, and storage of your data for the disclosed activities. (By setting your Facial Recognition Profile, you consent to using facial recognition for locking and unlocking the vehicle.) We will only use or share your data as needed for system use, maintenance, and storage. Stored data cannot be converted into your facial image. You may delete your facial recognition data at any time.

FINGERPRINT AUTHENTICATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Fingerprint authentication system allows the driver to have access to personal information, unlock profile and exit valet mode with a enrolled fingerprint.

Fingerprint authentication system settings

To use the system, the driver's fingerprint should be enrolled in the driver's profile. The drivers can set or delete their fingerprint through the infotainment system. Follow the following procedure.

Enrolling fingerprint



OJWEV051012

[A] : Fingerprint sensor

1. Turn on the vehicle.
2. Select 'Setup → User Profile Settings → Driver 1 → Fingerprint Identification → Set/Delete Fingerprint → Set' in the infotainment system screen.
3. Place the finger that you wish to enroll on the fingerprint sensor according to the instruction.
4. Following the instructions, place several parts of your fingerprint until the scanning process is complete.
5. Once the scanning process is completed, the message 'Saving fingerprint....' appears and the fingerprint enrollment process is processed.

6. When the fingerprint enrollment process is completed in the vehicle, the status is displayed on the infotainment system.

Deleting fingerprint

1. Select 'Setup → User Profile Settings → Driver 1 → Fingerprint Identification → Set/Delete Fingerprint → Delete' in the infotainment system.
2. Delete the enrolled fingerprint according to the message 'Delete all Driver 1 fingerprints?'
3. Once the fingerprint is deleted, the status is displayed on the infotainment system screen.

Information

- If no fingerprint is enrolled in the infotainment system, the sensor will not operate.
- The maximum of two fingerprints can be enrolled. Driver 1 and Driver 2 can enroll one fingerprint each.
- Please remove all substances including protection film from the fingerprint sensor and enroll your fingerprint.
- The fingerprint enrollment process is cancelled when the following conditions occur:
 - The infotainment system screen is altered.
 - The Start/Stop button turns on or off.
 - The gear is shifted and the vehicle is driven.

 CAUTION

Do not participate in duplicating your fingerprint with anyone.

NOTICE

Touch the fingerprint authentication sensor gently. Fingerprint authentication attempts with excessive force may fail.

Fingerprint authentication system operation

Touch control

The convenient features such as personal information access, profile unlock, and valet mode exit are available with the fingerprint authentication system.

When the fingerprint shape appears on the infotainment system screen, you should place your finger on the recognition sensor in the vehicle according to the instruction message for authorisation and then you can operate the linked features without entering the password.

If the fingerprint authentication system does not work, pull your finger away from the fingerprint authentication sensor and then try again.

Fingerprint linked features can be turned on or off from the Settings menu. Select:

- ‘Setup → User Profile Settings → Driver 1 (or Driver 2) → Fingerprint Identification

Fingerprint linked features	Characteristic
Personal information access	Use with a fingerprint without a password
Profile unlock	
Valet mode exit	

 Information

- If the same fingerprint is registered for Driver 1 and Driver 2, the authentication result is linked to Driver 1, when authentication is successful.
- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Limitations of the system

- Fingerprint authentication system may not work when:
 - Trying to authorise with an unregistered fingerprint.
 - Not touching the centre of fingerprint authentication sensor.
 - Water or substances are on your finger or the sensor.
 - The film on the sensor is not removed.
 - The registered fingerprint is damaged or swollen.
 - The hand is overly dry.
 - The sensor is touched briefly.
- If fingerprint authentication fails over 5 consecutive times, fingerprint recognition is temporarily restricted. You should try it later or try other methods such as entering your password.
- When you have an authorised Genesis repairer repair parts due to fingerprint authorisation system or related part failure, your registered fingerprint might be deleted. Have your smart key when you have an authorised Genesis repairer inspects this system.
- You cannot use the fingerprint sensor when the vehicle is discharged.
- If you turn the vehicle on or off whilst proceeding the fingerprint authorisation, the process will not be complete.



WARNING

Do not enroll children's fingerprints in the vehicle.

If you enroll children's fingerprints and leave them in the vehicle, unexpected accidents may occur.

Used vehicle

When purchasing a used vehicle

If you purchase a used vehicle, you should confirm and delete all of the enrolled fingerprints in Driver 1 and Driver 2 profiles.

Remotely Starting the Vehicle

If Start Vehicle is selected from the Driver 1 or Driver 2 User Profile settings menu, and the door is unlocked with the Genesis Digital Key App or the Genesis Connected Service App whilst the vehicle is remotely started, the vehicle turns off if the fingerprint sensor does not verify your fingerprint. And for Genesis Connected Service App, see additional information in separately supplied manual.



Information

For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

OTA SOFTWARE UPDATE (IF EQUIPPED)

The OTA (Over-the-Air) software update feature allows you to wirelessly update software to the latest version. Using this feature, you can keep your vehicle system up to date with the latest software.

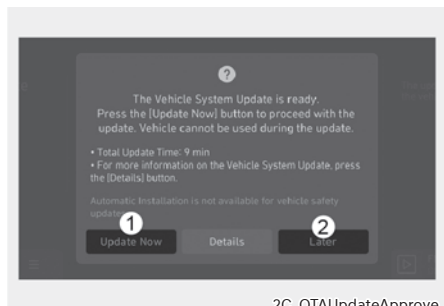
Information

The OTA software update feature is only available for Genesis Connected Services users.

Downloading software

The latest software can be downloaded automatically whilst driving. After the latest software has been successfully downloaded, you will receive a notification on your phone or the vehicle screen that the software update is available.

Approving software update



After the vehicle is turned off, the vehicle system will allow you to start the update.

- To start the update, press 'Update Now' (1).
- To postpone the update, press 'Later' (2).

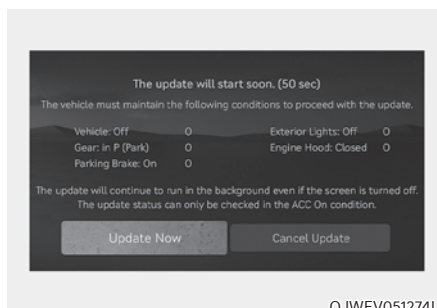
Preparing software update

If you press the 'Update Now' button on the screen, the vehicle will begin installing the update automatically. The following conditions must be satisfied:

- The vehicle must be off.
- The gear must be in P (Park).
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) must be applied.
- The exterior lights must be turned off.
- The bonnet must be closed.
- The battery must be sufficiently charged.
- The systems to be updated must not be running.

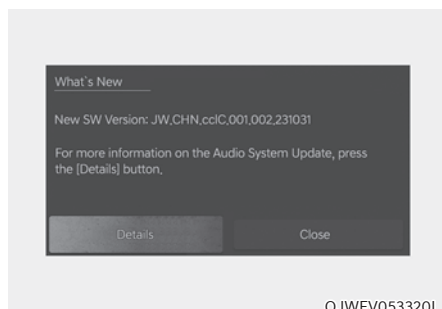
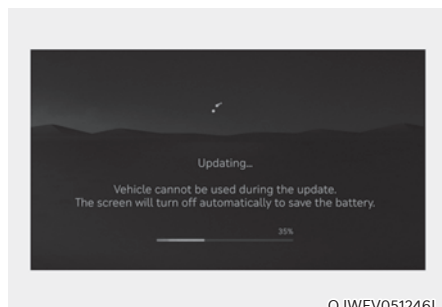
Information

The battery and system status are automatically checked by the vehicle.



- To update immediately, press 'Update Now'.
- To cancel the update, press 'Cancel Update'.

Updating software



You can see the progress of the updating on the screen.

After the update is complete, you will receive a notification on your phone or the vehicle screen that the software update is complete.

i Information

The screen turns off automatically after 3 minutes to save the battery. If the screen turns off automatically, you can check the update progress by pressing the Start/Stop button.

i Information

- After the update starts, you can exit the vehicle.
- The OTA software update feature is only available on OTA enabled vehicles.
- The update details may vary depending on the installed software version.
- Check the notice for the OTA software update on the Genesis Brand website.
- If the update fails, the update recovery will automatically proceed. If you want to retry the software update, even after a successful recovery, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
- If the update or recovery fails, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
- If there is a safety issue, you may be notified by the GENESIS Call Centre to provide services such as emergency dispatch.
- After the update is complete, it may provide new functions or improvements. For more information, see the “OTA Software Update” page on the Genesis Brand website.

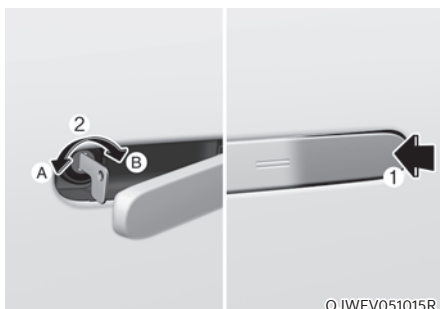
NOTICE

- Observe the following restrictions during the update.
 - You cannot use the vehicle during the update. Be sure to have enough time for the update, and safely park the vehicle before starting the update process.
 - You cannot use remote features, including remote start.
 - If the update includes the digital key function, the door lock/unlock function via the digital key may not work. If the digital key function is updated by checking the notice, use the button on the smart key to lock or unlock the door.
 - Vehicle charging is not available. For electrified vehicles, charge the vehicle after the update is completed.
 - The Rear Occupant Alert feature may not work. Check if there are any occupants in the rear seat.
- The update will be automatically cancelled if any vehicle conditions required for the update are changed before starting the update.
- Once the update has started, you cannot cancel the update.
- Note that the high-voltage-related modules for charging the 12 V battery may work during the update. (EV vehicle)
- You cannot use the OTA software update feature if you modify or replace any vehicle software.
- Do not open the bonnet or replace the battery during updates. The update may fail.
- If a diagnostic tool is connected to the vehicle OBD (On-board Diagnostic) terminal, the vehicle cannot be updated. The update will proceed by removing the connected diagnostic tool from the OBD terminal and restarting the vehicle.
- If the update is not complete successfully, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

DOOR LOCKS

Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

Mechanical key



Press the front part (1) of the door handle to pop out the rear part of the door handle. Whilst pressing the front part of the door handle, insert the mechanical key (2) into the lock.

To lock the door, turn the key toward the front (B) of the vehicle. To unlock, turn the key toward the rear (A) of the vehicle.

NOTICE

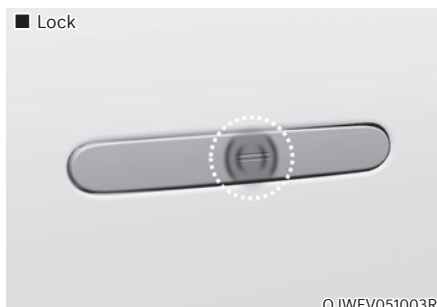
Do not apply excessive force on the door and door handle. It may damage the door and door handle.



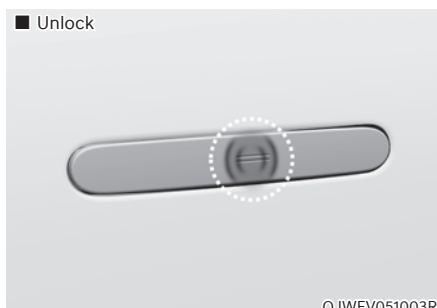
Information

When the keyhole freezes and does not open, lightly tap or indirectly warm (i.e. hand temperature) the keyhole.

Smart key



Touch the touch sensor on the front outside door handle (the engraved part) whilst carrying the Smart Key with you or press the Door Lock button on the Smart Key, all doors will lock.



Put your hand in the front outside door handle whilst carrying the Smart Key with you or press the Door Unlock button on the Smart Key, all doors will unlock. Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle. When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

For more details, refer to “Smart key” in the previous pages.

Information

- In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.

Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

With the door handle



Front door

If the inner door handle is pulled when the door is locked, the door will unlock and open.

Rear door

If the inner door handle is pulled once when the door is locked, the door will unlock. If the inner door handle is pulled once more, the door will open.

If any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the central door lock switch is pressed.

Information

If a power door lock ever fails to function whilst you are in the vehicle try one or more of the following techniques to exit:

- Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) whilst simultaneously pulling on the door handle.
- Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.
- Lower a front window and use the mechanical key to unlock the door from outside.

With the central door lock switch



Driver and passenger door

The driver and passenger side door armrest is equipped with a central door lock switch. The lock switch is identified by a  symbol. The unlock switch is identified by a  symbol.

When the lock switch (1) is pressed, all the vehicle doors will lock.

When the unlock switch (2) is pressed, all the vehicle doors will unlock.

If any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the lock switch (1) is pressed.



Rear door

When the lock switch (1) is pressed (door indicator light ON), all the vehicle doors will lock.

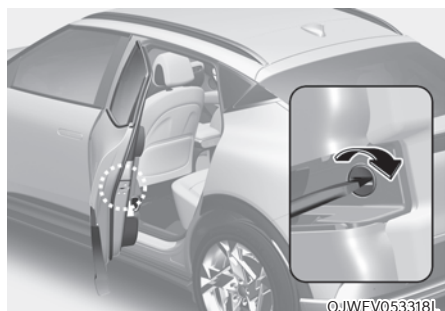
When the unlock switch (2) is pressed, all the vehicle doors will unlock.

Information

If all doors are locked with the rear door lock button, and the electronic child safety lock button (if equipped) on the driver's door is turned ON (indicator light ON), the rear doors cannot be opened. If you want to open the rear doors:

- Unlock the door with the smart key from outside.
- Unlock the door with Genesis Connected Service using your smartphone.
- Press the electronic child safety lock button on the driver's door to turn it off (indicator light OFF), then unlock the doors with the driver's or passenger's central door lock switch. (Electronic child lock OFF → Door unlocked)
- Press the electronic child safety lock button on the driver's door to turn it off (indicator light OFF), then pull the rear inner door handle twice.

In case of an emergency



In case of emergency such as when the battery is discharged, the only way to lock the door(s) is with the mechanical key using the outside key hole.

Doors without an outside key hole can be locked as follows:

1. Open the door.
2. Insert a small blade tool (e.g. screwdriver or similar) into the emergency door lock hole and turn it counterclockwise for left side door, or turn it clockwise for right side door.
3. Close the door securely.



Information

If the electrical power door lock switch does not operate (ex. dead car battery) and the tailgate is closed, you will not be able to open the tailgate until power is restored.



WARNING

- The doors should always be fully closed and locked whilst the vehicle is in motion. If the doors are unlocked, the risk of being thrown from the vehicle in a crash is increased.
- Do not pull the inner door handle of the driver's or passenger's door whilst the vehicle is moving.



WARNING

Do not leave the elderly, children or animals unsupervised in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or serious injury to the elderly, unsupervised children or animals who cannot escape from the vehicle. Children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle.



WARNING

Always secure your vehicle.

Leaving your vehicle unlocked increases the potential risk to you or others from someone hiding in your vehicle.

To secure your vehicle, whilst pressing the brake, shift the gear to the P (Park) position, engage the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, close all windows, lock all doors, and always take the key with you.

**CAUTION**

Opening a door when something is approaching may cause damage or injury. Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door.

**WARNING**

If you stay in the vehicle for a long time whilst the weather is very hot or cold, there are risks of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when someone is in the vehicle.

Automatic door lock and unlock features

Your vehicle is equipped with features that will automatically lock or unlock your vehicle based on settings you select in the infotainment system screen.

Auto LOCK Enable on speed

When this feature is set in the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle exceeds 15 km/h.

Auto LOCK Enable on shift

When this feature is set in the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be locked automatically when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) whilst the vehicle is running.

Auto UNLOCK On Shift to P

When this feature is set in the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is shifted back into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is running.

Auto UNLOCK Vehicle off

When this feature is set on the infotainment system screen, all the doors will be unlocked automatically when the vehicle is turned off.

For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Additional unlock safety feature air bag deployment

As an additional safety feature, all doors will be automatically unlocked when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

Electronic child safety lock



When the electronic child safety lock button is pressed and the indicator light on the button illuminates, the rear doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

- The rear door window cannot be opened or closed whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON).

For more details, refer to “Windows” section in this chapter.

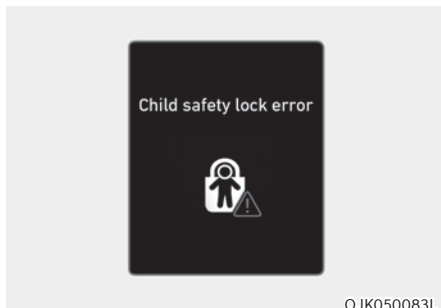
- Electronic child safety lock does not automatically turn on unless the driver presses the electronic child safety lock button.
- Once 3 minutes has passed from the Start/Stop button being pressed to the OFF or ACC position, the indicator on the button turns off, and the driver cannot turn off electronic child safety lock by pressing the button. To turn off the function, press the Start/Stop button to the ON position, and then press the electronic child safety lock button.

- If the power is supplied again after removing the battery or battery is discharged whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position, press the button once more to match the state of the indicator on the electronic child safety lock button and actual status of the electronic child safety lock function.
- If the airbag is activated whilst the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position (indicator light ON), the rear doors will unlock automatically.
- Vehicles equipped with the electronic child safety lock feature is not provided with a manual child safety lock.



WARNING

If children accidentally opens the rear door whilst the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. The Electronic child safety lock should always be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

NOTICE**Child safety lock failure / Child safety lock error**

When the electronic child safety lock does not work even though the button is pressed, this message will be displayed and an alarm will sound. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Safe Exit Assist (if equipped with electronic child safety lock)

Safe Exit Assist prevents the rear occupant from opening the rear door. When a vehicle approaching from the rear area is detected after the vehicle stops, the rear doors will not unlock even when the driver tries to unlock the rear doors using the electronic child safety lock button.

For more details, refer to “Safe Exit Assist (SEA)” section in chapter 7.

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM

This system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables. The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously if any of the following occur:

- A door is opened without using the smart key.
- The tailgate is opened without using the smart key.
- The vehicle bonnet is opened.

The alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets. To turn off the alarm, unlock the doors with the smart key.

The Theft Alarm System automatically sets 30 seconds after you lock the doors and the tailgate. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the tailgate from outside the vehicle with the smart key or by touching the touch sensor on the outside of the door handle with the smart key in your possession.

The hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound once to indicate the system is armed.

Once the security system is set, opening any door, the tailgate, or the bonnet without using the smart key will cause the alarm to activate.

The Theft Alarm System will not set if the bonnet, the tailgate, or any door are not fully closed. If the system will not set, check the bonnet, the tailgate, or the doors are fully closed.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

Information

- **Do not lock the doors until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the remaining passenger leaves the vehicle when the system is armed, the alarm will be activated.**
- **If the vehicle is not disarmed with the smart key, open the doors by using the mechanical key and start the vehicle by directly pressing the Start/Stop button with the smart key.**
- **If the system is disarmed by unlocking the vehicle, but neither a door or the tailgate is opened within 30 seconds, the doors will relock and the system will reararm automatically.**

Information



Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system will have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:

1. **WARNING**
2. **SECURITY SYSTEM**

ADVANCED REAR OCCUPANT ALERT (ROA)

Advanced Rear Occupant Alert is provided to help prevent the driver from leaving the vehicle with the rear passenger left in the vehicle.

System setting

To use Rear Occupant Alert, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)



Information

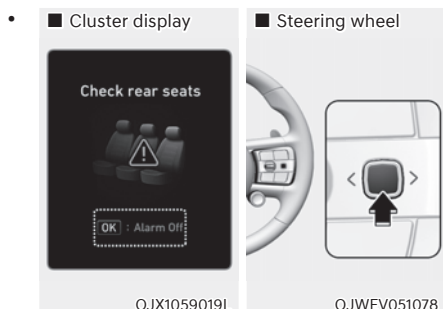
The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

System operation

- **First alert**
When you turn off the vehicle and open the driver's door after opening and closing the rear door or tailgate, the 'Check rear seats' warning message appears on the cluster display.
- **Second alert**
After the first alert, the second alert operates when any movement is detected in the vehicle after the driver's door is closed and all the doors are locked. The hazard warning lights will blink and the horn will sound for approximately 25 seconds. Also, a text message is sent to members of Genesis Connected Services (if available). If the system continues to detect a movement, the alert operates up to 8 times.
Unlock the doors with the smart key to stop the alert.
- The system detects movement in the vehicle for 10 minutes after the door is locked.

Information

- The second alert is available in vehicles equipped with the ROA sensor.
- The second alert is activated only after the prior activation of the first alert.



If you do not want to use Rear Occupant Alert, press the OK button on the steering wheel when the first alert is displayed on the cluster display. Doing so will deactivate the second alert one time.

- If the vehicle is started remotely, inside movement detection will stop.

System precautions

- Make sure that all the windows are closed. If the window is open, the alert may operate if the sensor detects an unintended movement (for example, wind or bugs).
- The alert may operate if movement in the driver or passenger seat is detected.
- If the doors are locked with a passenger inside the vehicle, the alert may operate.
- An alert can occur if there is an impact on the vehicle.
- If boxes or objects are stacked in the vehicle, the system may not detect passengers. Or, the alert may operate if the boxes or objects fall.
- The alert may operate when the vehicle is pushed or shaken, whilst washed, or when surrounding noise or vibration is detected after the vehicle is locked.
- The alert may operate when there are metallic or liquid objects in the vehicle.
- Movement is not detected in areas other than the rear seats.

**WARNING**

Even if your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA), always make sure to check the rear seat before you leave the vehicle.

Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA) may not operate when:

- Movement does not continue for a certain period of time or the movement is small.
- A child is not seated in a child restraint system.
- The rear passenger is a child over 6 years
- The rear passenger is covered with a fabric containing metallic substance such as a blanket.
- An object in the vehicle blocks the sensor.
- The sensor is contaminated by foreign material.
- An animal on the rear seat or luggage compartment is not large enough to be detected by the sensor or there is hardly any movement.
- Attaching objects or modifying the interior ceiling, or the interior ceiling is deformed or damaged.
- There is electronic interference around the vehicle.
- Other environmental reasons that may affect the system.

INTEGRATED MEMORY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



Integrated Memory System for the driver's seat is provided to store and recall the following memory settings with a simple button operation.

- Driver's seat position
- Steering wheel position (power adjustment)
- Outside rearview mirrors position
- Head-Up Display (HUD) position (if equipped)



WARNING

Never attempt to operate the integrated memory system whilst the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

Information

- If the battery is disconnected, the memory settings will be erased.
- If integrated memory system does not operate normally, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Storing memory positions

1. Shift to P (Park) whilst the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Adjust the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirrors position, steering wheel position and head-up display height to the desired position.
3. Press and hold the memory buttons (1 or 2). The system will beep once and notify you 'Press button to save settings' on the cluster display.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 4 seconds. The system will beep twice when the memory has been successfully stored.
5. 'Settings 1 (or 2) saved' will appear on the cluster display. The message appears only for the driver's seat position memory setting.

Recalling memory positions

1. Shift to P (Park) whilst the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, and then the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirrors position, steering wheel position and head-up display height will automatically adjust to the stored positions.
3. 'Settings 1(or 2) applied' will appear on the cluster display.



Information

- In order to adjust the memory button (2) whilst adjusting the memory button (1), press the memory button (1) to pause the adjustment of (1), then press memory button (2).
- If you adjust the seat, rearview mirror, steering wheel or head-up display whilst recalling the stored positions, the pre-set settings will become ineffective.

Resetting the system

Take the following procedures to reset integrated memory system, when it does not operate properly.

Resetting integrated memory system

1. Stop the vehicle and open the driver's door with the Start/Stop button in the ON position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park).
2. Adjust the driver's seat and seatback to the foremost position.
3. Press the **SET** button and push forward the driver's seat switch simultaneously (about two seconds).
4. Release the **SET** button and the driver's seat switch when a beep sounds.

Whilst resetting integrated memory system

1. Resetting starts with a notification sound.
2. The driver's seat and seatback is adjusted to the rearward position with the notification sound.
3. The driver's seat and seatback is re-adjusted to the default position (central position) with the notification sound.

However, in the following cases, the resetting procedure and the notification sound may stop.

- The memory button is pressed.
- The seat control switch is operated.
- The gear is shifted out of P (Park).
- The driving speed exceeds 3 km/h.
- The driver's door is closed.

NOTICE

- **When the integrated memory system is being reset, but the resetting and notification sound stops partway through operation, you should restart the resetting procedure.**
- **Make sure that there are no objects around the driver's seat before resetting the integrated memory system.**

Seat easy access

Seat easy access will move the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically as follows:

- **Exiting the vehicle:**
The driver's seat, steering wheel and seat bolster will move as follows when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position with the gear in P (Park) and the driver's door open.
 - Driver seat: Moves rearward depending on the distance selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system.
 - Steering wheel (if equipped): Moves upward
 - Seat bolster (if equipped): Adjusted to the default position.

However, the driver's seat may not move rearward if there is not enough space between the driver's seat and the rear seats.

Also, on a regular basis, the steering wheel will also move forward to adjust its location by itself.

- **Entering the vehicle:**
The driver's seat, steering wheel and seat bolster will move as follows when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ACC, ON or START position or whilst carrying the smart key, the driver's door is closed with the Start/Stop button in the OFF position.
 - Driver seat: Moves back to its original position.
 - Steering wheel: Moves back to its original position.
 - Seat bolster (if equipped): Adjusted to the default position.
- You can set the Seat Easy Access function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
 - Driver seat
Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Seating Easy Access → Driver Seat Easy Access → Normal/Extended/Off
 - Steering wheel (if equipped)
Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Seating Easy Access → Steering wheel easy access



Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

STEERING WHEEL

Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS)

The system assists you with steering the vehicle. If the vehicle is turned off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, you may still steer the vehicle, but it will require increased steering effort.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.



CAUTION

If Motor Driven Power Steering does not operate normally, the  warning light and the message 'Check motor driven power steering' will illuminate on the cluster display. You may steer the vehicle, but it will require increased steering efforts. We recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorised Genesis repairer and have the system checked as soon as possible.

Information

The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:

- The steering effort may be high immediately after pressing the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
This happens as the system performs the MDPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics are completed, the steering wheel effort will return to its normal condition.
- When the battery voltage is low, you might have to use more steering effort. However, it is a temporary condition so that returns to normal condition after charging the battery.
- A click noise may be heard from the MDPS relay after the Start/Stop button is in the ON or OFF position.
- Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle is stopped or at a low driving speed.
- When you operate the steering wheel in low temperatures, abnormal noise may occur. If the temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.
- When an error is detected from MDPS, the steering effort assist function will not be activated in order to prevent fatal accidents. Instrument cluster warning lights may be on or the steering effort may be high. If these symptoms occur, drive the vehicle to a safe area as soon as it is safe to do so. We recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

Tilt / Telescopic steering

When adjusting the steering wheel to a comfortable position, adjust the steering wheel so that it points toward your chest, not toward your face. Make sure you can see the instrument cluster warning lights and gauges. After adjusting, push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.

Always adjust the position of the steering wheel before driving.



WARNING

NEVER adjust the steering wheel whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

Whilst adjusting the steering wheel height, please do not push or pull it hard since the fixture can be damaged.

Manual adjustment



To adjust the steering wheel angle and height:

1. Pull down the lock-release lever (1).
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and distance forward/back (3).
3. Pull up the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place.



Information

Sometimes the lock release lever may not engage completely. This may occur when the gears of the locking mechanism do not completely mesh. If this occurs, pull down on the lock-release lever, readjust the steering wheel again, and then pull back up on the release lever to lock the steering wheel in place.

Power adjustment (if equipped)



To change the steering wheel angle and height:

- Push the switch (1) up and down to adjust the angle (2).
- Push the switch forward or rearward to adjust the height (3).

NOTICE

Do not adjust the steering wheel longer than necessary when the vehicle is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.

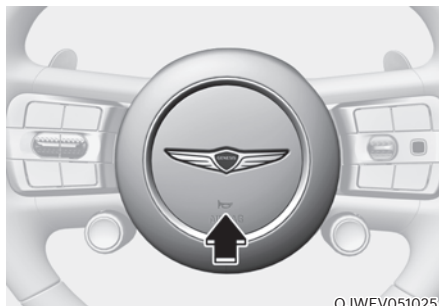
Resetting steering wheel power adjustment

If adjustment is no longer possible within the operable range whilst adjusting the steering wheel position (angle or height), reset as follows.

1. From the position the steering wheel has stopped, push the control switch (1) for 10 seconds in the direction you were adjusting the steering wheel. The steering wheel will move in the direction the control switch is pushed.
2. Continue pushing the switch (1) for at least 2 seconds after the steering wheel has stopped. Resetting will be complete after the operational range is recognised.

If the adjustment is still not possible after resetting the steering wheel power adjustment, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Horn



To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel (see illustration). The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.

NOTICE

Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.

Heated steering wheel (if equipped)



OJWEV051230R

Whilst the vehicle is running, press the heated steering wheel button to warm the steering wheel.

- Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings (for driver's seat)

The heated steering wheel automatically controls the steering wheel temperature depending on the ambient temperature when the vehicle is running.

If you touch the heated steering wheel icon, the heated steering wheel will have to be controlled manually.

To use this function, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings → Heated steering wheel

- The heated steering wheel defaults to the OFF position whenever the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position. However, if the Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings function is ON, the heated steering wheel will turn on and off depending on the outside temperature.



Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

NOTICE

Do not install any cover or accessory on the steering wheel. The cover or accessory could cause damage to the heated steering wheel system.

MIRRORS

Inside rearview mirror

Before driving your vehicle, check to see that your inside rearview mirror is properly positioned. Adjust the rearview mirror so that the view through the rear window is properly centred.



WARNING

Make sure your line of sight is not obstructed. Do not place objects in the rear seat, luggage compartment, or behind the rear headrests which could interfere with your vision through the rear window.



WARNING

To prevent serious injury during an accident or deployment of the air bag, do not modify the rearview mirror and do not install a wide mirror.



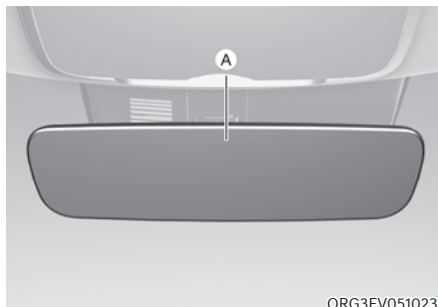
WARNING

NEVER adjust the mirror whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly onto the mirror as this may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Electric Chromic Mirror (ECM) (if equipped)



[A] : Indicator

Some vehicles come equipped with an electrochromic mirror that helps control glare whilst driving at night or under low light driving conditions.

When the vehicle is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror. The sensor detects the light level around the vehicle, and automatically adjusts to control the headlamp glare from vehicles behind you.

Whenever the the gear is shifted to R (Reverse), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the driver's view behind the vehicle.

Outside rearview mirrors



OJWEV051271R

Your vehicle is equipped with both left-hand and right-hand outside rearview mirrors. The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch. The outside rearview mirrors can be folded to help prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash or when passing through a narrow street.

The left and right outside rearview mirrors are convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.

Use the inside rear view mirror or look back directly to determine the actual distance of other vehicles prior to changing lanes.

Make sure to adjust the outside rearview mirrors to your desired position before you begin driving.



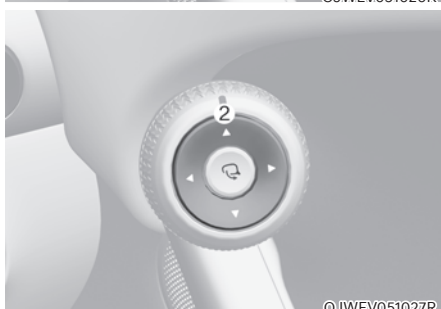
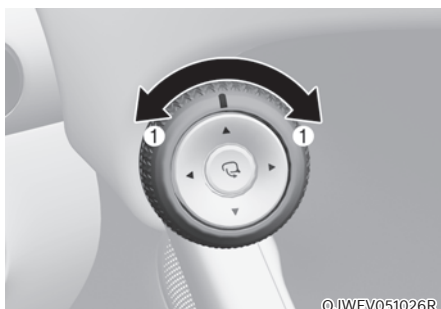
WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

- **Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass.**
- **If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) spray, or a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.**
- **Do not clean the mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum based cleaning products.**

Adjusting the outside rearview mirrors



Adjusting the outside rearview mirrors.

1. Rotate to either the L (Left side) or R (Right side) (1) to select the rearview mirror you would like to adjust.
2. Use the mirror adjustment control switch (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.
3. After adjustment, rotate either the L and R in the opposite direction (indicator light off) to prevent inadvertent adjustment.

NOTICE

- The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, because this can damage the motor.
- Do not attempt to adjust the rearview mirrors by hand, because this can damage the motor.

Folding the outside rearview mirrors



Folding button

The outside rearview mirrors can be folded or unfolded by pressing the button.

Infotainment system setting

- Enable on door unlock
If 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Welcome Mirror/Light → Enable on Door Unlock' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen,
 - The mirrors will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key.
 - The mirrors will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the touch sensor on the outside door handle.
- Enable on driver approach
If 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Welcome Mirror/Light → Enable on Driver Approach' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen, the mirrors will unfold when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.



Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

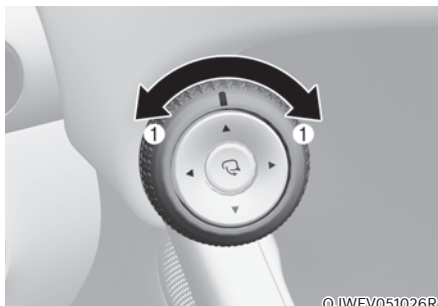
NOTICE

The electric type outside rearview mirrors operate even though the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary whilst the vehicle is not running.

NOTICE

Do not fold the electric type outside rearview mirrors operate by hand. It could cause motor failure.

Reverse parking aid (if equipped)



When the gear is shifted to the R (Reverse) position, the outside rearview mirrors will rotate downwards to aid with driving in reverse.

The state of the outside rearview mirrors dial (1) determines whether or not the mirrors will move:

How it works

- When the L or R dial (1) is rotated L or R (indicator lights ON), both outside rearview mirrors will move.
- If the L or R dial (1) is not rotated (indicator lights OFF), both outside rearview mirrors will not move.

The outside rearview mirrors will automatically revert to their original positions if any of the following occur:

- The Start/Stop button is pressed to either the OFF position or the ACC position.
- The gear is shifted to any position except R (Reverse).
- The outside rearview mirrors operate adjustment button is not selected.

Reverse parking aid user settings mode

You may change the angle of the outside rearview mirrors operate if it is difficult to see the rear view with the basic downward mirror angle provided when reversing.

When the vehicle is first delivered, the set downward angle of the left and right outside rearview mirrors operate are different to ensure driver visibility. To change the angle:

1. Make sure the vehicle is stopped.
2. Press the brake pedal and shift the gear to R (Reverse). Rotate the dial both L and R, both outside rearview mirrors angle will move downward to the basic set position.
3. Rotate the dial to either the L or R to select the outside rearview mirror you would like to adjust. Then press “▼, ▲, ◀, ▶” switch to adjust the outside rearview mirror to the desired angle.
4. After adjusting the angle to save the adjusted outside rearview mirror angle, shift the gear to another position other than R (Reverse), or change the L and R dial to the neutral position (indicator off).
5. Set the other outside rearview mirror following the above procedure 1 to 4.

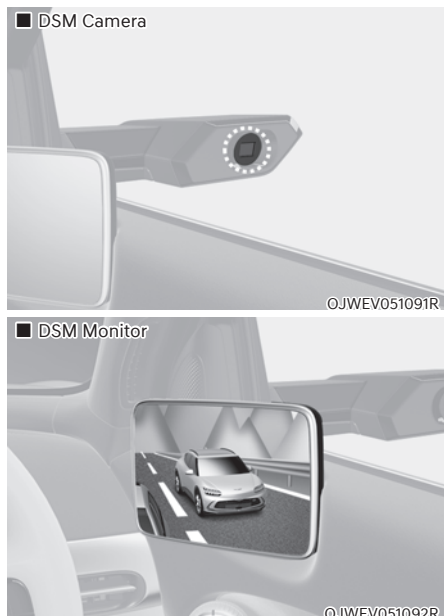
Resetting reverse parking aid user settings mode

To change the outside rearview mirrors operate angle back to the basic angle, shift the gear to R (Reverse), and adjust the mirror angle higher than when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) and D (Drive).

NOTICE

When changing the angle of both outside rearview mirrors, it is recommended that you change the angle one side at a time following the procedure 1 to 4.

DIGITAL SIDE MIRROR (DSM) (IF EQUIPPED)



The digital side mirrors are a replacement for the outside rearview mirrors and help with changing lanes by displaying the rear view image on the monitors inside the vehicle.

Information

- The DSM monitor brightness is linked to the instrument cluster's brightness.
- The DSM camera angle is linked to the integrated memory system (IMS).

WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the DSM cameras whilst driving. It distracts you from driving and may cause an accident.

CAUTION

- The digital side mirrors show the rear view as an image, so the view may differ from the actual view and you cannot see the field of view when not in the set position. Be careful whilst driving.
- The DSM monitors may become blurred by strong light sources, such as direct sunlight. In this case, use the inside rearview mirror.
- In certain situations, an image error may occur, such as the DSM monitor being out of focus or displaying incorrect colours. This makes it difficult to clearly see moving objects and may cause your eyes to feel tired from watching the monitor for a long time.
- Always pay attention to the condition of your vehicle whilst driving. If you think there is an error in the vehicle, immediately park in a safe place and contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
- If the DSM monitor display is not clear, the monitor lenses may be contaminated or foggy. Wipe the DSM camera lenses or activate the defroster to remove fog or foreign substances before driving. Be careful not to damage the lens whilst wiping, and be careful not to get burned when operating the defroster.

Operating the digital side mirrors

Turning on the DSM monitors

When you unlock the doors or start the vehicle remotely, the digital side mirrors will prepare for operation. When you open a door or unfold the DSM cameras, the DSM monitors will turn on.

Turning off the DSM monitors

- When you stop the vehicle and lock the doors, or seven minutes after stopping the vehicle, the DSM monitors will automatically turn off and the DSM cameras will fold.
- If you fold the DSM cameras whilst the vehicle is on, the DSM monitors will display a black screen and notify you that the digital side mirrors are folded.
- The DSM monitors are automatically turned on or off depending on various conditions, such as the vehicle and door status.

DSM warnings and indicators

The warnings and indicators displayed on the DSM monitors are as follows.

	Explanation
	Driving assistance warning • Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA) • Safe Exit Warning/Assist (SEW/SEA) • Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)
	DSM check indicator
	DSM monitor off indicator • Displayed after seven minutes after the vehicle stops • Counts 10 seconds for screen off
	Wide view mode switch indicator

Displaying the guidelines

When you turn on the turn signal indicator to change lanes, the rearview screen and the lane change guidelines will be displayed on the DSM monitors.

- Red: 3 m away from the rear of the vehicle
- Orange: 12 m away from the rear of the vehicle

Setting the feature

1. On the infotainment system, press 'Setup → Vehicle → Convenience → Digital Side Mirror'.
2. Select 'Lane change assistance guideline' to activate or deactivate the feature.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Guideline display conditions

- The vehicle is moving at a speed of 20 km/h or faster.
- The turn signal indicator is turned on.

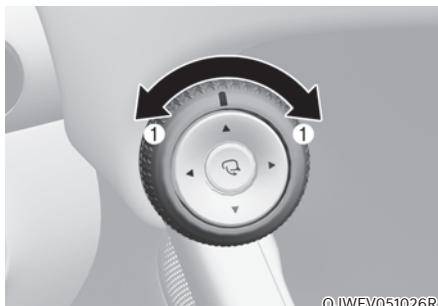
Guideline removal conditions

- The vehicle is turned off.
- The turn signal indicator is turned off.
- The hazard warning light is turned on.

CAUTION

- The lane change guidelines may differ from the actual situation depending on your vehicle and the road conditions.
- To change lanes, turn on the turn signal indicator in advance and ensure enough space in the lane before entering.

Adjusting the DSM cameras



1. With Start/Stop button in the 'ACC', 'ON' or 'START' position, rotate the DSM camera selection lever (1) to select L (Left) or R (Right).
2. Use the DSM camera adjustment switch (2) to adjust the camera angle.

NOTICE

Do not adjust the DSM cameras manually. Adjusting the DSM cameras manually may damage the related parts.

Folding/Unfolding the DSM cameras

DSM camera folding button



To fold or unfold the DSM cameras, press the DSM camera folding button.

Enable on door unlock (infotainment system)

If you select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Welcome Mirror → Enable on Door Unlock' on the infotainment system,

- The DSM cameras will fold when locking the doors.
 - By pressing the door lock button (🔒) on the smart key
 - By touching the door lock/unlock sensor on the front outside door handles (the engraved part)
- The DSM cameras will unfold when unlocking the doors.
 - By pressing the door unlock button (🔓) on the smart key
 - By touching the door lock/unlock sensor on the front outside door handles (the engraved part)

When 'Enable on Door Unlock' is selected, you can select 'Enable on Driver Approach'. If you select 'Enable on Driver Approach', the DSM cameras will unfold when you approach the vehicle with the smart key.

i Information

- For your safety, the DSM cameras cannot be folded when driving at a speed of 15 km/h or faster.
- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

NOTICE

- You can control the DSM cameras when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, but excessive control may discharge the vehicle's battery.
- Always use the DSM camera folding button to fold or unfold the DSM cameras. Folding or unfolding the cameras manually may damage the motor. Also, vibrations or noises may be emitted from the DSM cameras whilst driving, indicating that the gears are not engaged correctly. In this case, engage the gears by folding and unfolding the camera again using the folding button.
- When cleaning the DSM camera lenses or the DSM monitors, do not spray the cleaner directly. Instead, spray it on a soft towel or cloth. If you spray the cleaner directly on the lenses or monitors, the cleaner may get inside, causing a malfunction.
- Do not scrape ice off the surface of the DSM camera lenses. Doing so may damage the lenses.
- Do not use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lenses. Doing so may cause cracks in the lenses.
- If the DSM camera is jammed with ice, do not adjust the camera by force. Use an approved de-icer spray, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

Switching to wide view when backing up



ONE1051232

i Information

- The guidelines displayed on the DSM monitors whilst reversing indicate the following points.
 - 0.3 m away from the side of the vehicle
 - 0.5 m and 1 m away from the rear of the vehicle
- The wide view will be deactivated when you shift to N (Neutral) or D (Drive) and drive at a speed of 10 km/h or faster.
- The wide view appears only when the wide view switch feature is activated whilst backing up. In P (Park), N (Neutral), and D (Drive), the DSM monitors display the original view.

Setting wide view operation



Rotate the DSM camera selection lever (1) to select L (Left) or R (Right).

- When you shift to R (Reverse), the DSM monitors will display wide view.
- If you put the DSM camera selection lever (1) in the centre, the DSM monitors will not display wide view.



CAUTION

If there is an error in the digital side mirrors, the DSM monitors will not display the rear view and a warning message informing you to check the DSM system will appear on the cluster display. If this occurs, check the surroundings using the inside rearview mirror and immediately park your vehicle at a safe place, and contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

Setting the DSM screen brightness

With the Start/Stop button in the ON position, on the infotainment system, select 'Setup → Display → Screen Brightness' to change the brightness.

- Automatic Brightness or Manual Brightness adjustment (if equipped with rain sensor)
- Screen Brightness (Day/Night) setting (if the rain sensor is not equipped)



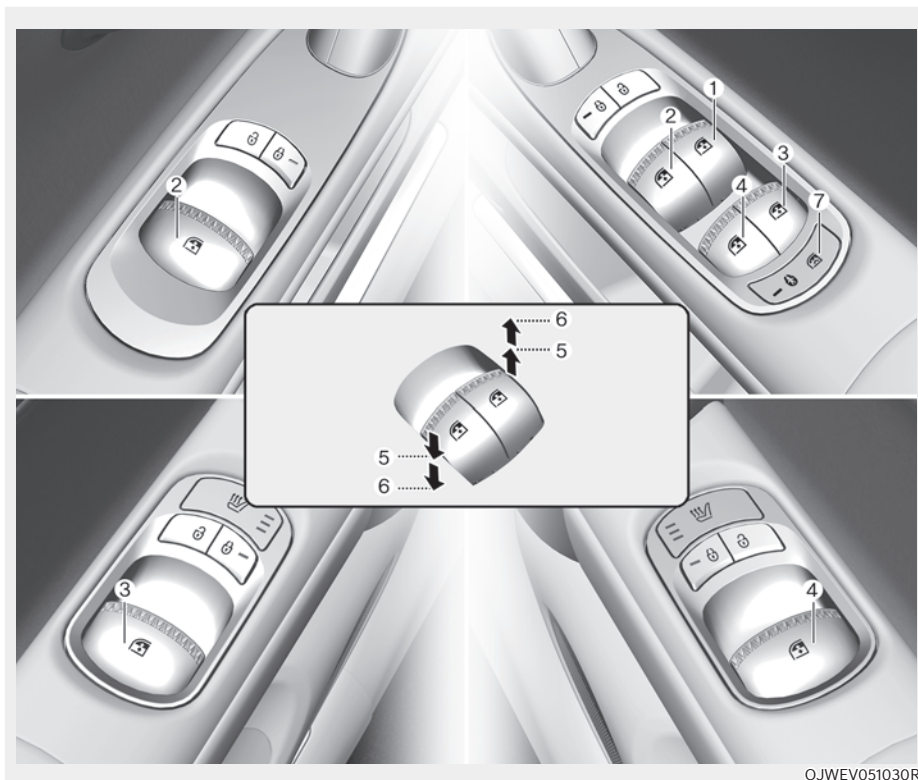
Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

DSM camera defroster

To turn on the defroster manually, turn on the wiper or rear window defroster. The feature will be activated for a certain time

WINDOWS



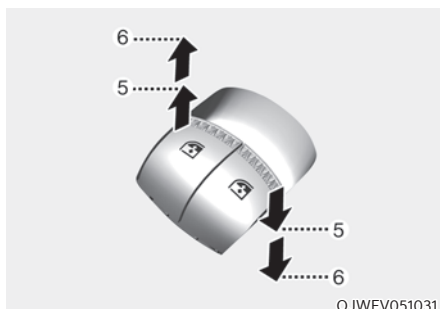
OJWEV051030R

- (1) Driver's door power window switch
- (2) Front passenger's door power window switch
- (3) Rear door (left) power window switch
- (4) Rear door (right) power window switch
- (5) Window opening and closing
- (6) Automatic power window
- (7) Power window lock switch

Power windows

The Start/Stop button must be in the ON position to be able to raise or lower the windows. Each door has a Power Window switch to control that door's window. The driver has a Power Window Lock button which can block the operation of passenger windows. The power windows will operate for approximately 3 minutes after the Start/Stop button is in the ACC or OFF position. However, if the front doors are opened, the Power Windows will not operate even within the 3 minute period.

Window opening and closing



OJWEV051031

To open:

Press the window switch down to the first detent position (5). Release the switch when you want the window to stop.

To close:

Pull the window switch up to the first detent position (5). Release the window switch when you want the window to stop.

Auto up/down window

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position whilst the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

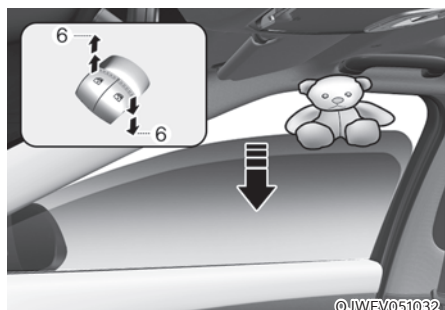
Resetting the power windows

If the power windows do not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Press the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Close the window and continue pulling up on the power window switch for at least one second.

If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Automatic reverse



If a window senses an obstacle whilst it is closing automatically, it will stop and lower approximately 30 cm to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance whilst the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm.

If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reverse feature, the automatic window reverse will not operate.

Information

The automatic reverse feature is only active when the “Auto Up” feature is used by fully pulling up the switch to the second detent.

WARNING

Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Objects less than 4 mm in diameter caught between the window glass and the upper window channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse window and the window will not stop and reverse direction.

Power window lock button



The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passenger doors by pressing the power window lock button.

When the power window lock button is pressed:

- The rear passenger control will not be able to operate the rear passenger power window.
- Note that the front passenger control is still able to operate the front passenger window, and that the driver master control can still operate all the power windows.



WARNING

Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock button in the LOCK position. Serious injury or death can result from unintentional window operation by a child.

NOTICE

- To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.
- Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.

Remote window opening/closing function (if equipped)



OJWEV051034

You can still control the window movement with the vehicle turned off by pressing the Door Lock button (1) or the Door Unlock button (2).

- Press the door lock button for more than 3 seconds. The doors will lock and the windows will move up as long as you press the door lock button.
- Press the door unlock button for more than 3 seconds. The doors will unlock and the windows will move down as long as you press the door unlock button.

Information

- The remote window opening/closing function may abruptly stop when you move away from your vehicle during operation. Stay in close proximity from your vehicle, whilst monitoring the window movement.
- One of the windows may stop operating when the window is interrupted by certain force. However, the other windows will keep operating. Make sure that all windows are closed.
- Please be aware that the doors unlock when the windows are opened using the remote window open/closing function.

WARNING

Always double check to make sure arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before using remote window closing function.

VISION ROOF (IF EQUIPPED)



OJWEV051035

If your vehicle is equipped with a vision roof, you can slide open the power sunshade and an all-glass roof appears.

Power sunshade

Use the power sunshade to block direct sunlight coming through the sunroof glass.



OJWEV052036AU



OJWEV051037

The power sunshade can only be operated when Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.

- Push the switch rearward, the power sunshade automatically slides open.
- Push the sunroof switch forward, the power sunshade automatically closes.

To stop the power sunshade at any point, push the switch in any direction.

Information

- The power sunshade can be operated for approximately 3 minutes after the Start/Stop button is in the ACC or OFF position. However, if any front door is open, the power sunshade cannot be operated even within the 3 minute period.
- Wrinkles formed on the power sunshade are normal due to material characteristic.

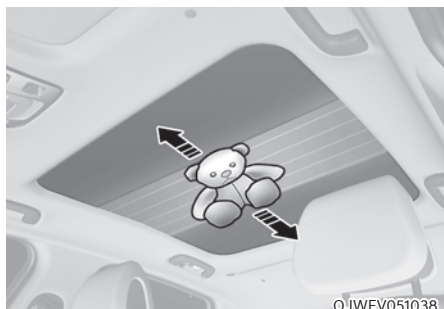
WARNING

- Adjust the power sunshade when your vehicle stops. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause injury, or property damage.
- Do not leave the vehicle running and the key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unsupervised children could operate the power sunshade, which could result in injury.
- Do not sit on the top of the vehicle. It may cause injury or vehicle damage.

NOTICE

Do not pull or push the power sunshade by hand as such action may damage the power sunshade or cause it to malfunction.

Automatic reversal



If the power sunshade senses any obstacle whilst it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction then stop at a certain position.

The auto reverse function may not work if an object thin or soft is caught between the sliding power sunshade and vision roof sash.



WARNING

- Make sure heads, hands, arms or any other body parts or objects are out of the way before operating the power sunshade. Body parts or objects may get caught causing injuries or vehicle damage.
- Never deliberately use your body parts to test the automatic reversal function. The power sunshade may reverse direction, but there is a risk of injury.

NOTICE

Do not continue to push the switch after the power sunshade is fully opened or closed. Damage to the power sunshade motor could occur.

Resetting the power sunshade



In some circumstances resetting the power sunshade operation may need to be performed. Some instances where resetting the power sunshade may be required include:

- When the 12-volt battery is either disconnected or discharged
- When the power sunshade fuse is replaced
- If the power sunshade one-touch AUTO OPEN/CLOSE operation is not functioning properly

Sunroof resetting procedure:

1. It is recommended to perform the reset procedure with the vehicle in the ready mode. Start the vehicle in P (Park).
2. Make sure the power sunshade is in the fully closed position. If the power sunshade is open, push the switch forward until the power sunshade and is fully closed.
3. Release the switch when the power sunshade is fully closed.
4. Push the switch forward until the power sunshade moves slightly. Then release the switch.
5. Once again push and hold the switch forward until the power sunshade slides open and close. Do not release the switch until the operation is completed.

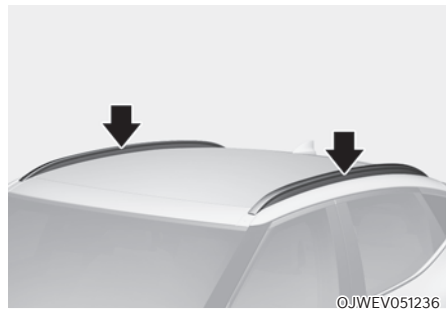
If you release the switch during operation, start the procedure again from step 2.

Information

If the power sunshade does not reset when the vehicle battery is disconnected or discharged, or the power sunshade fuse is blown, the power sunshade may not operate normally.

EXTERIOR FEATURES

Roof rack (if equipped)



If the vehicle has a roof rack, you can load cargo on top of your vehicle.

NOTICE

- If the vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, be sure not to position cargo onto the roof rack in such a way that it could interfere with sunroof operation.
- When carrying cargo on the roof rack, take the necessary precautions to make sure the cargo does not damage the roof of the vehicle.
- When carrying large objects on the roof rack, make sure they do not exceed the overall roof length or width



WARNING

- The following specification is the maximum weight that can be loaded onto the roof.

Distribute the load as evenly as possible onto the roof rack and secure the load firmly.

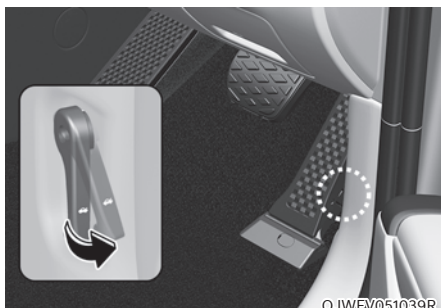
ROOF RACK	100 kg/75kg EVENLY DISTRIBUTED
-----------	---------------------------------------

Loading cargo or luggage in excess of the specified weight limit on the roof rack may damage your vehicle.

- The vehicle centre of gravity will be higher when items are loaded onto the roof rack. Avoid sudden starts, braking, sharp turns, abrupt manoeuvres or high speeds that may result in loss of vehicle control or rollover resulting in an accident.
- Always drive slowly and turn corners carefully when carrying items on the roof rack. Severe wind updrafts, caused by passing vehicles or natural causes, can cause sudden upward pressure on items loaded on the roof rack. This is especially true when carrying large, flat items such as wood panels or mattresses. This could cause the items to fall off the roof rack and cause damage to your vehicle or others around you.
- To prevent damage or loss of cargo whilst driving, check frequently before or whilst driving to make sure the items on the roof rack are securely fastened.

Bonnet

Opening the bonnet



OJWEV051039R

1. Park the vehicle and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet should pop open slightly.



OJWEV051253

3. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, push up the secondary bonnet release lever (1) inside of the bonnet centre and lift the bonnet (2).

After the bonnet has been lifted halfway, it will raise completely by itself.

Closing the bonnet

1. Before closing the bonnet, check in and around the vehicle compartment to ensure the following:
 - Any tools or other loose objects are removed from the motor compartment area or bonnet opening area
 - All gloves, rags, or other combustible material are removed from the motor compartment
 - All filler caps are tightly and correctly installed
2. Lower the bonnet halfway (lifted approximately 30 cm from the closed position) and push down to securely lock in place. Then double check to be sure the bonnet is secure. If the bonnet can be raised slightly, it is not securely locked. Open it again and close it with more force.

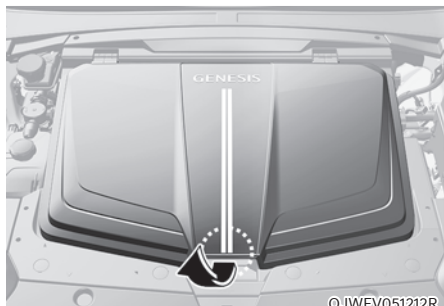


WARNING

- Before closing the bonnet, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the bonnet opening.
- Always double check to be sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. Check there is no bonnet open warning light or message displayed on the cluster display. Driving with the bonnet opened may cause a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.
- Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet in the raised position, as vision is obstructed, which might result in an accident, and the bonnet could fall or be damaged.

Front boot

Opening the front boot



- Open the bonnet
- Lift up the front boot cover whilst pressing the front boot lever (1).

Closing the front boot

Push down the front boot cover to the right position.



Information

Available front boot weight

- 2WD : 25kg
- 4WD : 10kg

Available front boot weight depends on the vehicle specifications.



WARNING

- **NEVER** make an attempt to get inside the front boot. It will cause a fatal injury.
- Before closing the bonnet, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the bonnet opening. The bonnet will rise up or move down automatically if the height is not firmly adjusted. Be aware of the damage caused by unintended bonnet movements.
- Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.

**CAUTION**

- Do not exceed the luggage volume capacity of the front boot. An overweight front boot can cause significant damage.
 - Do not store the fragile objects in the front boot.
 - ALWAYS keep the front boot cover closed securely whilst driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items can be damaged.
 - Do not spray water in the front boot. Vehicle driving systems may get damaged since the front boot is located at the centre of motor compartment.
 - Be careful if you store any liquid in the front boot. If liquid leaks out into the motor compartment, it will cause a damage to the electric devices in the motor compartment.
 - Do not press the front boot cover or place the objects on the front boot cover. It may be deformed or damaged.
 - Be careful when closing the front boot cover, that the cover does not touch items stored inside. These items could be damaged or the front boot cover and/or hinge joints could be damaged allowing the cover to open when driving.
- Do not store plastic objects in the front boot when the outside temperature is high. If the inside temperature of the front boot rises due to sunlight during hot weather, the plastic objects may be deformed.
 - When the front boot cover freezes and does not open, lightly tap or indirectly warm the front boot cover.
 - Do not apply excessive force or sharp instruments the front boot cover. It may damage the front boot cover.

NOTICE

To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.

Power tailgate (if equipped)

Power tailgate operating conditions

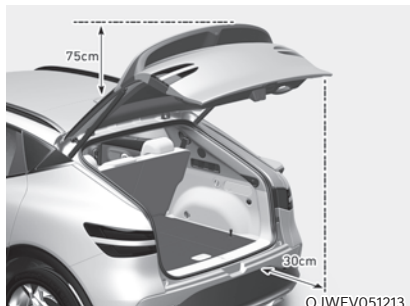
The power tailgate operates when the gear is in P (Park) with the READY indicator on. However, the power tailgate will operate regardless of the gear position when the READY indicator is off. Also, the tailgate can be opened only when vehicle speed is below 3 km/h.

For safety, before attempting to open or close the tailgate, make sure the vehicle is in P (Park).



WARNING

- **Never leave children or animals unsupervised in your vehicle. Children may operate the power tailgate. Doing so can result in injury to themselves or others and can damage the vehicle.**



Make sure that there are no people or objects in the path of the power tailgate or smart tailgate prior to use. Serious injury, damage to the vehicle or damage to surrounding objects (for example, walls, ceilings, vehicles, etc.) may result if contact with the tailgate occurs.

NOTICE

- **Do not close or open the tailgate manually. This may cause damage to the power tailgate. If it is necessary to close or open the tailgate manually when the battery is discharged or disconnected, do not apply excessive force.**
- **Do not operate the power tailgate more than 10 times continuously when the READY indicator is off. Use the power tailgate with the READY indicator on when the power tailgate is used repeatedly to prevent battery discharge.**
- **Do not leave the power tailgate open for a long period of time. This may drain the battery.**
- **Do not apply excessive force when the power tailgate is operating. Doing so could result in vehicle damage.**



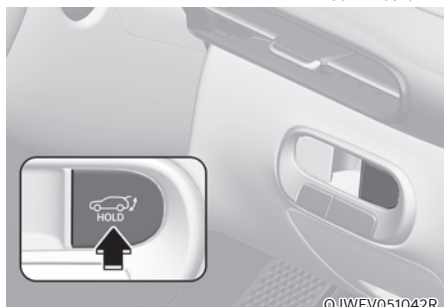
Do not grab or hold on to the tailgate support struts at any time. Damage to the tailgate support struts could result. Deformation of the tailgate support struts may cause vehicle damage and personal injury may occur.

- Do not modify or repair any part of the power tailgate by yourself. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised authorised Genesis repairer.
- Do not operate the power tailgate under the following conditions. The power tailgate may not operate properly.
 - One side of the vehicle is lifted to inspect the vehicle or change a tyre.
 - Parking on an uneven road such as a slope, etc.
- Close the tailgate completely and lock all doors and tailgate using the central door lock button before using an automatic car wash.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly on the power tailgate outside open/close button. The tailgate may open unintentionally.

Information

- If the tailgate is not fully closed and vehicle speed is at or above 3 km/h, a warning will sound 10 times. Immediately park the vehicle at a safe place, close the tailgate, and check that the tailgate open warning on the cluster display is turned off.
- In cold and wet climates, the outside power tailgate open/close button may not work properly due to freezing conditions. If this occurs, remove the ice before using the outside power tailgate open/close button or use the power tailgate open/close button on the smart key or the instrument panel.
- Operating the power tailgate more than 5 times continuously could cause damage to the operating motor. If this occurs, the power tailgate will not operate to prevent the motor from overheating. If any of the power tailgate buttons are pressed to try to open the tailgate, the chime will sound 3 times, but the tailgate will remain closed. Allow the power tailgate system to cool for about 1 minute before operating the system again.

Operating the power tailgate



Power tailgate open/close button (Smart key, Instrument panel)

Press the power tailgate open/close button for 1 second. The tailgate opens or closes with a warning sound.

Whilst the tailgate is opening or closing, press the button to stop tailgate operation.



Power tailgate open/close button (Outside the power tailgate)

When the tailgate is closed, press the power tailgate open/close button to open the tailgate.

If the vehicle is locked, press the power tailgate open/close button with the smart key in your possession.

If the tailgate is unlocked, the tailgate will open or close with a warning sound when the power tailgate open/close button is pressed without carrying the smart key.



Power tailgate open/close button (Inside the power tailgate)

Press the power tailgate open/close button. The tailgate opens or closes with a warning sound.



Power tailgate lock button (Inside the power tailgate)

Press the power tailgate lock button whilst carrying the smart key. The tailgate closes and locks with a warning sound. Additionally, all doors will lock.

The tailgate can be closed and locked, and all doors locked only when the button is pressed whilst the READY indicator is off.

Automatic reverse

During power tailgate operation if the power tailgate senses any obstacle, the tailgate will stop or will fully open. The automatic reverse feature may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The automatic reverse feature may not detect the resistance if the detected resistance is below a certain level, or if the tailgate is almost fully closed near the latched position.
- The automatic reverse feature may operate if a strong impact is applied with no obstructions placed.



WARNING

Never intentionally place any object or part of your body in the path of the power tailgate to make sure the automatic reverse feature operates. Serious injury, or damage to the vehicle or object may occur.



Information

The power tailgate may stop operating if the automatic reverse feature operates more than two times whilst attempting to open or close the tailgate. If this occurs, carefully open or close the tailgate manually, and then after 30 seconds try to operate the power tailgate automatically again.

Setting the power tailgate

To use each feature, you must select the opening speed or opening height from the settings menu. Deselect the settings when you do not want to use the feature.

Power tailgate opening speed

To adjust the power tailgate speed, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Door/Tailgate → Power Tailgate Opening Speed → Fast/Slow' in the infotainment system. (Default Setting is 'Fast'.)

Power tailgate opening height

To adjust the power tailgate opening height, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Door/Tailgate → Power Tailgate Opening Height → Full Open/Level 3/ Level 2/Level 1/User Height Setting' in the infotainment system.



Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

User height setting

1. Position the tailgate manually to the height you prefer.
2. Press the power tailgate open/close button located inside the tailgate for more than 3 seconds.

If 'User Height Setting' is selected for the power tailgate opening height, the power tailgate will automatically open to the height manually set by you.



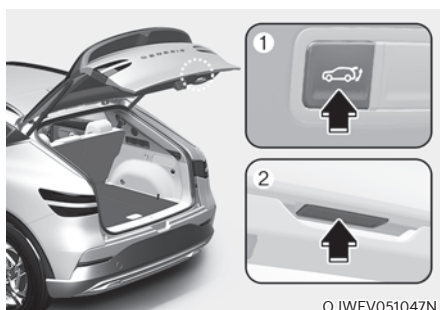
Information

- If the power tailgate opening height has not been manually set, the power tailgate will fully open when 'User Height Setting' from the infotainment system is selected.
- If one of the height Setting (Full Open/Level 3/ Level 2/Level 1) is selected from the settings menu in the infotainment system, and then 'User Height Setting' is selected, the tailgate will open to the height manually set by you.
- The power tailgate opening speed and opening height settings change according to the linked User Profile. If the User Profile is changed, power tailgate opening speed and opening height settings will change accordingly.

Resetting the power tailgate

In some circumstances resetting the power tailgate operation may need to be performed. Some instances where resetting the power tailgate may be required include:

- When the 12 V battery is recharged
- When the 12 V battery is reinstalled after removal or replacement
- When the related fuse is reinstalled after removal or replacement



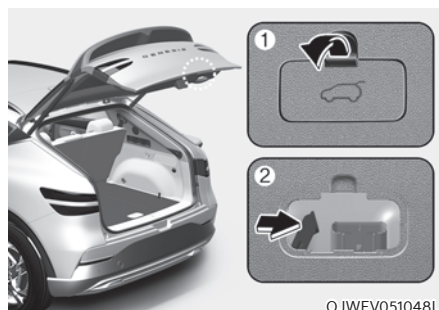
1. With the ready (**READY**) indicator is off/on, put the gear in P (Park).
2. Press the power tailgate open/close inner button (1) and outer button (2) simultaneously until a chime sounds.
3. Slowly close the tailgate manually.
4. Press the power tailgate open/close outer button. The power tailgate will open with a chime sound.

Wait until the tailgate fully opens to complete resetting. If the tailgate stops before it is fully open, resetting cannot be completed.

Information

If the power tailgate does not operate properly after the above procedure, we recommend that you have the system inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Emergency tailgate safety release



To unlock and open the tailgate manually from inside the luggage compartment, perform the following procedure:

1. Remove the cover at the bottom of the tailgate.
2. Slide the latch in the direction of the arrow to unlock the tailgate.
3. Push the tailgate to open.



WARNING

- For emergencies, be fully aware of the location of the emergency tailgate safety release latch in the vehicle and how to open the tailgate if you are accidentally locked in the luggage compartment.
- No one, including animals, should be allowed to occupy the luggage compartment of the vehicle at any time. The luggage compartment is a very dangerous location in the event of an accident.
- Use the release latch for emergencies only. Use extreme caution, especially whilst the vehicle is in motion.

Smart tailgate (if equipped)



On a vehicle equipped with a smart key, the tailgate can be opened with hands-free activation using the smart tailgate system.

Using smart tailgate

The hands-free smart tailgate system can be opened automatically when the following conditions are met:

- The smart tailgate option is enabled in the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.
- The smart tailgate is activated and ready 15 seconds after all the doors are closed and locked.
- The smart tailgate will open when the smart key is detected in the area behind the vehicle for 3 seconds.
- When disconnecting the charging connector, the smart tailgate is activated.

Information

The smart tailgate will **NOT** operate when:

- A door is not locked or closed.
- The smart key is detected within 15 seconds from when the doors were closed and locked.
- The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and within 1.5 m from the front door handles. (for vehicles equipped with Welcome Mirror).
- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The vehicle is on charge.

1. Settings

To use smart tailgate, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Door/Tailgate → Smart Tailgate

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

2. Detect and Alert

The smart tailgate detecting area extends approximately 50-100 cm behind the vehicle. If you are positioned in the detecting area and are carrying the smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound to alert you that the smart tailgate will open.

Information

Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the tailgate to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, move away from the area behind the vehicle with the smart key. The tailgate will remain closed.

3. Automatic opening

After the hazard warning lights blink and the chime sounds 6 times, the smart tailgate will open.

Deactivating smart tailgate



OJWEV051001L

1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Tailgate open/close

If you press any button on the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the smart tailgate will be deactivated.

Make sure you are aware of how to deactivate the smart tailgate for emergency situations.

- If you press the door unlock button (2), the smart tailgate will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart tailgate will be activated again.
- If you press the tailgate open button (3) for more than 1 second, the tailgate opens.
- The smart tailgate will still be activated if you press the door lock button (1) or tailgate open/close button (3) on the smart key as long as the smart tailgate is not already in the Detect and Alert stage.
- If you have deactivated the smart tailgate by pressing the smart key button and opened a door, the smart tailgate can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.

Detecting area



- The smart tailgate detecting area extends approximately 50-100 cm behind the vehicle. If you are positioned in the detecting area and are carrying the smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and the chime will sound for about 3 seconds to alert you that the tailgate will open.
- The alert stops once the smart key is moved outside of the detecting area within the 3 second period.

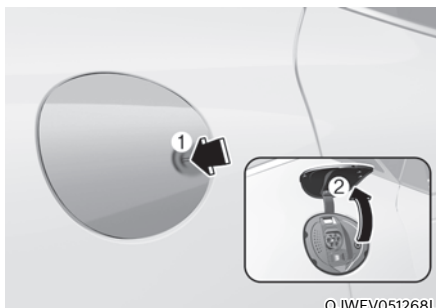


Information

- **Smart tailgate may not operate properly if any of the following occur:**
 - The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
 - The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
 - Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- **Smart tailgate detecting area may change when:**
 - The vehicle is parked on an incline or slope.
 - One side of the vehicle is raised or lowered relative to the opposite side.

Charging door

Opening the charging door



1. Press the brake pedal and apply the parking brake.
2. Turn OFF all switches, shift to P (Park), and turn OFF the vehicle.
3. Push the charging door where the triangle symbol (1) is located to open. The charging door opens only when the vehicle is unlocked.
4. Open the inlet cover (2).

**CAUTION**

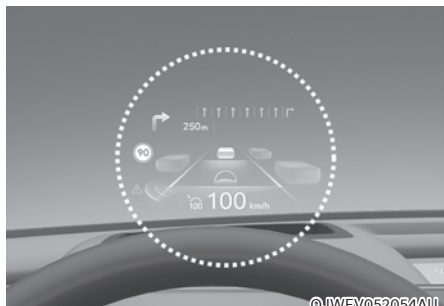
- Do not try forcibly open the charging door. If you try to force the charging door to open, the charging door may stop working.
- The charge door rises up when opened. When opening or closing the charge door, check that there are no obstacles in the way of the door. Always be careful not to bump your face, head, etc. or get your hands caught.
- Do not hold the supporting part (hinge). Be careful as there may be a risk of vehicle damage or safety accidents due to deformation of parts.
- After closing, double check that it is completely closed.
- Make sure that the charge door is properly closed before driving. If the charge door is not closed correctly, Mechanical parts attached to the charge door may be damaged.
- Make sure the charge door is closed and the charging door open warning light on the instrument cluster is turned off.
- If you leave the vehicle with the charge door open, there is a risk of theft, so be sure to check it.
- After charging, the inlet cover must be in place. Closing the charge door without opening it in place may damage the machine parts.
- Do not excessively spray liquid on the charging door when washing the car.

Closing the charging door

1. After recharging, install the charging inlet cover.
2. Push the Close button located inner part of the charging door.

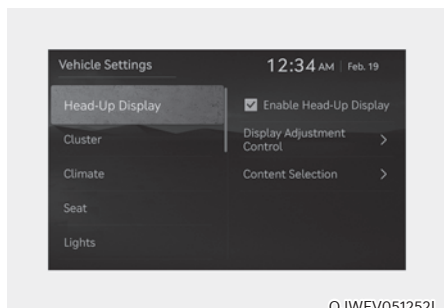
For more details, refer to the Electric Vehicle Guide provided in the front of the owner's manual.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD) (IF EQUIPPED)



The Head-Up Display is an optional feature that allows the driver to view information projected onto a transparent screen whilst still keeping your eyes safely on the road ahead whilst driving.

Head-Up Display settings

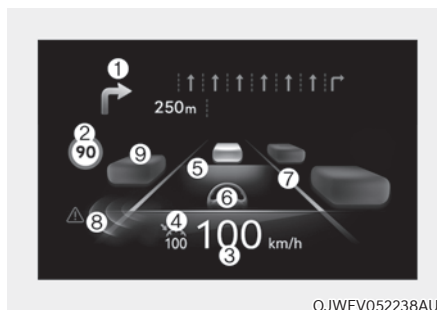


- Head-up display can be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
 - Setup → Vehicle Settings → Head-Up Display → Enable Head-Up Display
- After turning on the head-up display, you can change the settings of 'Display Control' and 'Content Selection' of the head-up display.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Head-Up Display information



1. Turn by Turn (TBT) navigation information
2. Traffic signs or speed limit
3. Speedometer
4. SCC set speed information
5. SCC vehicle distance information
6. Lane Following Assist information
7. Lane Safety information
8. Blind-Spot Safety information
9. Surrounding vehicles (if equipped)

Precautions whilst using the Head-Up Display

- It may sometimes be difficult to read information on the head-up display in the following situations.
 - The driver is improperly positioned in the driver's seat.
 - The driver wears polarised sunglasses.
 - An object is located above the head-up display cover
 - The vehicle is driven on a wet road.
 - Any improper lighting accessory is installed inside the vehicle, or there is light coming in from outside of the vehicle.
 - The driver wears glasses.
 - The driver wears contact lenses.

When it is difficult to read the head up display information, adjust the image height or brightness level from the Settings menu on the infotainment system screen.

- For your safety, make sure to stop the vehicle before adjusting the settings.
- Do not tint the front windscreen glass or add other types of metallic coating. Otherwise, the head-up display image may be invisible.
- Do not place any accessories on the crash pad or attach any objects on the windscreen glass.
- When replacing the front windscreen glass, replace it with a windscreen glass designed for head-up display operation. Otherwise, duplicated images may be displayed on the windscreen glass.



WARNING

The Blind-Spot Collision Warning system warnings on the head-up display are supplemental. Do not solely depend on them to change lanes. Always take a look around before changing lanes.



Information

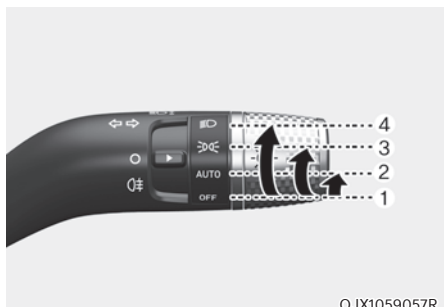
Head-up Display includes GPL, LGPL, MPL and other open source licence software.

LIGHTING

Exterior lights

Lighting control

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:



OJX1059057R

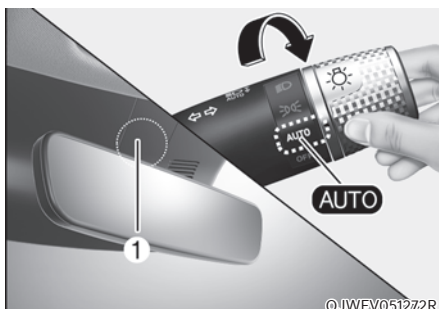
1. OFF
2. AUTO headlamps
3. Parking lamps
4. Headlamps

Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)

The Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day, especially after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will turn the dedicated lamp OFF when :

- The headlamps are ON.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is turned off.



©JWEV051272R

AUTO headlamp

The parking lamps and headlamps will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of daylight as measured by the ambient light sensor (1) at the upper end of the windscreen glass.

Even with the AUTO headlamps feature in operation, it is recommended that you manually turn ON the headlamps when driving at night or in a fog, driving in the rain, or when you enter dark areas, such as tunnels and parking facilities.

NOTICE

- Do not cover or spill anything on the sensor (1) located at the upper end of the windscreen glass.
- Do not clean the sensor using a window cleaner, the cleanser may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.
- If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windscreen, the AUTO headlamp system may not work properly.



OJWEV051256R

Parking lamps (P)

The parking lamps, licence plate lamp and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.



OJWEV051255R

Headlamp (H)

The headlamps, parking lamps, licence plate lamp and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.

i Information

The Start/Stop button must be in the ON position to turn on the headlamps.

High beam operation



To turn on the high beam headlamps, push the lever away from you. The lever will return to its original position.

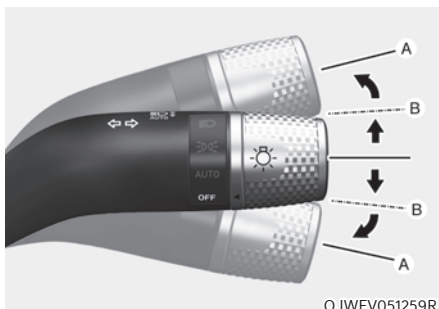
The high beam indicator will light when the headlamps high beams are switched on.

To turn off the high beam headlamps, pull the lever towards you. The low beams will turn on.



To flash the high beam headlamps, pull the lever towards you, then release the lever. The high beams will remain ON as long as you hold the lever towards you.

Turn signals and lane change signals



To signal a turn, push down on the lever for a right turn or up for a left turn in position (A).

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

One touch turn signal

To use One Touch Turn Signal push the turn signal lever up or down to position (B) and then release it.

The lane change signals will blink 3, 5 or 7 times.

You can enable the One Touch Turn Signal function or choose the number of blinking by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → One Touch Turn Signal (or One-touch indicator) → 3 flashes/5 flashes /7 flashes/Off' in the infotainment system screen.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Battery saver function

The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged.

The system automatically turns off the parking lamps when the driver turns the vehicle off and opens the driver-side door.

With this feature, the parking lamps will turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

However, the parking lamps stay ON even when the driver-side door is opened if the headlamps switch is turned to the parking lamp or AUTO (if equipped) position after the vehicle is turned off. If necessary, to keep the lamps on turn the parking lamps OFF and ON again using the headlamps switch on the steering column after the vehicle is turned off.

Headlamps delay function

If the Start/Stop button is in the ACC position or the OFF position with the headlamps ON, the headlamps (and/or parking lamps) remain on for about 5 minutes. However, if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps are turned off after 15 seconds. Also, with the vehicle off if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps (and/or parking lamps) are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlamps (and/or parking lamps) can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the smart key twice or turning the headlamp switch to the OFF or AUTO position.

You can enable the headlamps delay function by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Headlight Delay (or Headlight time-out)' in the infotainment system screen.

**Information**

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

NOTICE

- If the driver exits the vehicle through another door besides the driver door, the battery saver function does not operate and the headlamps delay function does not turn OFF automatically.
- This may cause the battery to discharge. To avoid battery discharge, turn OFF the headlamps manually from the headlamps switch before exiting the vehicle.

Headlamps levelling device

Headlamps levelling device automatically adjusts the headlamps beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage compartment.

It also adjusts to the appropriate headlamps beam level for various situations.



WARNING

If the function does not work properly, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

Headlamp moisture removal function

When moisture fogs up inside of the headlamp, if the headlamp is on for certain period of time, the fan circulates the air inside to remove moisture. If moisture is not removed, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Reverse guide lamp

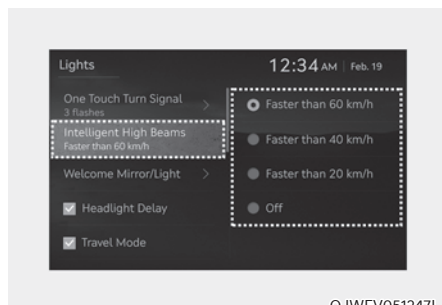
When the gear is in R (Reverse), the reversing lamps turn on and the reverse guide lamp at the back of the vehicle lights the floor.

The lamp informs drivers nearby that your vehicle is reversing.

INTELLIGENT FRONT-LIGHTING SYSTEM (IFS) (IF EQUIPPED)

Intelligent Front-Lighting System secures a clear view for the driver with the high beam on whilst driving at night.

System setting



OJWEV051247L

With the Start/Stop button in the ON position, select 'Lights → Intelligent High Beams (or Smart High Beam)' from the Settings menu to turn on Intelligent Front-Lighting System and deselect to turn off the system.



WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle in a safe location.

System operation

Display and control



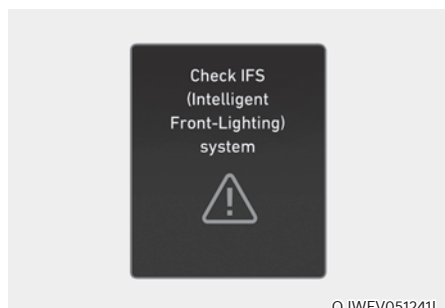
OJWEV051260R

After selecting 'Intelligent High Beams' in the Settings menu, Intelligent Front-Lighting System will operate using the following procedure:

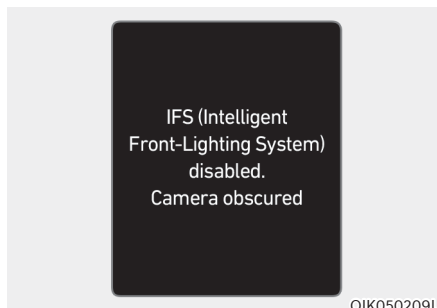
- Place the headlamps switch in the AUTO position and push the headlamps lever toward the instrument cluster. The Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFS) indicator light will illuminate on the instrument cluster and the system will be enabled.
- When the system is enabled, the Intelligent Front-Lighting System will operate according to the set speed in the infotainment system. The initial system is set to work when vehicle speed is above 40 km/h.
- The high beam LED partially turns off if an oncoming vehicle or a vehicle ahead is detected by the front view camera.

System malfunction and limitations

System malfunction



When Intelligent Front-Lighting System is not working properly, the 'Check Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFS)' warning message will come on for a few second on the cluster display. After the message disappears, the AFS and  will illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



When the front view camera is covered with dirt, snow, or debris, Intelligent Front-Lighting System may temporarily not work properly. If this occurs, a warning message will appear on the cluster display.

The system will function normally when such dirt, snow or debris is removed.

Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where there are no objects detected after turning on the vehicle.

Also, even though a warning message does not appear on the cluster display, the system may not properly operate.

Limitations of the system

Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not work properly in the following situations:

- Light from a vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, or because it is hidden from sight, etc.
- Headlamps of a vehicle are covered with dust, snow or water.
- There is a lamp that has a similar shape as a vehicle's lamp.
- Headlamps have been damaged or not repaired properly.
- Headlamps are not aimed properly.
- Driving on a narrow curved road, rough road, uphill or downhill.
- Vehicle in front is partially visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road conditions are poor such as being wet, icy or covered with snow.
- A vehicle suddenly appears around a bend.
- The vehicle is tilted from a flat tyre or is being towed.
- There are many street lights or the ambient light is bright.
- Light from an oncoming or front vehicle is not detected due to obstacles in the air such as exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, or water spray or blizzard on the road, or fogging in the lamp, etc.
- The front windscreen is covered with foreign substance.



CAUTION

- **Never install any accessories or stickers on the front windscreen, or tint the front windscreen.**
- **If the front view camera have been replaced or repaired, the system may need to be calibrated. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Use extreme caution to keep the front view camera dry, and do not remove or damage related parts of the Intelligent Front-Lighting System.**
- **Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) over the instrument panel. Any light reflection may prevent the system from functioning properly.**

NOTICE

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in chapter 7.



WARNING

- **At times, Intelligent Front-Lighting System may not work properly. The system is for your convenience only. It is the responsibility of the driver for safe driving practices and always check the road conditions for your safety.**
- **When the system does not operate properly, switch the headlamps position manually between high beam and low beam.**

HIGH BEAM ASSIST (HBA) (IF EQUIPPED)



OJWEV051260R

High Beam Assist automatically controls the headlights between high beam and low beam depending on the detected ambient light, such as an oncoming vehicle or leading vehicle.

Detecting sensor



OJWEV051058

[1] : Front view camera

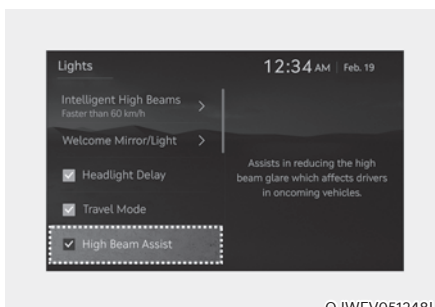
The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect ambient light and brightness whilst driving.

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

NOTICE

- Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of High Beam Assist.
- For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to “Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)” section in chapter 7.

High Beam Assist setting



OJWEV051248L

With the Start/Stop button in the ON position, select ‘Lights → HBA (High Beam Assist)’ from the Settings menu to turn on High Beam Assist and deselect to turn off the function.



WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle in a safe location.

High Beam Assist operation

Display and control

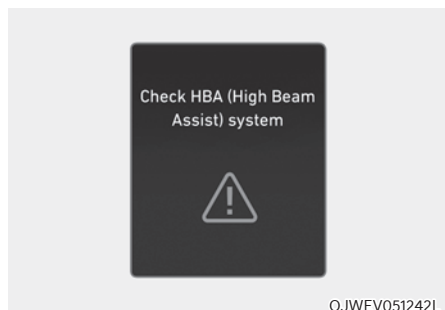
- After selecting 'HBA (High Beam Assist)' in the Settings menu, High Beam Assist will operate using the following procedure:
 - Place the headlamps switch in the AUTO position and push the headlamps lever towards the instrument cluster. The High Beam Assist (AUTO) indicator light will illuminate on the instrument cluster and High Beam Assist will be enabled.
 - When High Beam Assist is enabled, high beam will turn on when the vehicle speed is above 40 km/h. When the vehicle speed is below 25 km/h, high beam will turn off.
 - The High Beam (H) indicator light will illuminate on the instrument cluster when the high beam is on.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, if the headlamps lever or switch is used, High Beam Assist operates as follow:
 - If the headlamps lever is pulled towards you when the high beam is off, the high beam will turn on without High Beam Assist cancelled. When you let go of the headlamps lever, the lever will move to the middle and the high beam will turn off.
 - If the headlamps lever is pulled towards you when the high beam is on by High Beam Assist, low beam will turn on and the High Beam Assist will turn off.
 - If the headlamps switch is placed from AUTO to another position (headlamps/position/off), High Beam Assist will turn off and the corresponding lamps will turn on.
- When High Beam Assist is operating, high beam switches to low beam if any of the following conditions occur:
 - When the headlamps of an oncoming vehicle are detected.
 - When the tail lamps of a vehicle in front are detected.
 - When the headlamp or tail lamp of a motorcycle or a bicycle is detected.
 - When the surrounding ambient light is bright enough that high beams are not required.
 - When streetlights or other lights are detected.

Information

The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the instrument cluster.

High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations

High Beam Assist malfunction



When High Beam Assist is not working properly, the 'Check HBA (High Beam Assist system)' warning message will appear and  warning light will illuminate on the instrument cluster. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Limitations of High Beam Assist

- Light from an oncoming or front vehicle is not detected because of lamp damage, or because it is hidden from sight, etc.
- Headlamps of an oncoming or front vehicle are covered with dust, snow or water.
- There is a lamp that has a similar shape as a vehicle's lamp.
- Headlamps have been damaged or not repaired properly.
- Headlamps are not aimed properly.
- Driving on a narrow-curved road, curved road, rough road, uphill or downhill.

- Vehicle in front is partially visible on a crossroad or curved road.
- There is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror ahead.
- There is a temporary reflector or flash ahead (construction area).
- The road conditions are poor such as being wet, icy or covered with snow.
- A vehicle suddenly appears around a bend.
- The vehicle is tilted from a flat tyre or is being towed.
- Light from an oncoming or front vehicle is not detected due to obstacles in the air such as exhaust fume, smoke, fog, snow, or water spray or blizzard on the road, or fogging in the lamps, etc.

Information

For more details on the limitations of the Front View Camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in chapter 7.

WARNING

- At times, High Beam Assist may not work properly. High Beam Assist is for your convenience only. It is the driver's responsibility to drive safely and always check the road conditions for your safety.
- When High Beam Assist does not operate properly, change the headlamps position manually between high beam and low beam.

INTERIOR LIGHTS



WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. The interior lights may obscure your view and cause an accident.

NOTICE

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the vehicle is turned off or the battery will discharge.

Interior lamp AUTO cut

The interior lamps will automatically go off approximately 20 minutes after the vehicle is turned off and the doors are closed. If a door is opened, the lamp will go off 25 minutes after the vehicle is turned off. If the doors are locked by the smart key and the vehicle enters the armed stage of the theft alarm system, the lamps will go off five seconds later.

Front lamps



OJWEV052296AU

Front map lamp ():

Touch either icons to turn the map lamp on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map lamp at night or as a personal lamp for the driver and the front passenger.

Door lamp ():

The front or rear interior lamps come on when the front or rear doors are opened. When doors are unlocked by the smart key, the front and rear lamps come on for approximately 30 seconds as long as any door is not opened. The front and rear interior lamps go out gradually after approximately 30 seconds when the door is closed. However, if the Start/Stop button is in the ON position or all doors are locked, the front and rear lamps will turn off. If a door is opened with the Start/Stop button in the ACC position or the OFF position, the front and rear lamps will stay on for about 5 minutes.

Interior lamp ():

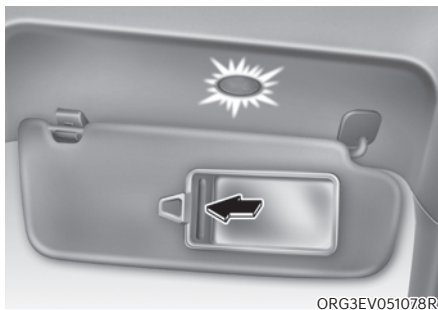
- Press the button to turn ON the interior lamp for the front/rear seats.

Rear lamps



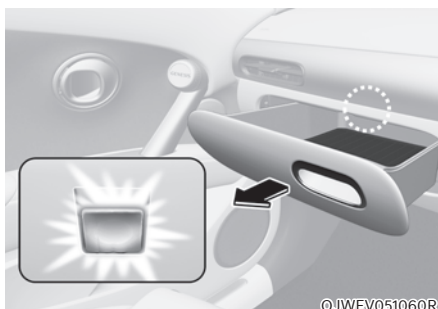
-  : Press the button to turn the lamp on or off.

Vanity mirror lamp



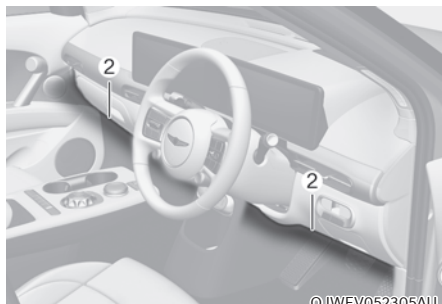
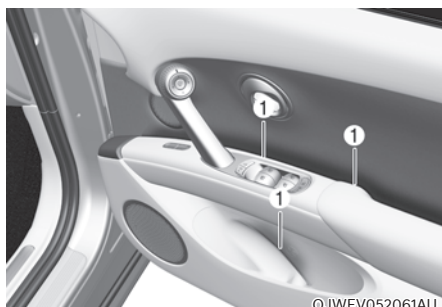
Opening the lid of the vanity mirror will automatically turn on the mirror lamp.

Glove box lamp



The glove box lamp turns on for about 20 minutes when the glove box is opened.

Mood lamp



[1]: Door mood lamp

[2]: Driver and passenger foot mood lamp

- To set the brightness and the colour of the mood lamp, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Interior mood lamp'
- When driving at night or under low light driving conditions, the sensors detect the light level around the vehicle and automatically adjust the brightness of the mood lamp. To set the automatic brightness adjustment turn On/Off, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Interior Mood Lamp → Brightness control'

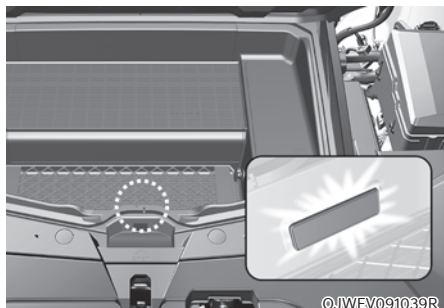
- There are different colours for different drive modes. To set the colours for the different drive modes, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Interior Mood Lamp → Colours for the drive modes'
- The colour of the mood lamp turns red when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit in the speed control section. To set the colour change function, select 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Lights → Interior Mood Lamp → Speed limit warning'
- The colour of the mood lamp turns red when booster function is activated.

Tailgate lamp



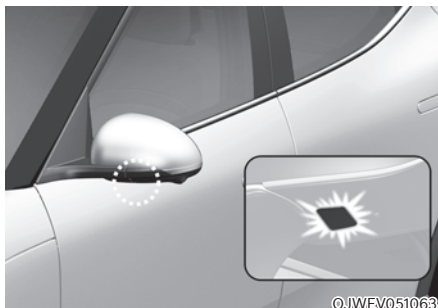
The tailgate lamp comes on when the tailgate is opened.

Front boot lamp



The front boot lamp comes on when the bonnet is opened.

Puddle lamp



Welcome light

When all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the puddle lamp will turn on for 15 seconds if the door is unlocked by the smart key or when you put your hand in the outside door handle with the smart key in possession.

For more details, refer to “Welcome System” in this chapter.

Escort light

When the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the driver's door is opened, the puddle lamp will turn on for 30 seconds. If the driver's door is closed within the 30 second period, the puddle lamp will turn off after 15 seconds. If the driver's door is closed and locked, the puddle lamp will turn off immediately.

The Puddle Lamp Escort Light will turn on only the first time the driver's door is opened after the vehicle is turned off.

Puddle lamp and door handle lamp

When all the doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the puddle lamp and door handle lamp will turn on for approximately 15 seconds if any of the following is performed:

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When you put your hand in the outside door handle with the smart key in possession.
- If 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Convenience → Welcome Mirror/Light → Enable on Driver Approach' is selected from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen, the lamps will turn on when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.



Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Headlamps and parking lamps

When the light switch is ON, and all the doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the headlamps and parking lamps will turn on for approximately 15 seconds if the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key. Note that if the light switch is in the AUTO position, the headlamps and parking lamps will turn on only when it is dark outside.

Select 'Setup → Lights → Headlamps Delay' from the Settings menu to turn on this function.

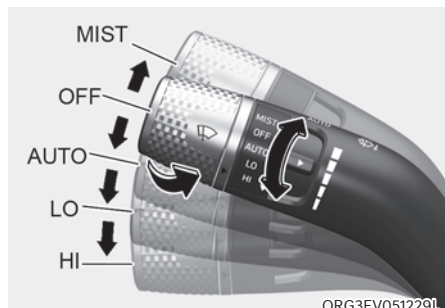
Interior lamp

When the door lamp switch  is on and all doors (and tailgate) are closed and locked, the room lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the following are performed:

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When you put your hand in the outside door handle whilst carrying the smart key.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button on the smart key the lamps will turn off immediately.

WIPERS AND WASHERS



Information

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windscreen wipers to ensure proper operation.

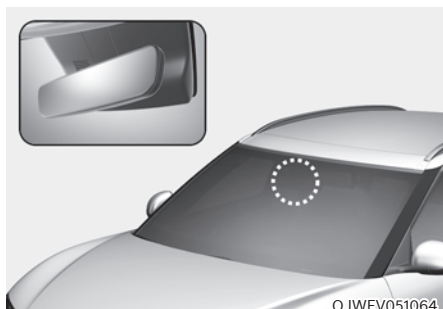
If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.

Front windscreen wipers

Operates as follows when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

- MIST :** For a single wiping cycle, push the lever upward (or downward) and release. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.
- OFF :** Wiper is not in operation.
- AUTO :** The rain sensor located at the top of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wiper operates. When the rain stops, the wiper stops. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.
- LO :** The wiper runs at a lower speed.
- HI :** The wiper runs at a higher speed.

AUTO (Automatic) control



The rain sensor located at the top of the windscreen glass senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval.

The wiper operation time will be automatically controlled depends on rainfall.

When the rain stops, the wiper stops.

To vary the sensitivity setting, turn the sensitivity control knob.

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the wiper will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper to the OFF position when the wiper is not in use.



WARNING

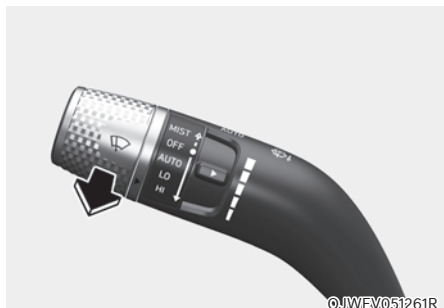
To avoid personal injury from the windscreen wipers, when the vehicle is running and the windscreen wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode:

- Do not touch the upper end of the windscreen glass facing the rain sensor.
- Do not wipe the upper end of the windscreen glass with a damp or wet cloth.
- Do not put pressure on the windscreen glass.

NOTICE

- When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF position to stop the auto wiper operation. The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode whilst washing the vehicle.
- Do not remove the sensor cover located at the top of the passenger side windscreen glass. Damage to system components could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.
- As this system uses a photo sensor, temporary malfunction could occur depending on sudden ambient light changes made by stones and dust whilst driving.

Windscreen washers



In the OFF position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and run the wipers 1-3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever. If the washer does not work, you may need to add washer fluid to the washer fluid reservoir.

Recirculating air when washer fluid is used

When washer fluid is used, in order to reduce any objectionable scent of the washer fluid from entering the cabin, recirculation mode and air conditioning are automatically activated depending on the outside temperature. If you select fresh mode whilst the function is operating, the function will resume after a certain amount of time. It may not work in some conditions such as cold weather or vehicle OFF.

For more details, refer to “Climate control additional features” section in this chapter.



WARNING

When the outside temperature is below freezing, **ALWAYS** warm the windscreen using the defroster to help prevent the washer fluid from freezing on the windscreen and obscuring your vision which could result in an accident and serious injury or death.

NOTICE

- To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.
- To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windscreen, do not operate the wipers when the windscreen is dry.
- To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.
- To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM



OJWEV052100E

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Driver's temperature control | 8. Air Intake Control (Fresh/ Recirculating) |
| 2. Passenger's temperature control | 9. Front windscreen defroster |
| 3. Blower speed control | 10. Rear Window defroster |
| 4. Passengers's mode selection | 11. SYNC |
| 5. Driver's mode selection | 12. A/C (air conditioning) |
| 6. AUTO (automatic control with low/ med/high settings) | 13. Clean air system |
| 7. OFF (System off) | 14. HEAT button |
| | 15. Driver's seat climate control |

Information

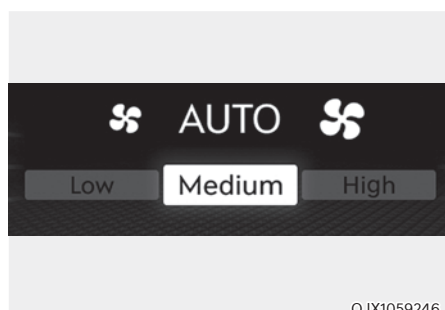
Use microfiber cloth when wiping finger prints off the touch screen.

Automatic temperature control mode (if equipped)

The Automatic Climate Control System is controlled by setting the desired temperature.

1. Press the AUTO button.

The mode selection, blower speed, air intake and air-conditioning will be controlled automatically by the temperature setting you select.



OJX1059246

2. When the climate control system is being automatically controlled, blower speed can be selected (Low/Medium/High).
- HIGH: Use when quick heating or cooling is preferred.
 - MEDIUM: Use when medium blower speed is preferred for cooling or heating.
 - LOW: Use when low blower speed is preferred for cooling or heating.
3. Turn the temperature control knob to the desired temperature. If the temperature is set to the lowest setting (Lo), the air conditioning system will operate continuously. After the interior has cooled sufficiently, adjust the knob to a higher temperature set point whenever possible.

To turn the automatic operation off, select any function of the following:

- Front windscreen defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windscreen defroster function. The 'AUTO' sign will illuminate on the climate information screen once again.)
- Blower speed control icon

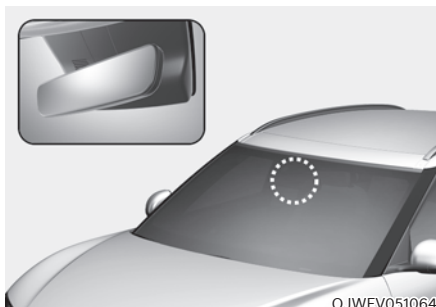
The selected function will be controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.

For your convenience and to improve the efficiency of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22°C (72°F).

To change the temperature unit from °C to °F or °F to °C:

Press the AUTO button for 3 seconds whilst pressing the OFF button.

Information



OJWEV051064

Never place anything near the ambient light/solar sensor to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

Manual temperature control mode

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pushing buttons other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons selected.

When pressing any button except the AUTO button whilst using automatic operation, the functions not selected will be controlled automatically.

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.
To improve the effectiveness of heating and cooling, select the mode according to the following:
 - Heating: 
 - Cooling: 
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the air intake control to Fresh or Recirculation mode.
5. Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.
7. Press the AUTO button to convert to full automatic control of the system.

The climate control system settings will be maintained, even when the vehicle is turned OFF. However, the climate control system settings will be initialised when the battery has been discharged, or when the cables have been disconnected.

In this case, adjust the climate control system settings again.

Mode selection



Front seat mode selection

- Touch the arrows on the climate control information screen to select air flow direction.
- Press the SYNC button and when the indicator light on the button turns off, the air flow direction of the driver's seat and passenger seat can be controlled individually. However, passengers and rear seats cannot select .
- You may select 2~3 modes at the same time.



OJWEV051101R

Air flow direction

The mode selection Icon or button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.



Defrost (A, D)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen.



Face-level (B, D, E)

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.



Floor-level (A, C, D, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen and side window defrosters.

Front windscreen defroster



Defrost-level (A, D)

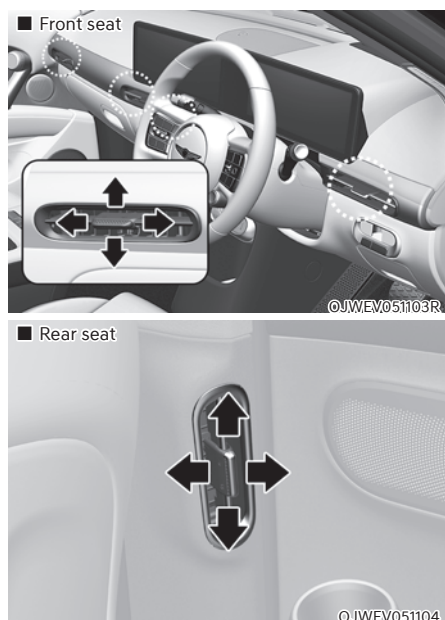
Press the button, and the indicator light on the button will illuminate and the windscreen defroster indicator will appear on the climate control information screen.

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

When Defogging logic is enabled, Fresh mode is selected and air conditioning is selected depending on the outside temperature.

Press the button again, the indicator light will turn off and the previous settings will be selected.

Instrument panel vents

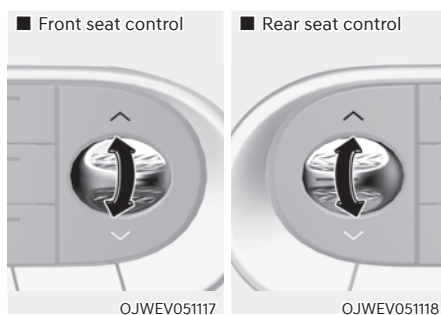


The instrument panel vent air flow can be directed up/down or left/right using the vent adjustment lever.

The air flow can also be CLOSED using the vent adjustment lever.

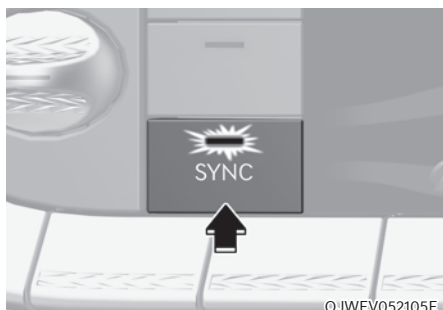
Move the lever to ⊗ position to close, and to ☰ position to open.

Temperature control

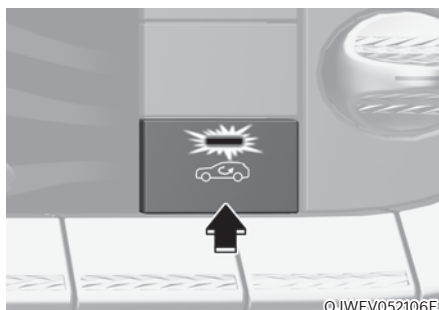


Turn the knob to the up to increase the temperature. Turn the knob to the down to decrease temperature.

The temperature will increase or decrease by 0.5°C (1°F) for each incremental location. When set to the lowest temperature setting, the air conditioning will operate continuously.

SYNC**Adjusting the temperature, air flow direction and blower speed equally**

Press the SYNC button (indicator light ON), the rear seat's temperature, air flow direction and blower speed will be adjusted to the same as the driver's control.

Air intake control

The air intake control button is used to select either Fresh mode (outside air) or Recirculation mode (cabin air).

Recirculation mode

When Recirculation mode is selected, air from the passenger compartment will be recirculated through the system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Fresh mode

When Fresh mode is selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

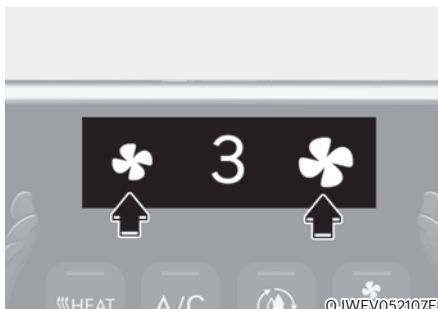
Information

Operating the system primarily in Fresh mode is recommended. Use Recirculation mode temporarily only when needed. Prolonged operation of the heater in Recirculation mode and without the air conditioning ON can cause fogging of the windscreen. In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning ON in Recirculation mode may result in excessively dry, dehumidified air in the cabin and may promote formation of musty vent odour due to stagnant air.

WARNING

- Continued use of the climate control system operation in Recirculation mode for a prolonged period of time may cause drowsiness to the occupants in the cabin. This may lead to loss of vehicle control which may lead to an accident.
- Continued use of the climate control system operation in Recirculation mode with the air conditioning OFF may allow humidity to increase inside the cabin. This may cause condensation to accumulate on the windscreen and obscure visibility.
- Do not sleep in your vehicle or remain parked in your vehicle with the windows up and either the heater or the air conditioning ON for prolonged periods of time. Doing so may increase the levels of carbon dioxide in the cabin which may lead to serious injury or death.

Blower speed control



The blower speed can be set to the desired speed touching the  or  icon.

More air is delivered with higher blower speeds.

Pressing the OFF button or touching the blower down icon at the lowest blower speed.

Information

For better sound quality, blower speed may automatically slow down for a couple of minutes when you activate voice recognition or hands free.

NOTICE

Operating the blower when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower when the vehicle is running.

Driver only

If you touch the DRIVER ONLY icon (🌀^{DRIVER ONLY}) and the indicator light illuminates on the infotainment climate control screen, cold air mostly blows towards the driver's seat. However, some of the cold air may come out of other seating position ducts to keep indoor air pleasant.

If you use the DRIVER ONLY with no passenger in the front passenger seat, energy consumption will be reduced. DRIVER ONLY will be turned off under the following conditions:

- 1) Defrost on
- 2) DRIVER ONLY icon re-touch
- 3) Passenger's mode selection
- 4) SYNC
- 5) Passenger's temperature control used

Air conditioning

Touch the CLIMATE icon in the climate control panel. The climate information screen will appear on the infotainment screen. Touch the A/C/ icon in the infotainment screen to turn the air conditioning on (indicator light ON) and off.

HEAT button



Touch CLIMATE icon in the climate control panel. The climate information screen will appear on the infotainment screen. Touch the HEAT icon in the infotainment screen to turn the heat on (indicator light will illuminate).

Touch the button again to turn the heater off.

The air conditioning and heating uses energy from the high voltage battery. If you use the heating or air conditioning for too long, distance to empty can be reduced due to too much power consumption.

Turn off the heating and air conditioning if you do not need them.



Information

If the vehicle is turned off after the heating and cooling operation, a sound may occur temporarily as the air climate system mode is changed.

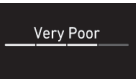
Clean air system (if equipped)



When the clean air system is selected, the indoor fine dust concentration is measured by the fine dust sensor located in the vehicle and the indoor air status is presented on the screen. If needed, it prevents contaminated external air and the cabin air filter purifies the indoor air by filtering the fine dust to provide fresh air.

Indoor air status display

The air status is presented with the four levels as below when the climate control system turns on.

Clean Air System	ON				Operation Indicator
Indoor Air Condition	Good	Normal	Poor	Very poor	
					

If you touch the clean air system icon, it operates for 20 seconds. The system works for 20 seconds at a time and it performs automatically depending on the indoor air status.

Information

- The cabin air filter needs to be replaced per every 15,000 km to maximise efficiency of the clean air system.
- If the vehicle is driven in an inner city area with high air pollution or severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads or the indoor fine dust concentration is not presented as Good on the screen due to prolonged heavy fine dust, have the cabin air filter inspected. If the cabin air filter is contaminated, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.
- Have the cabin air filter replaced by an authorised retailer to maintain the optimal performance of the clean air system.
- Use genuine Genesis cabin air filter to maintain the optimal performance of the clean air system.

When a cabin air filter that has low dust collection efficiency or poor dust removal performance is used, or if you use a cabin air filter that does not meet the specification, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.

- Presented dust concentration is measured inside the vehicle in real-time so the measured value is differed from the dust concentration in the atmosphere.
- The presented figure might be varied by the mensuration or measurement locations so please use it as a reference.
- The fine dust concentration value is the result of measuring the number of dust and converting it to the fine dust concentration using an optical method.

- The measured fine dust concentration value may be different from the measurement standards of other instruments or products.
 - If the fine dust concentration is high, the displayed fine dust concentration may differ from the actual concentration level.
- The time of concentration level measurement may be delayed since the spread of fine dust is slow.
- Movement around the fine dust sensor interferes with normal operation of the sensor. The displayed fine dust concentration may differ from the actual concentration level.
- In the following environments, the fine dust concentration can be displayed differently from the actual level.
 - Hairy products, bugs or pets are present
 - A vacuum cleaner is used
 - Humidity is high
 - A door or window is opened letting the outside air in
 - Outside air from a construction site, factory or ventilator enters
 - A product that generates vapours or fine particles (humidifiers, sprays, etc.) is used
 - Even if the dust is generated by activities such as dusting or cleaning, the fine dust sensor may not respond if the dust is large (PM10 or higher). It will be removed by the cabin air filter.

- The fine dust concentration level can change by products that cause odor, such as air fresheners, odor removers, and cleaners.
- In an environment affected by electromagnetic waves or electrical noise, the fine dust concentration can be temporarily displayed high.
- It may take time to reset the fine dust sensor when the vehicle is turned on.
- If the air filter is not replaced regularly, fine dust concentration may be displayed as Poor or Very Poor on the screen.

Schedule climate



Set target temperature.

For more details, refer to “EV mode” in chapter 1.

OFF mode



Press the OFF button or touch the blower down icon at the lowest blower speed to turn the climate control system off. You can still operate the mode and air intake button as long as the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

System operation

Cooling / Ventilation

1. Select the Face Level  mode.
2. Set the air intake control to fresh or recirculation mode.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Select the Floor Level  mode.
2. Set the air intake control to fresh or recirculation mode.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.
5. If desired, turn the air conditioning ON with the temperature control knob set to heat in order to dehumidify the air before it enters into the cabin.

If the windscreen fogs up, select the Front Defrost  mode.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculation mode. Return the control to the to Fresh mode when the unpleasant air outside has diminished. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- To help prevent the inside of the windscreen from fogging, set the air intake control to fresh mode and the blower speed to the desired position, turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

Your Genesis vehicle's air conditioning system is filled with R-134a refrigerant.

1. Start the vehicle.
2. Press the air conditioning button.
3. Set the mode to the Face Level  mode.
4. Set the air intake control to Recirculation mode temporarily to allow the cabin to cool quickly. When the desired temperature in the cabin is reached, change the air intake control back to Fresh mode.
5. Adjust the blower speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

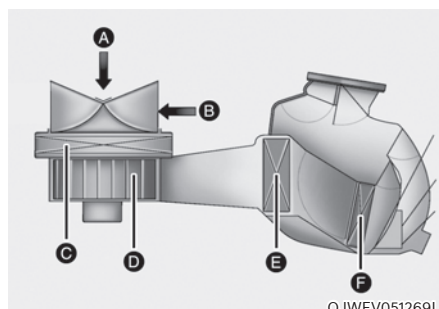
When maximum cooling is desired, set the temperature control to the lowest position, then set the blower speed control to the highest setting.

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- After sufficient cooling has been achieved, switch back from recirculation mode to fresh mode.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system with the windows and sunroof closed.
- Use the air conditioning system every month only for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- If you operate air conditioning excessively, the difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection to the  position and blower speed control to the lowest speed.

System maintenance

Cabin air filter



[A] : Outside air, [B] : Recirculated air

[C] : Climate control air filter, [D] : Blower

[E] : Evaporator core, [F] : PTC & Inner condenser

The cabin air filter is installed under the front boot cover. It filters the dust or other pollutants that enter the vehicle through the heating and air conditioning system.

We recommend that the cabin air filter be replaced by an authorised Genesis repairer according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent cabin air filter inspections and changes are required.

If the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend that the system be inspected at an authorised Genesis repairer.

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also reduces the performance of the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

NOTICE

It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used. Otherwise, damage to the compressor and abnormal system operation may occur. To prevent damage, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.



WARNING

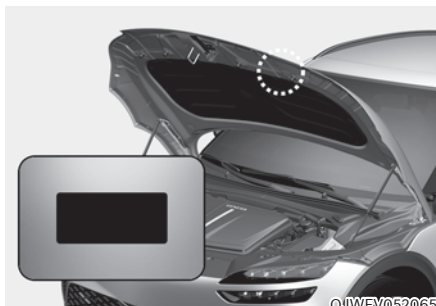
Vehicles equipped with R-134a



Since the refrigerant is operated at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

All refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment.

Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment. Failure to heed these warnings can lead to serious injuries.



OJWEV052065

Air Conditioning refrigerant label

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the bonnet.

Example



OJWEV051265AU

Each symbols and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented as follows:

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant
3. Classification of compressor lubricant
4. Caution
5. Service manual

WINDSCREEN DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING



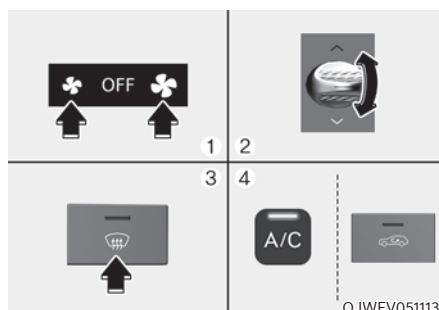
WARNING

Windscreen heating

Do not use the  position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up causing a loss of visibility, which could then lead to an accident resulting in serious injury or death. In this case, set the mode selection button to the  position and blower speed control knob to a lower speed.

- For maximum defrost performance, set the temperature control to the highest temperature setting and the blower speed control to the highest setting.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rearview mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heating and defrosting efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen.

To defog inside windscreen



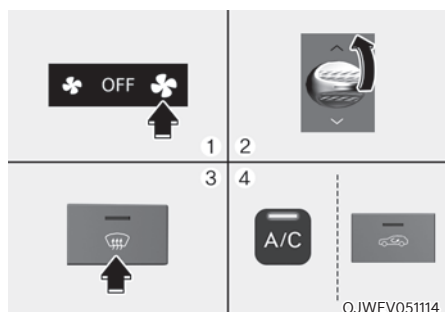
OJWEV051113

1. Select the desired blower speed.
2. Select the desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button (.
4. Fresh mode will be selected automatically.

Check to make sure the air intake control is in Fresh mode. If the air intake control indicator light is illuminated, press the button once to enable Fresh mode (indicator light OFF).

If the  position is selected, the blower speed is automatically increased.

To defrost inside windscreen



1. Set the blower speed to the highest (extreme right) position.
2. Set the temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button (windscreen with wiper icon).
4. Fresh mode will be selected automatically.

Check to make sure the air intake control is in Fresh mode. If the air intake control indicator light is illuminated, press the button once to enable Fresh mode (indicator light OFF).

If the windscreen icon position is selected, lower blower speed is adjusted to a higher blower speed.

Defogging logic

To reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen, the air intake or air conditioning are controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as windscreen icon positions. To cancel or reset the defogging logic, do the following.

1. Press the Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button (windscreen with wiper icon) or (windscreen icon).
3. Whilst pressing the air conditioning button (A/C), press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The air intake control button indicator will blink 3 times to indicate that the defogging logic has been disabled. Repeat the steps again to re-enable the defogging logic.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, it resets to the defog logic status.

Rear window defroster

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the rear window defroster conducting elements bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.



The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, whilst the vehicle is running.

- To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the centre control panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
- To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

i Information

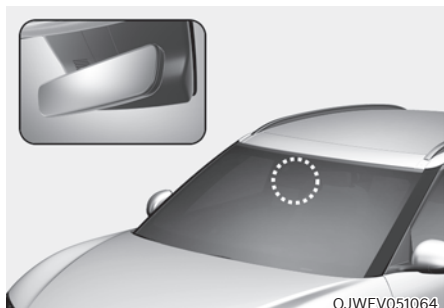
- If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.
- The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.

Outside rearview mirrors defroster

If your vehicle is equipped with the outside rearview mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

CLIMATE CONTROL ADDITIONAL FEATURES

Auto defogging system



Auto defogging helps reduce the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windscreen by automatically sensing the moisture on inside the windscreen.

The auto defogging system operates when the heating or air conditioning is on.

Information

The auto defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperature is below -10 °C (14 °F).



When the Auto Defogging System operates, the indicator will illuminate.

If a high amount of humidity is detected in the vehicle, the Auto Defogging System will be enabled. The following steps will be performed automatically:

- Step 1) Air conditioning will turn ON.
- Step 2) Air intake control will change to Fresh mode.
- Step 3) Mode will change to defrost to direct airflow to the windscreen.
- Step 4) Blower speed will be set to MAX.

If the air conditioning is off or recirculation mode is manually selected whilst Auto Defogging System is ON, the Auto Defogging System indicator will blink 3 times to signal that the manual operation has been cancelled.

Turning the Auto Defogging System ON or OFF

Climate control system

Press the front windscreen defroster button for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position. When the Auto Defogging System is turned off, the ADS OFF symbol will blink 3 times and ADS OFF will be displayed on the climate control information screen.

When the Auto Defogging System is turned on, the ADS OFF symbol will blink 6 times without a signal.

Infotainment system

Auto Defogging System can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Defog/Defrost Options → Auto Defog' from the infotainment system screen.

Information

- When the air conditioning is turned on by Auto Defogging System, if you try to turn off the air conditioning, the indicator will blink 3 times and the air conditioning will not be turned off.
- To maintain the effectiveness and efficiency of the Auto Defogging System, do not select Recirculation mode whilst the system is operating.
- When Auto Defogging System is operating, blower speed adjustment, temperature adjustment, and air intake control selection are all disabled.
- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

NOTICE

Do not remove the sensor cover located at the top of the windscreen glass.

Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Auto dehumidify (if equipped)

To increase cabin air quality and reduce windscreen misting, recirculation mode switches off automatically after about 5 to 30 minutes, depending on the outside temperature, and the air intake will change to fresh mode.

Turning Auto Dehumidify ON or OFF

Climate control system

To turn the Auto Dehumidify feature on or off, select Face level () mode and press the air intake control () button at least five times within three seconds. When Auto Dehumidify is turned on, the air intake control button indicator will blink 6 times. When turned off, the indicator will blink 3 times.

Infotainment system

Auto Dehumidify can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Automatic Ventilation → Auto Dehumidify' from the infotainment system screen.

Information

- If the battery (12 V) is discharged or disconnected, Auto dehumidify settings will be reset. Readjust the settings to turning Auto dehumidify option ON or OFF.
- The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Recirculating air when washer fluid is used

Recirculation mode automatically activates to reduce any objectionable scent of the washer fluid from entering the cabin when the windscreen washer is used.

Turning Activate upon Washer Fluid Use ON or OFF

Climate control system

To turn the Activate upon Washer Fluid Use feature on or off, select Floor level () mode, and then press the air intake control () button four times within two seconds whilst pressing the A/C icon.

When Activate upon Washer Fluid Use ON is turned on, the air intake control button indicator will blink 6 times. When turned off, the indicator will blink 3 times.

Infotainment system

Activate upon Washer Fluid Use can be turned on and off by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle Settings → Climate → Recirculate Air → Activate upon Washer Fluid Use (or Interlocking washer fluid)' from the infotainment system screen.

However, in cold weather to prevent the windscreen from fogging up, the recirculation mode may not be selected.



Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Sunroof inside air recirculation (if equipped)

When the sunroof is opened, fresh mode will be automatically selected. At this time, if you press the air intake control button, recirculation mode will be selected but will change back to fresh mode after 3 minutes. When the sunroof is closed, the air intake position will return to the original position that was selected.

Auto. Controls that use climate control settings (for driver's seat)

The temperature of the driver's seat warmer, air ventilated seat and heated steering wheel is automatically controlled depending on the inside and outside temperature of the vehicle when the vehicle is running.

To use these features, it must be enabled from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Seat → Heated/Ventilated Features → Heated/Ventilated Features → Auto. Controls That Use Climate Control Settings

For more details on Auto Comfort Control, refer to "Seat warmers" and "Air ventilation seats" section in chapter 3 and "Heated steering wheel (if equipped)" section in chapter 5.

STORAGE COMPARTMENT



WARNING

Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.



WARNING

ALWAYS keep the storage compartment covers closed securely whilst driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a collision, the items may fly out of the compartment and may cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passenger.

NOTICE

To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.

Centre console storage



To open:
Press the button.

Glove box



To open:

Pull the lever (1).



WARNING

ALWAYS close the glove box door after use.

An open glove box door can cause serious injury to the passenger in an accident, even if the passenger is wearing a seat belt.

Sunglasses holder



To open:

Push and release the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out.

To close:

Push back into position.

Make sure the sunglasses holder is closed whilst driving.

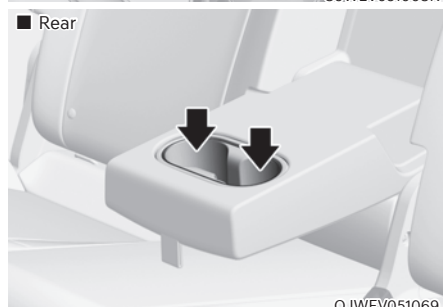
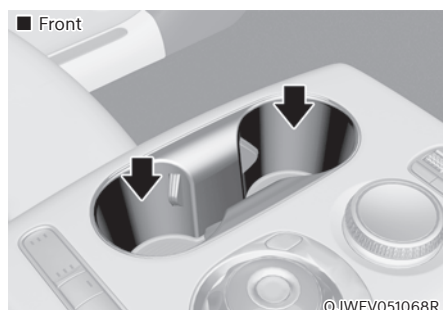


WARNING

- **Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglasses holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.**
- **Do not open the sunglasses holder whilst the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglasses holder.**
- **Do not put the glasses forcibly into a sunglasses holder. It may cause personal injury if you try to open it forcibly when the glasses are jammed in the holder.**

INTERIOR FEATURES

Cup holder



Cups or small beverages cups may be placed in the cup holders.



WARNING

- Avoid abrupt starting and braking when the cup holder is in use to prevent spilling your drink. If hot liquid spills, you could be burned. Such a burn to the driver could cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- Do not place uncovered or unsecured cups, bottles, cans, etc., in the cup holder containing hot liquid whilst the vehicle is in motion. Injuries may result in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- Only use soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in an accident.



WARNING

Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a hot vehicle. They may explode.

NOTICE

- Keep your drinks sealed whilst driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.
- When cleaning spilled liquids do not use hot air to blow out or dry the cup holder. This may damage the interior.

Diffuser



Remove the diffuser cover on the passenger door handle by turning it anti-clockwise and then insert the membrane type diffuser.

Sunvisor



To use the sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use the sunvisor to block the sun from the side window, pull it downward, release it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2) towards the window.

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the sunvisor and slide the mirror cover (3).

Adjust the sunvisor forward or rearward (4) as needed (if equipped). Use the ticket holder (5) to hold tickets.

Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use.



WARNING

For your safety, do not block your view when using the sunvisor.

NOTICE

The tab (5) adjacent to the vanity mirror on the sunvisor can be used for toll road tickets or self parking tickets. Use caution when inserting tickets into the ticket holder to avoid damage. Refrain from putting several tickets in the ticket holder as this could also damage the retaining tab.

Power outlet



The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 180 W with the vehicle running.



WARNING

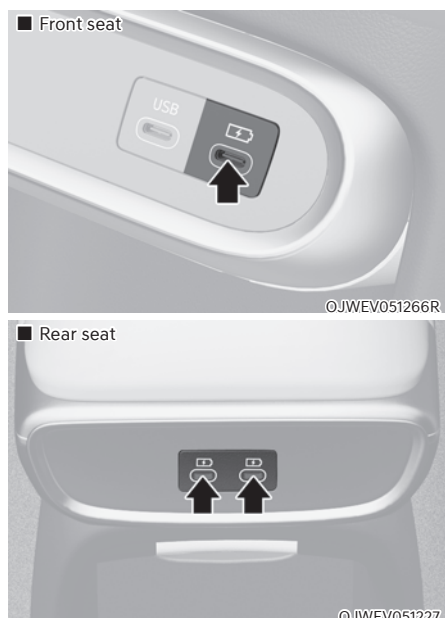
Avoid electrical shocks. Do not place your fingers or foreign objects (pin, etc.) into a power outlet or touch the power outlet with a wet hand.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the power outlets:

- Use the power outlet only when the vehicle is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the vehicle off could cause the battery to discharge.
- Only use 12 V electric accessories which are less than 180 W in electric capacity.
- Adjust the air-conditioning or heating to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.
- Close the cover when not in use.
- Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.
- Push the plug in as far as it will go. If good contact is not made, the plug may overheat and the fuse may open.
- Plug in battery equipped electrical/electronic devices with reverse current protection. The current from the battery may flow into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and cause system malfunction.

USB charger (if equipped)



The USB charger is designed to recharge batteries of small size electrical devices using a USB cable.

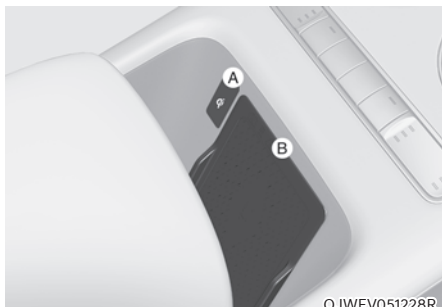
The electrical devices can be recharged when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.

The battery charging state may be monitored on the electrical device.

Disconnect the USB cable from the USB port after use.

- A smart phone or a tablet PC may get warmer during the re-charging process. It does not indicate any malfunction with the charging system.
- A smart phone or a tablet PC, which adopts a different re-charging method, may not be properly re-charged. In this case, use an exclusive charger of your device.
- The charging terminal is only to recharge a device. Do not use the charging terminal either to turn ON an audio or to play media in the infotainment system.

Wireless smart phone charging system (if equipped)



[A] : Indicator light, [B] : Charging pad

On certain models, the vehicle comes equipped with a wireless smart phone charger.

The system is available when all doors are closed, and when the Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.

Charging smart phone

The wireless smart phone charging system charges only the Qi-enabled smart phones (Qi). Read the label on the smart phone accessory cover or visit your smart phone manufacturer's website to check whether your smart phone supports the Qi technology.

The wireless charging process starts when you put a Qi-enabled smart phone on the wireless charging unit.

1. Remove other items, including the smart key, from the wireless charging unit. If not, the wireless charging process may be interrupted. Place the smart phone on the centre of the charging pad.

2. The indicator light is orange when the smart phone is charging. The indicator light will turn blue when phone charging is complete.
3. You can turn ON or OFF the wireless charging function from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
 - Setup → Vehicle → Convenience → Wireless Charging

If your smart phone is not charging:

- Slightly change the position of the smart phone on the charging pad.
- Make sure the indicator light is orange.

The indicator light will blink orange for 10 seconds if there is a malfunction in the wireless charging system.

In this case, temporarily stop the charging process, and re-attempt to charge your smart phone again.

The system warns you with a message on the cluster display if the smart phone is still on the wireless charging unit after the vehicle is turned OFF and the front door is opened.

For some manufacturer's smart phones, the system may not warn you even though the smart phone is left on the wireless charging unit. This is due to the particular characteristic of the smart phone and not a malfunction of a wireless charging.

NOTICE

- The wireless smart phone charging system may not support certain smart phones, which are not verified for the Qi specification (Qi).
- When placing your smart phone on the charging pad, position the phone in the middle of the mat for optimal charging performance. If your smart phone is off to the side, the charging rate may be less and in some cases the smart phone may experience higher heat conduction.
- In some cases, the wireless charging may stop temporarily when the smart key is used, either when starting the vehicle or locking/unlocking the doors, etc.
- When charging certain smart phones, the charging indicator may not change to blue when the smart phone is fully charged.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop, when the temperature abnormally increases inside the wireless smart phone charging system. The wireless charging process restarts, when the temperature falls to a certain level.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop when there is any metallic item, such as a coin, between the wireless smart phone charging system and the smart phone.
- When charging some smart phones with a self-protection feature, the wireless charging speed may decrease and the wireless charging may stop.
- If the smart phone has a thick cover, the wireless charging may not be possible.
- If the smart phone is not completely contacting the charging pad, wireless charging may not operate properly.
- Some magnetic items like credit cards, phone cards or rail tickets may be damaged if left with the smart phone during the charging process.
- When any smart phone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound is due to the vehicle discerning compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smart phone in any way.



Information

If the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, the charging also stops.

Vehicle to load (V2L) (if equipped)



OJWEVQ011052

V2L (Vehicle to Load) is installed at the central rear seat. V2L is a convenient feature which provides enough electricity to use diverse household electrical appliances in the vehicle. V2L is installed at the central rear seat bottom.

For more details, refer to “Vehicle to load (V2L)” section in chapter 1.

Clock

The clock can be set from the infotainment system.



Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

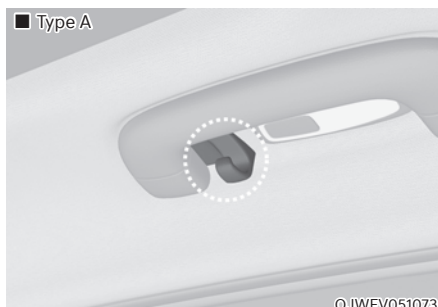


WARNING

Do not attempt to adjust the clock whilst driving. Doing so may result in distracted driving which may lead to an accident involving personal injury or death.

Coat hook

■ Type A



OJWEV051073

■ Type B

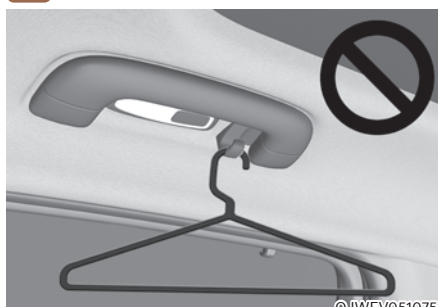


OJWEV051074

These hooks are not designed to hold large or heavy items.



WARNING



OJWEV051075

Do not hang other objects such as hangers or hard objects except clothes. Also, do not put heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the clothes pockets. In an accident or when the curtain air bag is inflated, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.

Floor mat anchor(s)

ALWAYS use the Floor Mat Anchors to attach the front floor mats to the vehicle. The anchors on the front floor carpet keep the floor mats from sliding forward.



WARNING

Do not overlay additional mats or liners over the floor mats. If using All Weather mats, remove the carpeted floor mats before installing them. Only use floor mats designed to connect to the anchors.



WARNING

The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat to the vehicle.

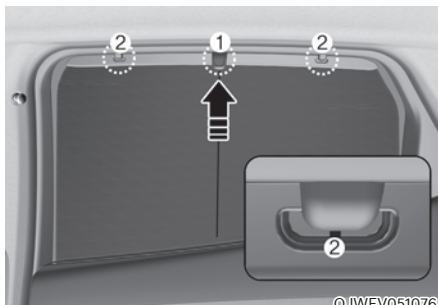
- Ensure to remove a protective film attached on the carpet before attaching a floor mat on the front floor carpet. Otherwise, the floor mat may move freely on the protective film and it could result in unintentional braking or accelerating.
- Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchor(s) before driving the vehicle.
- Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.
- Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (for example, all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.

NOTICE

Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, Genesis recommends that the Genesis floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.

Rear side window sunshades (if equipped)

Use the rear side window sunshade to block external light coming through the rear window glass.

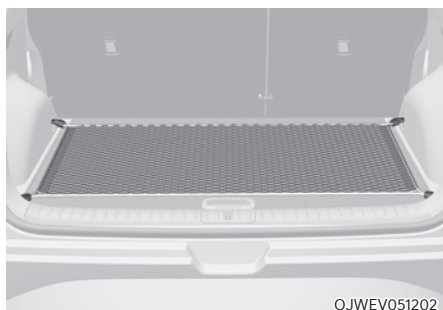


1. Lift the sunshade by the handle (1).
2. Hang the sunshade on both sides of the hook (2). If the sunshade is hung on one side of the hook, the sunshade may be wrinkled.

NOTICE

- Do not hang any other object except the rear side window sunshade on the hooks.
- If you pull the rear side window sunshade or apply force to return the sunshade to its original position after use, you may find the sunshade wrinkled or out of shape. To lower the sunshade, be sure to put the handle downward and slowly return the sunshade to its original position.
- Sunshades may not work properly if foreign objects (coins, toys, cookies, etc.) are stuck in the door. Be careful that foreign objects do not get into the door.

Luggage net holder (if equipped)



OJWEV051202

To keep items from shifting in the luggage compartment, you can use the 4 holders located in the luggage board to attach the luggage net.

Make sure the luggage net is securely attached to the holders in the luggage board.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact your authorised Genesis repairer to obtain a luggage net.



WARNING

Avoid eye injury. DO NOT overstretch the luggage net. ALWAYS keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. DO NOT use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

Use the luggage net to keep only light items from shifting in the luggage compartment.

Cargo security screen (if equipped)



OJWEV051203L

Use the cargo security screen to cover items stored in the luggage compartment.

Using the cargo security screen



OJWEV051204L

1. Pull the cargo security screen towards the rear of the vehicle by the handle (1).
2. Insert the guide pin (2) into the guide (3).



Information

Pull out the cargo security screen with the handle in the centre to prevent the guide pin from falling out of the guide.

When the cargo security screen is not in use:

1. Pull the cargo security screen rearward and down to release it from the guides.
2. The cargo security screen will automatically slide back in.

Information

The cargo security screen may not automatically slide back in if the cargo security screen is not fully pulled out. Pull the cargo screen out all the way and then slowly allow the screen to retract back in.

NOTICE

- Since the cargo security screen may be damaged or malformed, do not put luggage on it when it is in use.
- The cargo security screen and rear seat may be damaged when the rear seat slides forward/rearward or when the rear seatback is reclined.
- Note that if you release the handle whilst pulling the luggage screen handle all the way, the screen may wind up quickly and be damaged.



WARNING

- Do not place objects on the cargo security screen. Such objects may be thrown about inside the vehicle and possibly injure vehicle occupants during an accident or when braking.
- Never allow anyone to travel in the luggage compartment. It is designed for luggage only.
- Maintain the balance of the vehicle and locate the weight as forward as possible.

Removing the cargo security screen



1. Push one side of the cargo screen inward to compress the spring and release the screen from the vehicle.
2. Whilst the spring is compressed, pull out the cargo security screen.

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM

NOTICE

- If you install any aftermarket HID headlamps, your vehicle's audio and electronic devices may not function properly.
- Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discolouration.

USB Port



OJWEV051080R

You can use a USB cable to connect audio devices to the vehicle USB port.



Information

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the portable audio device's power source.

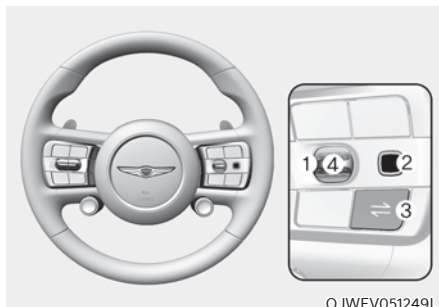
Antenna



OJWEV051077

The shark fin antenna will receive AM, FM broadcast signals and transmit data.

Steering wheel remote controls



OJWEV051249L

NOTICE

Do not operate multiple audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

VOLUME (∧ / ∨) (1)

- Press the VOLUME scroll up to increase volume.
- Press the VOLUME scroll down to decrease volume.

SEEK/PRESET (< / >) (2)

If swipe left or right and hold on optical mouse edge, it will function in the following modes:

- **RADIO mode**
It will function as the AUTO SEEK select button. It will SEEK until you release the button.
- **MEDIA mode**
It will function as the FF/RW button.

If swipe left or right on optical mouse, it would function in the following modes:

- **RADIO mode**
It will function by moving between stored PRESET STATIONS
- **MEDIA mode**
It will function as the TRACK UP/DOWN button.

MODE (⇌) (3)

Press the MODE button to change Radio/Media mode which user set.

MUTE (M) (4)

- Press the MUTE button to mute the sound.
- Press the MUTE button again to activate the sound.

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Infotainment system

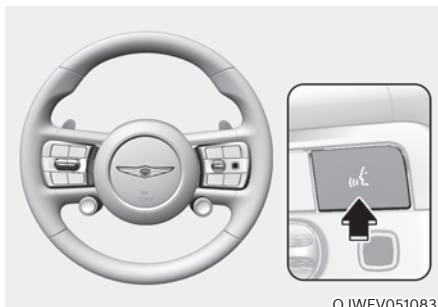


OJWEV051079R

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Voice recognition



OJWEV051083

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Bluetooth® wireless technology



OJWEV053081R



OJWEV092050AU

- (1) Call / Answer / Call end button
- (2) Microphone



Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.



CAUTION

To avoid driver distractions, do not excessively operate the device whilst driving the vehicle which may lead to an accident.

Bang&Olufsen sound system



CAUTION

Bang&Olufsen sound system is equipped with door speaker grills made of stainless steel. The grill surface can be heated when the vehicle is exposed to hot weather for a long period of time. Keep away from the speaker grill when it is hot.

6. Driving your vehicle

Before driving.....	6-3
Before entering the vehicle	6-3
Before starting	6-3
Start/Stop button.....	6-4
Start/Stop button positions.....	6-5
Starting the vehicle	6-6
Turning off the vehicle	6-7
Remote start	6-8
Reduction gear.....	6-9
Reduction gear operation.....	6-9
Rotate the shift dial manually in case of emergency.....	6-10
Cluster display messages	6-15
Good driving practices.....	6-17
Regenerative braking system.....	6-19
One pedal driving	6-20
i-Pedal	6-21
Smart recuperation system	6-22
Smart recuperation system setting.....	6-22
To activate smart recuperation system.....	6-22
Ready to operate.....	6-23
How to operate.....	6-24
Smart recuperation system will be temporarily cancelled when:	6-24
To resume Smart Recuperation System	6-24
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance recognition sensor (front radar)	6-25
System malfunction	6-26
Limitations of the system	6-26
Braking system.....	6-29
Power-assist brakes	6-29
Disc brakes wear indicator	6-30
High performance brake.....	6-30
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....	6-31
Auto Hold.....	6-35
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	6-38
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	6-40
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)	6-43
Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC).....	6-44
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)	6-45
Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)	6-45
Good braking practices.....	6-46
All Wheel Drive (AWD)	6-47
Emergency precautions.....	6-49

Electronic control suspension	6-51
System malfunction	6-51
Electronically controlled suspension with road preview	6-52
System malfunction	6-53
Limitations of the system	6-53
Electronic limited slip differential	6-54
Drive mode selection	6-54
Warning messages	6-54
Drive mode integrated control system	6-55
Drive mode	6-55
Drive modes characteristic	6-57
Boost Mode	6-58
Functional description and operating conditions	6-58
DRIFT mode	6-58
To activate DRIFT mode	6-58
DRIFT mode disabled	6-59
Active noise control-road	6-59
System malfunction	6-59
Special driving conditions	6-60
Hazardous driving conditions	6-60
Rocking the vehicle	6-60
Smooth cornering	6-61
Driving at night	6-61
Driving in the rain	6-61
Driving in flooded areas	6-62
Highway driving	6-62
Reducing the risk of a rollover	6-63
Winter driving	6-64
Snow or icy conditions	6-64
Winter precautions	6-67
Trailer towing	6-68
If you do decide to pull a trailer (for australia)	6-69
Trailer towing equipment	6-70
Driving with a trailer	6-71
Maintenance when towing a trailer	6-74
Vehicle weight	6-75
Overloading	6-75

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering the vehicle

- Be sure all windows, outside mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed.
- Remove frost, snow, or ice.
- Visually check the tyres for uneven wear and damage.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to reverse.

Before starting

- Make sure the bonnet, the tailgate, and the doors are securely closed and locked.
- Adjust the position of the seat and steering wheel.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Verify all the lights work.
- Fasten your seat belt. Check that all passengers have fastened their seat belts.
- Check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel and the messages on the cluster display when the vehicle is in the ON position.
- Check that any items you are carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.



WARNING

To reduce the risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**, take the following precautions:

- **ALWAYS** wear your seat belt. All passengers must be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to "Seat belts" section in chapter 3.
- Always drive defensively. Assume other drivers or pedestrians may be careless and make mistakes.
- Stay focused on the task of driving. Driver distraction can cause accidents.
- Leave plenty of space between you and the vehicle in front of you.



WARNING

NEVER drink or take drugs and drive.

Drinking or taking drugs and driving is dangerous and may result in an accident and **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**.

Drunk driving is a significant contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment. Just one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies and your reaction time gets worse with each additional drink.

Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous as or more dangerous than driving under the influence of alcohol.

You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive. If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not travel with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a taxi.

START/STOP BUTTON



Whenever the front door is opened, the Start/Stop button will illuminate and will go off for a few seconds after the door is closed.



WARNING

To turn the vehicle off in an emergency: Press and hold the Start/Stop button for more than two seconds OR Rapidly press and release the Start/Stop button three times (within three seconds).

If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the vehicle without pressing the brake pedal by pressing the Start/Stop button with the gear in the N (Neutral) position.



WARNING

- **NEVER** press the Start/Stop button whilst the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency. This will result in the vehicle turning off and loss of power assist to the steering and brake systems. This may lead to loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.
- Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the gear is in the P (Park) position, set the parking brake, press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position, and take the Smart Key with you. Unexpected vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not followed.
- **NEVER** reach through the steering wheel for the Start/Stop button or any other control whilst the vehicle is in motion. The presence of your hand or arm in this area may cause a loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Start/Stop button positions

Button Position	Action	Notes
OFF	To turn off the vehicle, press the Start/Stop button with the vehicle shifted to P (Park). If the Start/Stop button is pressed with the vehicle shifted to D (Drive), R (Reverse) or N (Neutral), the gear automatically shifts to P (Park).	
ACC	Press the Start/Stop button when the button is in the OFF position without pressing the brake pedal. Some of the electrical accessories are usable.	If you leave the Start/Stop button in the ACC position for more than one hour, the battery power will turn off automatically to prevent the battery from discharging.
ON	Press the Start/Stop button whilst it is in the ACC position without pressing the brake pedal. The warning lights can be checked before the vehicle is started.	Do not leave the Start/Stop button in the ON position when the vehicle is not running to prevent the battery from discharging.
START	To start the vehicle, press the brake pedal and press the Start/ Stop button with the gear shifted to the P (Park) position.	If you press the Start/Stop button without pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle does not start and the Start/ Stop button changes as follows: OFF → ACC → ON → OFF or ACC

* To prevent vehicle battery discharge, the Start/Stop button changes to the OFF position when the Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position with the gear in P (Park) for a certain period of time. When the function operates, the tail lamps will turn off. To use the tail lamps again, turn the headlamps switch located on the steering column to the OFF and ON position again.

Starting the vehicle



WARNING

- Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes, such as high heels, ski boots, sandals, thongs, etc., may interfere with your ability to use the brake and accelerator pedals.
- Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal pressed.
The vehicle can move which can lead to an accident.
- People with medical devices such as implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should not carry the smart key near the heart. The smart key system may affect the operation of such implanted medical devices.
Failure to do so may result in interference with the medical device, which could result in serious injury.



Information

- The vehicle will start by pressing the Start/Stop button, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.
- If the smart key is in the vehicle, but it is far away from the driver, the vehicle may not start.
- When the Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. When the smart key is not in the vehicle, the () indicator will blink and the warning 'Key not in vehicle' will be displayed. When all doors are closed, the chime will also sound for a few seconds. Keep the smart key in the vehicle when in the ACC position or if the vehicle is in the ready (READY) mode.

Starting the vehicle

1. Always carry the smart key with you.
2. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
3. Make sure the gear is in P (Park).
4. Press the brake pedal.
5. Press the Start/Stop button. If the vehicle starts, the (READY) indicator will come on.



Information

- Always start the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal. Do not press the accelerator whilst starting the vehicle. Do not race the motor whilst warming it up.
- If ambient temperature is low, the () indicator may remain illuminated longer than the normal amount of time.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- If the (READY) indicator turns off whilst you are in motion, do not attempt to shift the gear to the P (Park) position.
If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the gear in N (Neutral) whilst the vehicle is still moving and press the Start/Stop button in an attempt to restart the vehicle.
- Do not push or tow your vehicle to start it.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

Do not press the Start/Stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.

When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you cannot start the vehicle in the normal way. Replace the fuse with a new one. If you are not able to replace the fuse, you can start the vehicle by pressing and holding the Start/Stop button for 10 seconds with the Start/Stop button in the ACC position.

Pressing the brake pedal many times whilst (READY) indicator light is off will increase the possibility of discharging the 12V battery.

For your safety always press the brake pedal before starting the vehicle.

**CAUTION**

- Because the vehicle doesn't make the vehicle sound, pay attention to the surrounding environment and drive carefully.
- After parking or waiting for a traffic light, please check around(children, obstacle, etc.) before departure.
- When reversing, check directly behind you before driving. Pedestrians may not be able to hear the sound made by the vehicle.

Emergency starting

If the smart key battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the vehicle by pressing the Start/Stop button with the smart key in the direction of the picture above.

Turning off the vehicle

1. Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal fully.
2. Shift to P (Park).
3. Press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position and apply the parking brake.
4. Make sure the (READY) indicator light is off in the instrument cluster.

**CAUTION**

If the (READY) indicator light on the instrument cluster is still on, the vehicle is not turned off and can move when the gear is in any position except P (Park).

Remote start



You can start the vehicle using the Remote Start button of the smart key.

To start the vehicle remotely:

1. Press the door lock button within 10 m from the vehicle.
 2. To turn off the remote start function, press the remote start (⌚) button once.
- The remote start (⌚) button may not operate if the smart key is not within 10 m.
 - The vehicle will not remotely start if the bonnet or tailgate is open.
 - The vehicle must be in P (Park) for the remote start function to start.
 - The vehicle displays “Smart Key must be present to keep the vehicle running” if you get on the vehicle without a registered smart key.
 - The vehicle turns off if you do not get in the vehicle within 10 minutes after remotely starting the vehicle.

REDUCTION GEAR



[A]: Rotary shifter(Rotary gear shift dial),

[B] : P button,

[C] : P release cap

Reduction gear operation

Crystal sphere is a shift lever that can be shifted to shift dial mode only whilst the **(READY)** indicator light is on in the instrument cluster. If the vehicle is not in a drivable state, maintain the crystal sphere. Press the brake pedal whenever rotating the shift dial to change gear or shifting into P (Park).



WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- **ALWAYS** check the area surrounding your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).
- Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the vehicle is shifted to the P (Park) position brake, then press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.

Rotate the shift dial manually in case of emergency



If the drivable indicator (**READY**) is on and it cannot rotate normally in 'shift dial mode', try restarting the vehicle by pressing the start button. If the same phenomenon repeats after restarting, pull the upper surface of the crystal sphere strongly toward the rear of the vehicle with your palm and rotate it until the shift dial is fully visible. At this time, you may hear a normal 'click' sound, which releases the restraint of the instrument.



CAUTION

- The manual mode switching function must be used only in an emergency. Use under normal circumstances may cause malfunction.
- When switching to manual mode, be sure to pull towards the rear of the vehicle. Forcibly pushing in the forward direction may damage the part.
- If normal mode conversion is continuously impossible, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer for inspection and maintenance.

Rotary shifter/ Rotary gear shift dial

P (Park)

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).



To shift the gear to P (Park), press the P button whilst pressing the brake pedal.

If you turn the vehicle off in R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), the gear will automatically shift to P (Park).

Automatic gear shift to P (Park)

The gear is shifted to P (Park) automatically for safety reasons under the following conditions:

- When the vehicle is turned off with the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or N (Neutral).
- When the driver's door is open with the vehicle running, the gear in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or N (Neutral), and the vehicle at a standstill.
- When the driver's door is open with the gear in N (Neutral) and the vehicle is off.

In situations that require the gear be in P (Park), always check if the gear is shifted to P (Park) by checking the instrument cluster.



WARNING

- **Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.**
- **After the vehicle has stopped, always make sure the vehicle is in P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn the vehicle off.**
- **When parking on an incline, shift the gear to P (Park) and apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill.**

R (Reverse)

Use this position to drive the vehicle rearward.



To shift the gear to R (Rear), rotate the rotary gear shift dial to R (Reverse) whilst pressing the brake pedal.

When the vehicle is stopped in the R (Reverse) position, if you open the driver's door, the gear will automatically shift to P (Park).

However, if the vehicle is in motion, the gear may not automatically shift to P (Park) to prevent reduction gear damage.

The direction of the rotary gear shift dial is the same as that of the wheel.

NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into or out of R (Reverse); you may damage the reduction gear if you shift into R (Reverse) whilst the vehicle is in motion.

N (Neutral)



To shift the gear to N (Neutral), rotate the shift dial clockwise from R (Reverse) or anti-clockwise from D (Drive) whilst pressing the brake pedal.

Always press the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

If you turn the vehicle off in N (Neutral), the gear will automatically shift to P (Park).

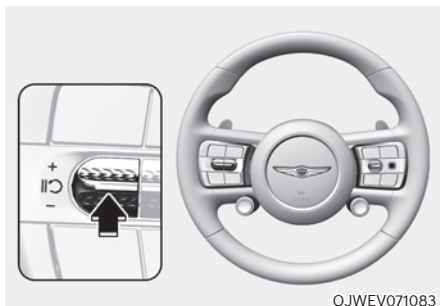
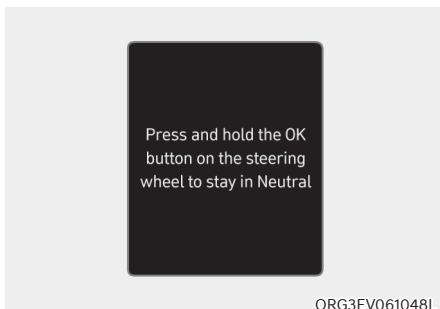
However, if you need to stay in N (Neutral) with the vehicle off, refer to "To stay in N (Neutral) when vehicle is OFF" in the following page.



CAUTION

The vehicle can be started with the gear in N (Neutral), but for you safety, we recommend that you start the vehicle with the gear in P (Park).

To stay in N (Neutral) when vehicle is OFF



If you want to stay in N (Neutral) after the vehicle is OFF (in the ACC state), do the following:

1. Turn off Auto Hold and release Electronic Parking Brake when the vehicle is running.
2. Rotate the shift dial to N (neutral) whilst pressing the brake pedal.
3. When you take your foot off the brake pedal, the message 'Press and hold the OK Button on the steering Wheel to stay in Neutral' will appear on the cluster display.

4. Press and hold the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second.
5. When the message 'Vehicle will stay in (N). Change gear to cancel' (or 'N will stay engaged when the vehicle is Off') appears on the cluster display, press the Start/Stop button whilst pressing the brake pedal.

However, if you open the driver's door, the gear will automatically shift to P (Park) and the Start/Stop button will change to the OFF position.

NOTICE

With the gear in N (Neutral) the Start/Stop button will be in the ACC position. In the ACC position, the doors cannot be locked. The battery may discharge if left in the ACC position for a long time.

D (Drive)

This is the normal driving position.

It automatically activates the regenerative braking system according to the road conditions.



To shift the gear to D (Drive), rotate the rotary gear shift dial to D (Drive) whilst pressing the brake pedal.

When the vehicle is stopped in the D (Drive) position, if you open the driver's door, the gear will automatically shift to P (Park).

However, if the vehicle is in motion, the gear may not automatically shift to P (Park) to prevent reduction gear damage.

NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).



CAUTION

When you start after stopping on a steep incline, even if the gear is in D (Drive), if you do not press the accelerator or brake pedal, the vehicle may roll rearwards, which can cause an accident.

When the battery is discharged

You cannot shift gears, when the battery is discharged.

In emergencies, do the following to shift the gear to N (Neutral) on a level ground.

1. Connect the battery cables from another vehicle or from a another battery to the jump-starting terminals inside the vehicle compartment.

For more details, refer to "Jump starting (12 V battery)" section in chapter 8.

2. Release the Electronic Parking Brake with the Start/Stop button in the ON position.



3. Remove the cap-cover (1) and press the button (2) whilst pressing the brake pedal.

Shift-lock system

For your safety, your vehicle has a shiftlock system which prevents shifting the gear from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive) unless the brake pedal is pressed.

To shift from P (Park) or N (Neutral) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive), from R (Reverse) into D (Drive) or from D (Drive) into R (Reverse) :

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Rotary the dial to the R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

Information

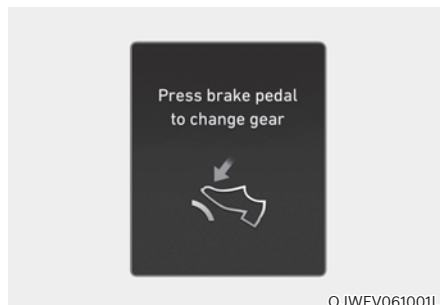
For your safety, you cannot shift the gear whilst the charging cable is connected.

Parking

Always come to a complete stop and continue to press the brake pedal. Shift the gear to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the Key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Cluster display messages

Press brake pedal to change gear



This message is displayed when the brake pedal is not pressed whilst shifting the gear.

Press the brake pedal and then shift the gear.

Shift to P after stopping



This message is displayed when the gear is shifted to P (Park) whilst the vehicle is moving.

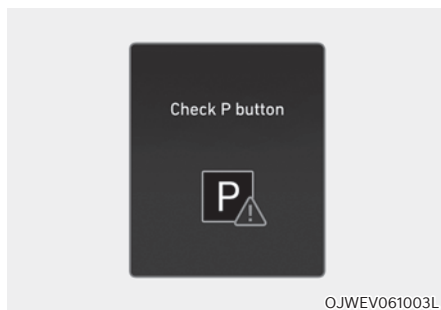
Stop the vehicle before shifting to P (Park).

Shifter system malfunction



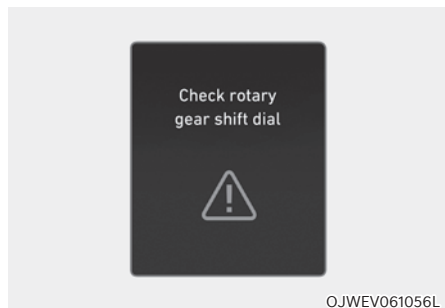
This message is displayed when the shifting system does not properly operate in the P (Park) position. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Check P button



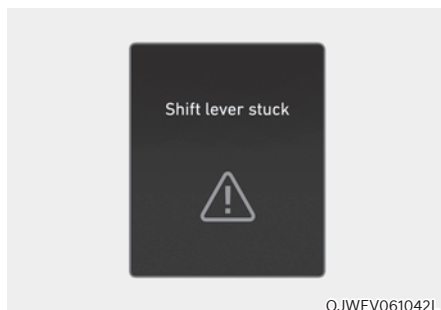
This message is displayed when there is a problem with the P button. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Check rotary gear shift dial



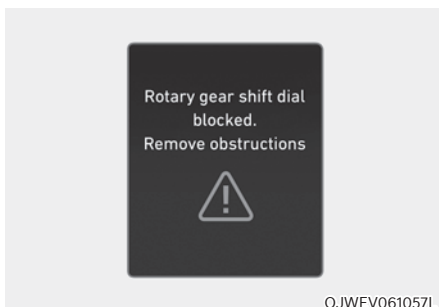
This message is displayed when there is a malfunction with the rotary gear shift dial. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Shift lever stuck



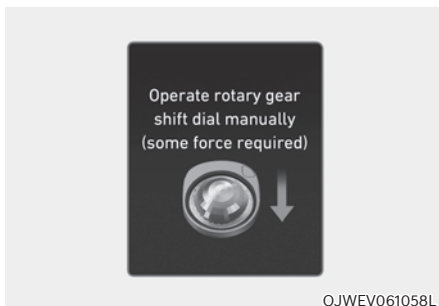
This message is displayed when the rotary gear shift dial does not return back to its normal position after rotating it. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Rotary gear shift dial blocked. Remove obstructions



This message is displayed when motion is not possible due to obstacles around the shift dial. We recommend that you clean any obstruction from around the shift dial.

Operate rotary gear shift dial manually



This message is displayed when the driver tries to manually rotate the shift dial in case of a malfunction of the shift dial. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Good driving practices

- Never shift the gear from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal pressed.
- Never shift the gear into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.
Be sure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Do not shift the gear to N (Neutral) when driving. If the gear is shifted to N (Neutral) whilst driving. Doing so may increase the risk of an accident.
Also, shifting the gear back to D (Drive) whilst the vehicle is moving may severely damage the reduction gear.
- When driving uphill or downhill, always shift to D (Drive) for driving forward or shift to R (Reverse) for driving rearwards, and check the gear position indicated on the instrument cluster or the rotary gear shift dial before driving. Driving in the opposite direction of the selected gear, can lead to a dangerous situation by shutting off the vehicle and affecting the braking performance.
- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but consistent pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.
- Always apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle. Do not depend on placing the shift gear in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.

- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly pressing and releasing the accelerator.



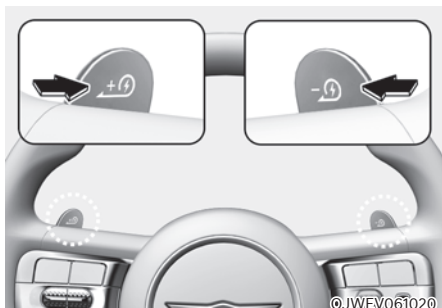
WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- **ALWAYS wear your seat belt.** In a collision, an unrestrained occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly restrained occupant.
- **Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.**
- **Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.**
- **The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.**
- **Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.**
- **In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.**
- **Genesis recommends that you follow all posted speed limits.**

REGENERATIVE BRAKING SYSTEM

Regenerative braking (Paddle shifter)



The paddle shifter is used to adjust the regenerative braking level from 0 to 3 during decelerating or braking.

- Left side (+B): Increases regenerative braking and deceleration.
- Right side (-B): Decreases regenerative braking and deceleration.
- Pull and hold the left side paddle shifter for more than 0.5 seconds and One pedal driving function is operated, increasing the regenerative braking. In this case, stopping the vehicle is possible by continuing to pull on the paddle shifter.

Refer to the following pages on "One pedal driving".

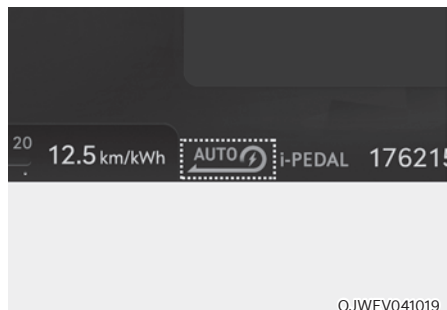
- Pull and hold the right side paddle shifter for over 1 second to turn on and off the automatic change of the regenerative braking.

Refer to the following pages on "Smart recuperation system".

i Information

The paddle shifter does not operate when:

- The [+B] and [-B] paddle shifters are pulled at the same time.
- The vehicle is decelerating by pressing the brake pedal.
- Smart Cruise Control is activated.
- If level 0 is selected for the regenerative braking system, the brake disc cleaning function is operated. Whilst operating to clean the brake disc, the driving distance and the regenerative braking performance can be reduced. After finishing, the regenerative braking performance will be restored. The brake disc cleaning function operates when level 0 is re-selected after adjusting the regenerative braking level.



The selected regenerative braking level is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Initial setting of the regenerative braking level and adjustable range vary according to the selected Drive mode.

Drive mode	Adjustable Range
SNOW	0 to 1
ECO	0 to 3
COMFORT	0 to 3
SPORT	0 to 3

For more details, refer to "Drive mode integrated control system" in this chapter.

One pedal driving

The driver can stop the vehicle by pulling the left side paddle shifter .

To operate:

- Pull and hold the left side paddle shifter whilst coasting.
- When the vehicle speed is above 3 km/h, release the paddle shifter to return to the preset regenerative braking stage.
- When the vehicle speed is below 3 km/h, the function maintains control to stop the vehicle even though the paddle shifter is released.
- Whilst the One pedal driving is activated, the driver can control the vehicle stopping position using the accelerator pedal.

Automatic engagement of EPB

After the vehicle is stopped by the One Pedal Driving function, EPB is automatically engaged when any of these conditions occur:

- The driver's seatbelt is unfastened and the driver's door is open.
- The gear is shifted into N (Neutral)
- The bonnet is open.
- The tailgate is open.
- 5 minutes have passed since the vehicle has stopped.
- The system operation is limited due to other reasons.



WARNING

- **Stopping the vehicle may not be possible according to the vehicle and road conditions. Pay attention to the road condition ahead and apply the brake if necessary.**
- **Please refrain to use the one pedal driving function when road conditions are poor, such as when wet, icy or covered with snow.**



CAUTION

When the vehicle is stopped or parked by One Pedal Driving on the steep hills, be sure to also press the brake pedal.

i-Pedal

i-Pedal is controlled by the accelerator pedal. i-Pedal provides vehicle speed control (acceleration/deceleration, stopping) without manually controlling the paddle shifter.

To operate:

- Pull the left side paddle shifter to level 3 regenerative braking system.
- The vehicle is stopped by pulling the left shift lever when the vehicle speed is less than 3 km/h, the vehicle is stopped even if the left paddle shift lever is released.
- When you press the accelerator pedal at the same time during one-pedal driving by pulling the left paddle shift lever, it cannot adjust the vehicle's speed and stop position.



CAUTION

When the vehicle is stopped or parked by i-Pedal on steep hills, be sure to also press the brake pedal.

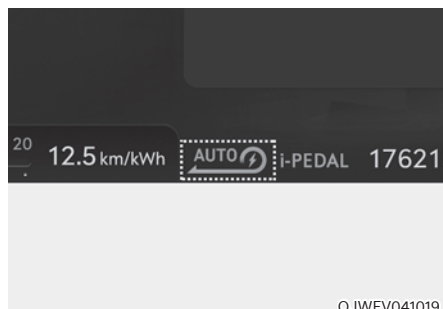
SMART RECUPERATION SYSTEM

The Smart Recuperation System controls the regenerative braking automatically according to the road gradient and driving style of the vehicle in front. The system minimises the unnecessary operation of the brake and acceleration pedal, improving the electric energy efficiency and assisting the driver.

Smart recuperation system setting

Pull and hold the right side paddle shifter for over 1 second to turn on and off the automatic change of the regenerative braking.

To activate smart recuperation system



OJWEV041019

If you pull and hold the right side paddle shifter for 1 second or more, Smart Recuperation System is On. When Smart Recuperation System is On, 'AUTO' for the regenerative braking level is displayed on the instrument cluster.

- The road gradient changes
- Distance from the vehicle ahead reduces or increases
- Speed of the vehicle ahead reduces or increases

Information

The regenerative braking amount adjustment according to the road slope is reflected only when the paddle level 0 has been set.

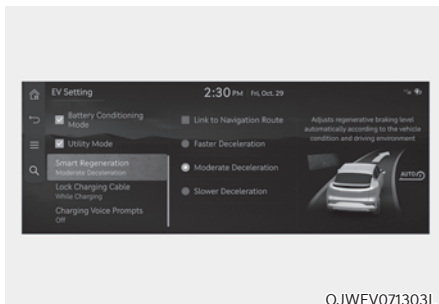


WARNING

- When using the Smart Recuperation Braking system, you can use one-pedal driving (stopping the vehicle by pulling the left paddle shifter).
- i-Pedal system stops when you are using the Smart Recuperation Braking system. Use i-Pedal after turning off the Smart Recuperation Braking system.



Information



OJWEV071303L

The regenerative braking level can be adjusted based on the driver's deceleration style (Faster/Normal/Slower Deceleration)

To adjust the level, select 'Setup-EV-Smart Regeneration-Smart Regeneration Deceleration Intensity' in the infotainment system.



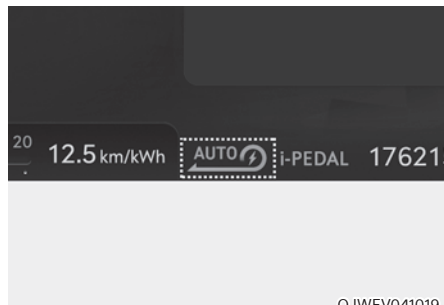
WARNING

When vehicle speed is under 10 km/h, the Smart Recuperation System is temporarily cancelled. The driver must adjust the vehicle speed by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions.

Smart Recuperation System relies on front view radar in the vehicle. Foreign material on the front view radar may cause the malfunction of Smart Recuperation System. Be sure to keep the front view camera clean to maintain its functionality.

The Smart Recuperation System will not operate when Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warning light on the instrument cluster. The driver must adjust the vehicle speed by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions.

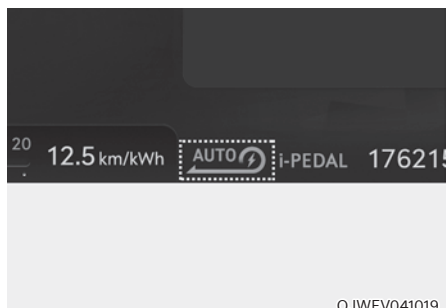
Ready to operate



OJWEV041019

Regenerative braking level is displayed on instrument cluster.

How to operate



Pulling the paddle-shift () for 1 or more seconds, the smart recuperation system will operate. The indicator of the regenerative braking will be changed to 'AUTO' from the level indicator.



WARNING

The Smart Recuperation System which automatically controls the regenerative braking level when coasting is only a supplemental system for the driver's convenience. The system cannot completely stop the vehicle nor avoid all collisions. The brake control may be insufficient depending on the speed of the vehicle in front and when the vehicle in front suddenly stops, a vehicle cuts in suddenly or when there is a steep slope. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.

Smart recuperation system will be temporarily cancelled when:

- Cancelled manually
Pulling and holding the right side paddle shifter for more than 1 second. The Smart Recuperation System turns off temporarily and "AUTO" will be replaced with regenerative braking level indicator.
- Cancelled automatically
 - The vehicle is shifted to N (Neutral), R (Reverse) or P (Park).
 - Smart Cruise Control is in activation.
 - The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS is operating.



WARNING

When the Smart Recuperation System is cancelled automatically, adjust the vehicle speed directly by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions.

To resume Smart Recuperation System

To re-activate the Smart Recuperation System whilst driving, pull and hold the right side paddle shifter for more than 1 second again. Then, AUTO for the regenerative braking level will appear on the instrument cluster.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance recognition sensor (front radar)



[1] : Front radar

For the location of the sensor, refer to the image above.

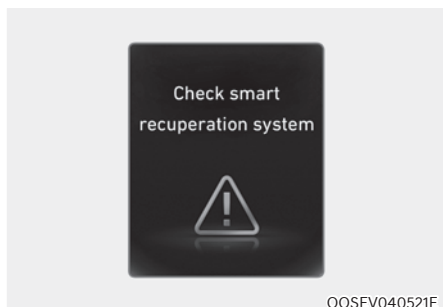
In order for the Smart Recuperation System to operate properly, always make sure the radar sensor cover is clean and free of dirt, snow, and debris. Dirt, snow, or foreign material on the lens may adversely affect the sensing performance of the sensor. In this case, the system operation may stop temporarily and not operate normally.



CAUTION

- Do not apply licence plate frame or foreign objects such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard near the radar sensor. Doing so may adversely affect the sensing performance of the radar.
- Always keep the radar sensor and lens cover clean and free of dirt and debris.
- Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurised water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.
- Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the radar sensor or sensor cover. If the sensor is forcibly moved out of proper alignment, the Smart Recuperation System may not operate correctly. In this case, a warning message may not be displayed. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- If the front bumper becomes damaged in the area around the radar sensor, the Smart Recuperation System may not operate properly. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Use only genuine Genesis parts or the equivalent specified for your vehicle to repair or replace a damaged sensor or sensor cover. Do not apply paint to the sensor cover.

System malfunction



Check Smart Regeneration System

The message will appear when the system is not functioning normally. The system will be cancelled and the word 'AUTO' on the instrument cluster will disappear and instead display regenerative braking level. Check for foreign substances on the front radar. Remove any dirt, snow, or foreign material that could interfere with the radar sensors. If the system still does not operate normally, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised Genesis repairer and have the system checked.

Limitations of the system

The Smart Recuperation System may not operate properly in certain situations when the driving conditions are beyond the performance of the front radar sensor.

Driver's attention is required in such cases when the system does not react properly or operate unintentionally.

Driving on a bend



When coasting on a bend, the system may not detect the vehicle in your lane and the regenerative braking level will reduce automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is accelerating.

Also, if the system suddenly recognises the vehicle in front, the regenerative braking level will increase automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is decelerating.

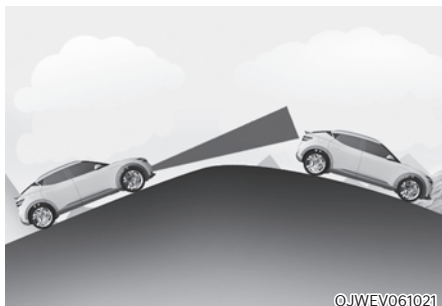
The driver must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane.

Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the Smart Recuperation System.

Driving on an inclined road

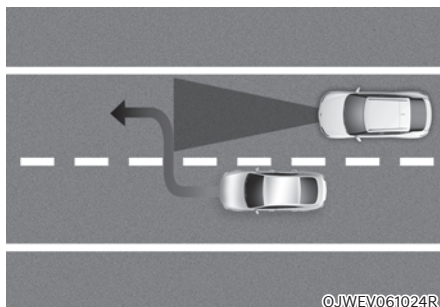


When coasting on an uphill or downhill, the system may not detect the vehicle in your lane and the regenerative braking level will reduce automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is accelerating.

Also, if the system suddenly recognises the vehicle in front, the regenerative braking level will increase automatically, making you feel that the vehicle is decelerating.

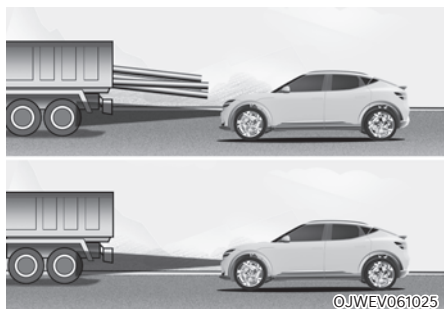
The driver must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

Lane changing



- A vehicle which moves into your lane from an adjacent lane cannot be recognised by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range.
- The radar may not detect immediately when a vehicle cuts in suddenly. Always pay attention to the traffic, road and driving conditions.

Vehicle recognition



Some vehicles in your lane cannot be recognised by the sensor:

- Narrow vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Stopped vehicles (When the vehicle ahead drives away, the system may not detect a stopped vehicle.)
- Vehicles with small rear profile such as trailers with no loads

A vehicle ahead cannot be recognised correctly by the sensor if any of following occurs:

- When the vehicle is pointing upwards due to overloading in the luggage compartment.
- Whilst the steering wheel is operating.
- When driving to one side of the lane.
- When driving on narrow lanes or on curves.

Apply the brake or accelerator pedal if necessary.



WARNING

When using the Smart Recuperation System take the following precautions:

- If an emergency stop is necessary, you must apply the brakes.
- Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the vehicle to vehicle distance is too close during a high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.
- Always maintain sufficient braking distance and decelerate your vehicle by applying the brakes if necessary.
- The Smart Recuperation System cannot recognise a stopped vehicle, pedestrians or an oncoming vehicle. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
- Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane changes may cause a delay in the system's reaction or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
- The Smart Recuperation System may not recognise complex driving situations so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.

NOTICE

The Smart Recuperation System may not operate temporarily due to:

- Electrical interference
- Modifying the suspension
- Differences of tyre abrasion or tyre pressure
- Installing different type of tyres

BRAKING SYSTEM

Power-assist brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

In the event of a vehicle power failure, the power assist for the brakes will not work. You can still stop your vehicle, but it will require greater force and increased pedal travel than normal. The stopping distance, however, will be longer than with power brakes.

Information

- When the brake pedal is pressed under certain driving conditions or weather conditions, you may temporarily hear a noise. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.
- Whilst driving on a road with deicing chemicals, brake noise or abnormal tyre wear may occur due to deicing chemicals. In a safe traffic condition, additionally apply the brakes to remove deicing chemicals on the brake discs and pads.

WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create a high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances. So increase the regeneration braking level with the left paddle shift lever to decrease the speed.
- When descending down a long or steep hill, use the paddle shifter to increase the regeneration braking level in order to decrease your speed without using the brake pedal excessively. Applying the brakes continuously will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.

- Wet brakes can impair the vehicle's ability to decelerate safely. Wet brakes also cause noise and increase the braking distance required to stop. If driving with wet brakes, either select level 0 on the regenerative braking system and press the brake pedal 10 times or lightly press on the brake pedal whilst maintaining distance to other vehicles, in order to dry the braking system. Following this procedure reduces the total driving distance (electric energy) available by restraining the regenerative braking system, this is not a malfunction. Inspect the braking system after using a carwash or driving in wet roads.

NOTICE

- Do not continue pressing the brake pedal if the (READY) indicator is OFF. The battery may be discharged.
- Noise and vibration generated during braking is normal.
- Under normal operation, electric brake pump noise and motor vibration may occur temporarily in below cases.
 - When the pedal is pressed suddenly.
 - When the pedal is repeatedly pressed in short intervals.
 - When the ABS function is activated whilst braking.

Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high pitched warning sound from your front or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you press the brake pedal.

NOTICE

To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.



Information

Always replace brake pads as complete front or rear axle sets.



WARNING

Frequent braking may deform components and wear the disc brake causing vibrations when braking. Observe the speed limit to prevent brake damage from excessive braking.

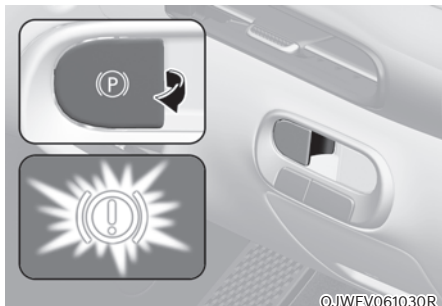
Brake wear, noise, vibration from excessive braking or deformation of the brakes caused by repeatedly braking at high speed, racing on tracks, etc., can be excluded from warranty coverage.

High performance brake

For vehicles equipped with the High Performance Brake (large diameter monoblock brakes with enhanced braking performance), noise such as a squeal, squeak or groan is generated whilst braking. This is normal and the friction may create circle patterns on the disc surface. This is also a normal condition which does not affect braking performance.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Applying the parking brake



To apply EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light comes on.

EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) may be automatically applied when:

- Requested by other systems
- The driver turns the vehicle off whilst Auto Hold is operating.

Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal whilst driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only whilst you are holding the EPB switch. However, braking distance will be longer than normal.



WARNING

To reduce the risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**, do not operate the EPB whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the brake system and lead to an accident.



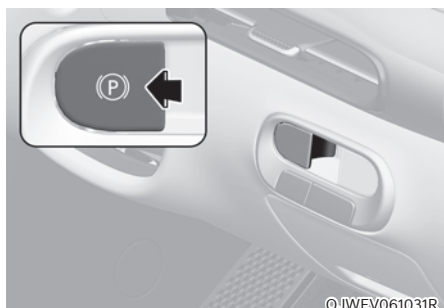
Information

During emergency braking, the Parking Brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

NOTICE

If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Releasing the parking brake



To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

1. Press the Start/Stop button to the ON or START position.
2. Press the EPB switch whilst pressing the brake pedal.

Make sure the Parking Brake warning light goes off.

To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) automatically:

- Gear in P (Park)
With the vehicle running press the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).
- Gear in N (Neutral)
With the vehicle running press the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

- Satisfy the following conditions
 1. Ensure seat belts are fastened and the doors, bonnet and tailgate are closed.
 2. With the vehicle running, press the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Reverse), D (Drive).
 3. Press the accelerator pedal.
Make sure the Parking Brake warning light goes off.

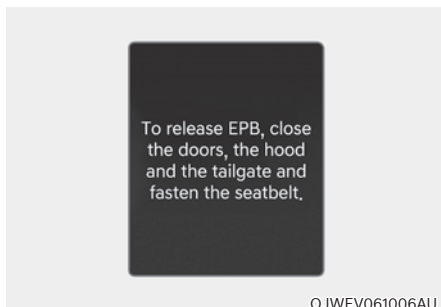
Information

- **For your safety, you can engage EPB even though the Vehicle Stop/Start button is in the OFF position (only if battery power is available), but you cannot release it.**
- **For your safety, press the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when reversing the vehicle.**

NOTICE

- **If the Parking Brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Do not drive your vehicle with EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.**

Warning messages



To release EPB, fasten seatbelt and close door, bonnet and tailgate

- If you try to drive with EPB applied, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the bonnet or tailgate is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If this situation occurs, press the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.



WARNING

- Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to press the brake pedal.

Shift the gear into P (Park), pull the EPB switch, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the Key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Vehicles not fully engaged in P (Park) with the parking brake set are at risk for moving inadvertently and causing injury to yourself or others.

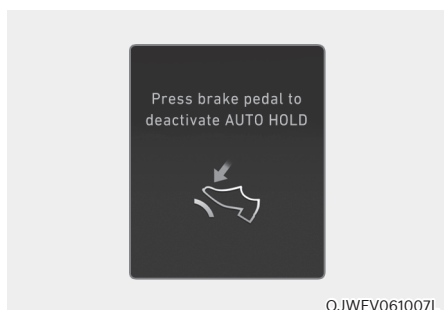
- **NEVER** allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the EPB switch. If EPB is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.
- Only release EPB when you are seated inside the vehicle with your foot firmly on the brake pedal.

NOTICE

- Do not apply the accelerator pedal whilst the parking brake is engaged. If you press the accelerator pedal with EPB engaged, a warning will sound and a message will appear. Damage to the parking brake may occur.
- Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the braking system and cause premature wear or damage to brake parts. Make sure EPB is released and the Parking Brake warning light is off before driving.

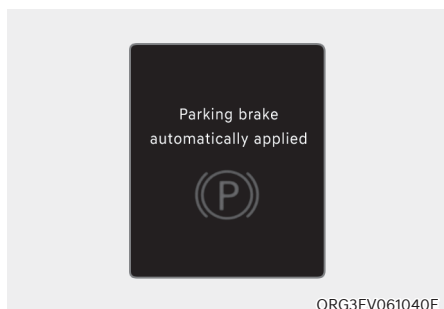
Information

- A clicking sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB. These conditions are normal and indicate that EPB is functioning properly.
- When leaving your keys with a parking attendant or assistant, make sure to inform them how to operate EPB.



Press brake pedal to deactivate AUTO HOLD

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.



Parking brake automatically applied

When EPB is applied whilst Auto Hold is activated, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

EPB malfunction

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) warning light illuminates if the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position and goes off after approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the EPB warning light remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The EPB warning light may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of EPB.

NOTICE

- If the EPB warning light is still on, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- If the Parking Brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, EPB may not be applied.
- If the Parking Brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, and then pull it up. Repeat this one more time. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Parking brake warning light

 Check the Parking Brake warning light by pressing the Vehicle Stop/Start button to the ON position.

This light will be illuminated when the parking brake is applied with the Vehicle Stop/Start button in the START or ON position.

Before driving, be sure the parking brake is released and the Parking Brake warning light is OFF.

If the Parking Brake warning light remains on after the parking brake is released whilst the motor is running, there may be a malfunction in the brake system. Immediate attention is necessary.

If at all possible, cease driving the vehicle immediately. If that is not possible, use extreme caution whilst operating the vehicle and only continue to drive the vehicle until you can reach a safe location.

When the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) does not release

If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer and have the vehicle loaded on a flatbed tow truck to have the system checked.

Auto Hold

Auto Hold maintains the vehicle in a standstill even though the brake pedal is not pressed after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by pressing the brake pedal.

Information

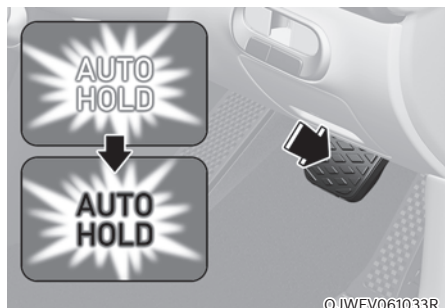
The Auto Hold On or Off setting is maintained when the vehicle is turned off. When the vehicle is restarted the last setting for Auto Hold is applied.

To apply:



OJWEV061032R

1. With the driver's door and bonnet closed, press the brake pedal and then press the AUTO HOLD switch. The white AUTO HOLD indicator will come on and the system will be in the standby position.



2. When you stop the vehicle completely by pressing the brake pedal, Auto Hold maintains the brake pressure to hold the vehicle stationary. The indicator changes from white to green.
3. The vehicle will remain stationary even if you release the brake pedal.
4. If EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

To release:

- If you press the accelerator pedal with the gear in D (Drive), R (Reverse) or Manual shift mode, the Auto Hold will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.



WARNING

When Auto Hold is automatically released by pressing the accelerator pedal, always take a look around your vehicle.

Slowly press the accelerator pedal for a smooth start.

To cancel:



1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
 2. Press the AUTO HOLD switch.
- The AUTO HOLD indicator will turn off.



WARNING

To prevent, unexpected and sudden vehicle movement, **ALWAYS** press your foot on the brake pedal to cancel the Auto Hold before you:

- Drive downhill.
- Drive the vehicle in R (Reverse).
- Park the vehicle.

Information

- The Auto Hold does not operate when:
 - The gear is in P (Park)
 - EPB is applied
- For your safety, the Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB when:
 - The driver's door is opened
 - The tailgate is opened
 - The bonnet is opened
 - The vehicle is at a standstill for more than 10 minutes
 - The vehicle is standing on a steep slope
 - The vehicle moves several times

In these cases, the Parking Brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, and a warning sound and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving off again, press the brake pedal, check the area surrounding near your vehicle and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch.

- Whilst operating Auto Hold, you may hear mechanical noise. However, this is normal operating noise.
- If the vehicle is restarted with the Auto Hold system in the standby position or operating, the Auto hold system will continue to operate in the standby position.

NOTICE

If the AUTO HOLD indicator changes to yellow, Auto Hold is not working properly. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

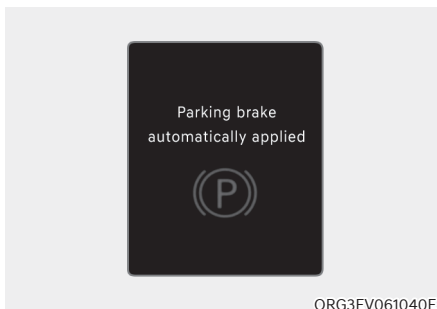
- Press the accelerator pedal slowly when you start the vehicle.
- For your safety, cancel Auto Hold when you drive downhill, reverse the vehicle or park the vehicle.

NOTICE

If there is a malfunction with the driver's door or bonnet open detection system, Auto Hold may not work properly.

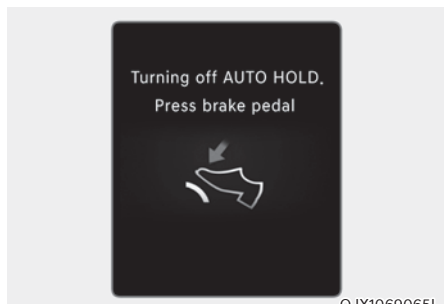
We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

Warning messages



Parking brake automatically applied

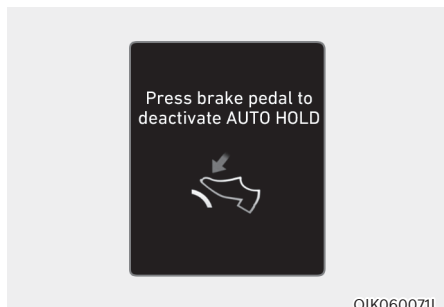
When EPB is applied whilst Auto Hold is activated, a warning will sound and a message will appear.



Turning off AUTO HOLD. Press brake pedal

When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

When this message is displayed, Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, press the brake pedal.



Press brake pedal to deactivate AUTO HOLD

If you did not apply the brake pedal when you release Auto Hold by pressing the AUTO HOLD switch, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)



WARNING

Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead of you. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The braking distance for vehicles equipped with ABS or ESC may be longer than for those without these systems in the following road conditions.

Drive your vehicle at reduced speeds during the following conditions:

- Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.
- On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.
- Tyre chains are installed on your vehicle.

The safety features of ABS or ESC equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself and others.

ABS is an electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid. ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time.

Using ABS

To obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from sudden changes in direction, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

The ABS ((ABS)) warning light will stay on for several seconds after the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

During that time, ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.



WARNING

If the ABS ((ABS)) warning light is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. Your power brakes will work normally. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, we recommend that you contact your authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

When you drive on a road having poor traction, such as an icy road, and apply your brakes continuously, ABS will be active continuously and the ABS ((ABS)) warning light may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and turn the vehicle off.

Restart the vehicle. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal.

If the light still remains on, you may have a problem with your ABS system. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

Information

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the ABS ((ABS)) warning light may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning. Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



Electronic Stability Control helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering manoeuvres.

ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle's brakes and intervenes in the electric vehicle control system to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always adjust your speed and driving to the road conditions.

WARNING

Never drive too fast for the road conditions when cornering. ESC will not prevent accidents.

Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres, and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can result in severe accidents.

ESC operation

ESC ON condition

When the Start/Stop button is in the ON position, ESC and the ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately three seconds. After both lights go off, ESC is enabled.

When operating



When ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks:

- When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.
- When ESC activates, the vehicle may not respond to the accelerator as it does under routine conditions.
- If Smart Cruise Control (SCC) was in use when ESC activates, Smart Cruise Control (SCC) automatically disengages. Smart Cruise Control (SCC) can be reengaged when the road conditions allow. **See “Smart Cruise Control (SCC)” section in chapter 7 (if equipped).**

ESC OFF condition



To cancel ESC operation:

- State 1

Press the ESC OFF button briefly. The ESC OFF indicator light and/or message 'Traction Control disabled' will illuminate. In this state, the traction control function of ESC (electric vehicle control management) is disabled, but the brake control function of ESC (braking management) still operates.

- State 2

Press and hold the ESC OFF button continuously for more than 3 seconds. The ESC OFF indicator light and/or message 'Traction & Stability Control disabled' illuminates. In this state, both the traction control function of ESC (electric vehicle control management) and the brake control function of ESC (braking management) are disabled.

If the Start/Stop button is pressed to the OFF position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the vehicle, ESC will automatically turn on again.

When ESC (electric vehicle control) is deactivated, the vehicle will lose the traction and stability if the vehicle is driven by abrupt steering wheel control. It is possible that the tyre may make contact with the connected parts of the tyre. We recommend that you do not turn off ESC whilst driving the vehicle for your safety.

Indicator lights

- ESC indicator light (blinks)



- ESC OFF indicator light (comes on)



When the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position, the ESC indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever ESC is operating.

If the ESC indicator light stays on, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the ESC system. When this warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when ESC is turned off.



WARNING

When ESC is blinking, this indicates ESC is active:

Drive slowly and NEVER attempt to accelerate. NEVER turn ESC off whilst the ESC indicator light is blinking or you may lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tyres of different sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. Before replacing tyres, make sure all four tyres and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized wheels and tyres installed.

ESC OFF usage

When Driving

The ESC OFF mode should only be used briefly to help free the vehicle if stuck in snow or mud, by temporarily stopping operation of ESC, to maintain wheel torque.

To turn ESC off whilst driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the reduction gear:

- Do not allow wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively whilst the ESC, ABS, and Parking Brake warning lights are displayed. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce motor power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively whilst these lights are displayed.
- When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, make sure ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated).

i Information

- Turning ESC off does not affect ABS or standard brake system operation.
- Select 0 step of the regenerative braking system and press the brake pedal around 10 times to efficiently apply brake disc cleaning.

Brake disc cleaning may decrease the driving distance by restraining the regenerative braking system. After brake disc cleaning, the regenerative braking system may be restored.

If the regenerative braking system is not restored after the brake disc cleaning, we recommend to inspect the vehicle by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)

Vehicle Stability Management is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. It helps the vehicle stay stable when accelerating or braking suddenly on wet, slippery and rough roads where traction over the four tyres can suddenly become uneven.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Vehicle Stability Management:

- **ALWAYS** check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. VSM is not a substitute for safe driving practices.
- **Never** drive too fast for the road conditions. VSM will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in bad weather, on slippery and uneven roads can result in severe accidents.

VSM operation

When operating

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may activate ESC, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your VSM is active.



Information

VSM does not operate when:

- Driving on a banked road such as gradient or incline.
- Driving in reverse.
- The ESC OFF indicator light is on.
- The MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering) warning light (⚠) is on or blinks.

VSM OFF condition

To cancel VSM operation, press the ESC OFF button. ESC OFF (OFF) indicator light will illuminate.

To turn on VSM, press the ESC OFF button again. The ESC OFF indicator light will go out.



WARNING

If the ESC (ESP) indicator light or MDPS (EPS) warning light stays illuminated or blinks, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the VSM system. When the warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tyres of different sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. Before replacing tyres, make sure all four tyres and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized tyres and wheels installed.

Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)

Hill-Start Assist Control helps prevent the vehicle from rolling rearwards when starting a vehicle from a stop on a hill. The system operates the brakes automatically for approximately 2 seconds (maximum of 5 seconds when the accelerator pedal is slightly pressed during HAC operation) and releases the brake after 2 seconds or when the accelerator pedal is pressed.



WARNING

Always be ready to press the accelerator pedal when starting off an incline. Hill-Start Assist Control activates only for approximately 2 seconds (maximum of 5 seconds when the accelerator pedal is slightly pressed during HAC operation).



Information

- Hill-Start Assist Control does not operate when the gear is shifted to P (Park) or N (Neutral).
- Hill-Start Assist Control activates even when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is off. However, it does not activate, when ESC does not operate normally.

Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)

Emergency Stop Signal alerts the driver behind by blinking the stop lights, whilst sharply and severely braking.

The system is activated when:

- The vehicle suddenly stops. (The deceleration power exceeds 7 m/s², and the driving speed exceeds 55 km/h.)
- ABS is activated and the driving speed exceeds 55 km/h.

The hazard warning flasher automatically turns ON after blinking the stop lights:

- When driving speed is under 40 km/h,
- When ABS is deactivated, and
- When the sudden braking situation is over.

The hazard warning flasher turns OFF:

- When the vehicle drives at a low speed for a certain period of time.
The driver can manually turn OFF the hazard warning flasher by pressing the button.



Information

Emergency Stop Signal will not activate, when the hazard warning flashers are already on.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

Multi-Collision Brake controls the brake automatically in the event of an accident where the air bags deploy to reduce the risk of additional accidents that may occur.

System operation

- From the time the air bag deploys. Multi-Collision Brake monitors the pressure intensity of the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a short period. The system operates when the following conditions are met:
 - Vehicle speed is under 180 km/h at the time of collision.
 - The brake pedal or accelerator pedal are lightly pressed.
- When the driver steps on the brake pedal over a certain level whilst Multi-Collision Brake is active, the braking power takes priority over automatic braking by Multi-Collision Brake system. However, if the driver takes their foot off the brake pedal, automatic braking by Multi-Collision Brake system will maintain automatic braking.

System off

Multi-Collision Brake is cancelled in the following situations:

- The accelerator pedal is pressed over a certain level.
- The vehicle stops.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or electronic devices has malfunctioned.
- In a situation the system cannot operate normally.
- Ten seconds have passed since the brake has been controlled automatically by Multi-Collision Brake system.



WARNING

- **Multi-Collision Brake decreases vehicle speed after a collision, but it does not prevent a second collision. You may drive away from the collision spot to avoid other dangerous situations by pressing the accelerator pedal.**
- **After the vehicle is stopped by Multi-Collision Brake, the system stops controlling the brakes. Depending on the situation, the driver should press the brake or the accelerator pedal to prevent further accidents.**

Good braking practices



WARNING

Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to press the brake pedal. Shift the gear to the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Vehicles parked with the parking brake not applied or not fully engaged may roll inadvertently and may cause injury to the driver and others. ALWAYS apply the parking brake before exiting the vehicle.

Be aware of wet brakes. The brakes may get wet if the vehicle is driven through standing water or if it is washed. Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call an authorised Genesis repairer for assistance.

DO NOT drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but constant pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear, and possibly even brake failure.

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe location.

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped to prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.

ALL WHEEL DRIVE (AWD) (IF EQUIPPED)

When All Wheel Drive (AWD) is activated, driving forces are distributed appropriately to front and rear wheels. It could improve driving performance by maximising the driving force of vehicles on severe road conditions such as steep hills, unpaved, slippery, etc.

Advantage of electronic AWD

1. Improvement of straight stability
2. Improvement of driving performance on curve
3. Secure stability on severe condition such as wet and sandy roads.
4. Improvement of energy efficiency from driving mode automatic control.



Information

AWD vehicles could change the engagement status of the motor according to the situation required. Auto changing the driving mode (2WD/4WD) helps improve energy efficiency and driving stability.



WARNING

To reduce the risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**:

- Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
- Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
- The risk of a rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
- Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.
- In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.

NOTICE

- Do not drive in water if the water level is higher than the bottom of the vehicle.
- Press the brake pedal several times as you move slowly until you feel normal braking condition is returned.
- Shorten your scheduled maintenance interval if you drive in off-road conditions such as sand, mud or water (see "Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions" section in chapter 9).
- Always wash your vehicle thoroughly after off road use, especially the bottom of the vehicle.
- Be sure to equip the vehicle with four tyres of the same size and type.
- Make sure that a full time AWD vehicle is towed by a flat bed tow truck.

For safe AWD operation

Before driving

- Make sure all passengers are wearing seat belts.
- Sit upright and closer to the steering wheel than usual. Adjust the steering wheel to a position comfortable for you to drive.

Driving on snow-covered or icy roads

- Start off slowly by applying the accelerator pedal gently.
- Use snow tyres or tyre chains.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent skids.
- It is difficult to start again if the vehicle stops on an uphill road. Keep your distance from other vehicles and drive slowly.



Information

- **When using Snow Tyres, mount them on all four wheels.**
- **When using tyre chains, install them on the rear tyres. However, driving speed must be below 30 km/h and minimise the driving distance. High-speed or long-term driving with tyre chains installed may malfunction or damage the AWD system.**

For more details on Snow Tyres and Tyre Chains, refer to "Winter driving" section later in this chapter.

Driving in sand or mud

- Maintain slow and constant speed.
- Use tyre chains driving in mud if necessary.
- Keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Reduce vehicle speed and always check the road condition.
- Avoid speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns to prevent getting stuck.

NOTICE

When the vehicle is stuck in snow, sand or mud, place a nonslip material under the drive wheels to provide traction OR slowly spin the wheels in forward and reverse directions which causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

Driving up or down hills

- Driving uphill
 - Before starting off, check if it is possible to drive uphill.
 - Drive as straight as possible.
- Driving downhill
 - Do not change gear whilst driving downhill. Select gear before driving downhill.
 - Drive straight as possible.



WARNING

Exercise extreme caution driving up or down steep hills. The vehicle may flip over depending on the gradient, terrain, water and mud conditions.

**WARNING**

Do not drive across the contour of steep hills. A slight change in the wheel angle can destabilize the vehicle, or a stable vehicle may lose stability if the vehicle stops its forward motion. Your vehicle may roll over and lead to a serious injury or death.

Driving through water

- Try to avoid driving in deep standing water.
- If you need to drive in water, stop your vehicle, set the vehicle in Multi Terrain mode and drive under 8 km/h.
- Do not change gear whilst driving in water.

**CAUTION**

Always drive slowly in water. If you drive too fast, water may get into the motor compartment, causing your vehicle to suddenly stop.

Additional driving conditions

- Become familiar with the off-road conditions before driving.
- Always pay attention when driving off-road and avoid dangerous areas.
- Drive slowly when driving in heavy wind.
- Reduce vehicle speed when cornering. The centre of gravity of AWD vehicles is higher than conventional 2WD vehicles, making them more likely to roll over when you rapidly turn corners.
- Always hold the steering wheel firmly when you are driving off-road.

**WARNING**

Do not grab the inside of the steering wheel when you are driving off-road. You may hurt your arm by a sudden steering manoeuvre or from steering wheel rebound due to an impact with objects on the ground. You could lose control of the steering wheel which may lead to serious injury or death.

Emergency precautions***Tyres***

When replacing tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the same size, type, tread patterns, brand and load-carrying capacity.

**WARNING**

Do not use tyres and wheels of different size and type from the one originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover causing serious injury.

 WARNING



Never start or run the vehicle whilst an AWD vehicle is raised on a jack. The vehicle can slip or roll off of a jack causing serious injury or death to you or those nearby.

Towing

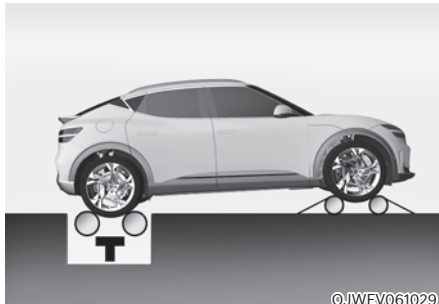
AWD vehicles must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. **For more details, refer to "Towing" section in chapter 8.**

Vehicle inspection

- If the vehicle needs to be operated on a vehicle lift do not attempt to stop any of the four wheels from turning. This could damage the AWD system.
- Never engage the parking brake whilst running the vehicle on a car lift. This may damage the AWD system.

Dynamometer testing

An AWD vehicle must be tested on a special four wheel chassis dynamometer.



[A] : Roll tester (Speedometer),

[B] : Temporary free roller

An AWD vehicle should not be tested on a 2WD roll tester. If a 2WD roll tester must be used, perform the following procedure:

1. Check the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.
2. Place the rear wheels on the roll tester for a speedometer test as shown in the image above.
3. Release the parking brake.
4. Place the front wheels on the temporary free roller as shown in the image above.

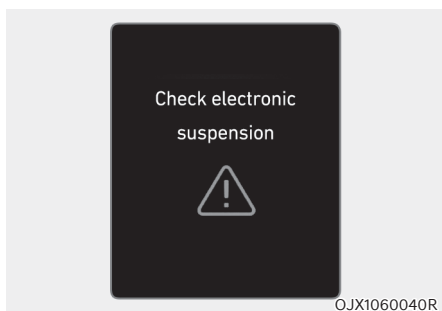
 WARNING

Keep away from the front of the vehicle whilst the vehicle is in gear on the dynamometer. The vehicle can jump forward and cause serious injury or death.

ELECTRONIC CONTROL SUSPENSION (IF EQUIPPED)

Electronic Control Suspension controls the vehicle suspension automatically using vehicle sensors to maximise driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, braking and acceleration.

System malfunction



Check Electronic Suspension

When Electronic Control Suspension is not working properly, this warning message will appear on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

ELECTRONICALLY CONTROLLED SUSPENSION WITH ROAD PREVIEW (IF EQUIPPED)

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview controls the vehicle suspension automatically using the front view camera and vehicle sensors to maximise driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, braking and acceleration.

Front view camera



[1] : Front view camera

The front view camera is a sensor that detects a section of the road in front of the vehicle. If the windscreen or the front view camera is covered with snow, rain or foreign material, the data collected by the camera is limited due to the degradation of the camera's performance. Always keep the front view camera clean.

NOTICE

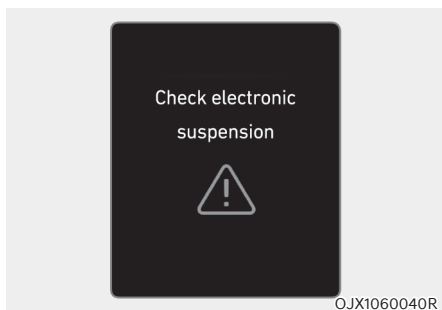
- **NEVER** install any accessories or stickers on the front windscreen, or tint the front windscreen.
- **NEVER** place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) over the instrument panel. Any light reflected may prevent the system from functioning properly.
- Pay extreme care to keep the camera dry.
- Never disassemble the camera assembly, or apply any impact on the camera assembly.

i Information

We recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer when:

- The windscreen glass is replaced.
- The front view camera or cover gets damaged or replaced.

System malfunction



Check Electronic Suspension

When Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview is not working properly, this warning message will appear on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

NOTICE

If the battery level is high or low, Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview may not work temporarily to protect the system. If this occurs, 'Check Electronic Suspension' warning message will appear.

Limitations of the system

Electronically Controlled Suspension with Road Preview is always operating when the vehicle is being driven and depending on the vehicle's movements the preview function starts to work when the front view camera detects road conditions such as speed bumps. Therefore, the preview function is limited when there is an extreme condition causes the front view camera not to work properly. In this case, the electronic control suspension function operates without the preview function in accordance with vehicle movement.

ELECTRONIC LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL (IF EQUIPPED)

Electronic Limited Slip Differential controls the differential functions of the wheels to help:

- Improve steering performance when circling at high speed.
- Improve launching performance.
- Prevent slipping on rainy or snowy roads due to dissimilar friction of the left and right wheels.

WARNING

Never run the wheels with one of wheels lifted on a jack. It is extremely dangerous for a vehicle equipped with Electronic Limited Slip Differential.

Drive mode selection

The characteristic of Electronic Limited Slip Differential varies according to which drive mode is selected by using the DRIVE MODE or DRIVE/TERRAIN switch.

Selected mode	Characteristic of e-LSD
ECO	NORMAL
COMFORT	NORMAL
SPORT	SPORT
SNOW	SNOW
MY DRIVE	NORMAL/SPORT

For more details, refer to "Drive mode integrated control system" section in this chapter.

Warning messages

Electronic Limited Slip Differential temporarily disabled due to overheating

Overheating of related parts will temporarily disable Electronic Limited Slip Differential. Wait until the vehicle cools down.

Limited-slip differential disabled. Tyre diameter mismatch / Tyre size mismatch. Limited-slip differential disabled. Check tyre sizes

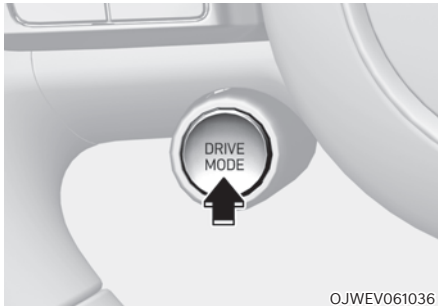
If your vehicle is equipped with different tyres (size, type, etc.), this message will appear. To use Electronic Limited Slip Differential, the vehicle should be equipped with 4 of the same size/type of tyres.

Check Limited Slip Differential

When Electronic Limited Slip Differential is not working properly, this warning message will appear on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

DRIVE MODE INTEGRATED CONTROL SYSTEM

Drive mode



Drive mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road conditions.

The mode changes whenever the driver pushes the DRIVE mode button.

COMFORT mode

COMFORT mode provides smooth driving that automatically changes between 2WD and 4WD depending on the road conditions.

ECO mode

ECO mode is a driving mode that helps improve energy efficiency by limiting maximum vehicle power (torque), providing smooth vehicle response and driving the vehicle with the rear wheels (2WD).

Energy efficiency varies according to the driver's driving habit and road condition.

- When ECO mode is selected, the ECO indicator will illuminate on the cluster display and theme of the cluster display will change.

When ECO mode is activated:

- All wheel drive and sharp acceleration and deceleration is limited
- The vehicle will automatically convert between 2WD to AWD when:
 - i-Pedal or One Pedal Driving is operating
 - The temperature is low
 - Driving on a slope or a slippery road

SPORT mode

SPORT mode is a driving mode that provides a sporty but firm ride by making the motor respond more quickly, making the steering wheel heavier and driving the vehicle with all four wheels (AWD).

In SPORT mode, the energy efficiency may decrease.

- When SPORT mode is selected, the SPORT indicator will illuminate on the cluster display and theme of the cluster display will change.
- Whenever the vehicle is restarted, the drive mode will revert back to COMFORT mode. If SPORT mode is required, re-select SPORT mode.

SNOW mode

SNOW mode is a driving mode improving driving performance by changing the engagement status of the motor according to the situation required. Automatically changing the driving mode (2WD/AWD) helps improve driving stability.

- Press and hold the drive mode button to select SNOW mode.
- When SNOW mode is selected, the SNOW indicator will illuminate on the cluster display and the colour of the mood lamp will change.
- When SNOW mode is activated, the driving power is distributed to four wheels automatically, increasing the stability of the vehicle.

NOTICE

- **Press the accelerator pedal softly on the snow and the ice.**
- **Keep a good distance from the vehicle in the front.**
- **Prevent rapid acceleration, deceleration and steering control. Abrupt driving on the snow may cause an accident.**

Drive modes characteristic

The characteristic of each components varies according to which drive mode is selected.

Drive mode	SNOW	COMFORT	ECO	SPORT	MY DRIVE MODE
Characteristics	Snow driving	COMFORT driving mode	High electric energy efficiency mode	Sporty driving mode	Selected
Button activation	Press more than 1 sec.	Press	Press	Press	Press more than 1 sec.
Indicator on the cluster	SNOW	-	ECO	SPORT	MY
Climate system control	COMFORT	COMFORT	ECO (ECO/COMFORT) *1	COMFORT	COMFORT
Speed Limit	-	-	-	-	-
Regenerative braking level	0~1	0~3			
BRAKE MODE	COMFORT	COMFORT/SPORT *1	COMFORT	COMFORT/SPORT *1	COMFORT/SPORT *1

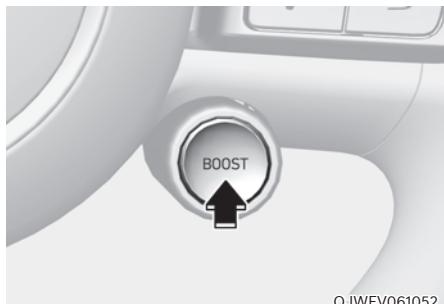
*1: It is possible to set the driving condition for each drive mode, at the drive mode setting in Infotainment system, for more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

* You can reset CUSTOM mode from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen.

- Setup → Vehicle Settings → Drive Mode → CUSTOM

* You can select separate modes for Motor, Steering, Suspension (if equipped) when MY DRIVE MODE is set.

BOOST MODE (IF EQUIPPED)



Pressing the BOOST button on the steering wheel controls in situations where rapid acceleration is required, this controls the motor to its maximum performance.

Functional description and operating conditions

When BOOST button is pressed:

- When the vehicle accelerates, the motor overboost is activated.
- Boost mode is available for 10 seconds

Boost mode will turn off during operation or will not operate when:

- Shift dial is in either P/ R/ N
- Boost function is used for 10 seconds
- Motor malfunction
- Battery malfunction
- Low voltage battery



CAUTION

- **It is the driver's responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle when using Boost mode.**
- **Do not attempt dangerous driving whilst using N Grin Shift.**

DRIFT MODE (IF EQUIPPED)

DRIFT mode is a driving mode that automatically activates rear wheels (2WD) and brakes or Electronic Limited Slip Differential (e-LSD) to easily achieve drift with a small steering wheel angle and accelerator pedal.

To activate DRIFT mode

Pull and hold the left and right paddle shift levers for more than 3 seconds at the same time to switch to drift mode. When activated DRIFT mode, the message "DRIFT mode activated" and the DRIFT indicator will illuminate on the instrument panel.

To activate the DRIFT mode, satisfy all of the following conditions:

- Gear in P (Park)
- The ESC OFF is in state 2

DRIFT mode disabled

The DRIFT mode will be cancelled or limited when:

- If the driving mode is changed to a mode other than SPORT during DRIFT mode operation
- The ESC OFF stage 2 is released
- When pull and hold the left and right paddle shift levers for more than 3 seconds at the same times during DRIFT mode operation
- The power down warning (⚠) indicator or service warning (🔧) indicator is illuminate
- The ESC or e-LSD indicator is illuminate



WARNING

- **The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle when using DRIFT mode.**
- **Use the drift mode in wide and flat road surface without pedestrians, vehicles or obstacles for the safety of vehicles and pedestrians.**
- **Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.**
- **If you drive in DRIFT mode continuous, it can cause premature wear or damage to drive shafts and brake parts.**

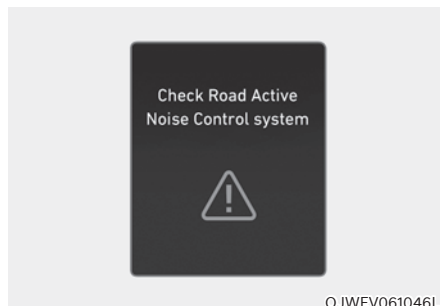
ACTIVE NOISE CONTROL-ROAD

Active noise control-road helps reduce noise caused whilst driving.

The system may not operate properly in the following conditions:

- Any window is open
- Any door is open
- The tailgate is open
- Vehicle's microphone and speaker are being blocked by other system use.

System malfunction



When Active noise control-road is not working properly, this warning message will appear on the cluster display. If this occurs, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving elements are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud and sand, take the following precautions:

- Drive cautiously and maintain a longer braking distance.
- Avoid abrupt braking or steering.
- When your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, use second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid unnecessary wheel spin.
- Put sand, rock salt, tyre chains or other non-slip materials under the wheels to provide additional traction whilst the vehicle becomes stuck in ice, snow, or mud.



WARNING

Changing the tyre speed suddenly could cause the tyres to skid whilst driving on slippery surface. Be careful when driving on slippery surfaces.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear.

Try to avoid spinning the wheels, and do not race the vehicle.

To prevent reduction gear wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal whilst shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal whilst the reduction gear is in use. Slowly spinning the wheels in forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.



WARNING

If the vehicle is stuck and excessive wheel spin occurs, the temperature in the tyres can increase very quickly. If the tyres become damaged, a tyre blow out or tyre explosion can occur. This condition is dangerous - you and others may be injured. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle.

If you attempt to free the vehicle, the vehicle can overheat quickly, possibly causing an motor compartment fire or other damage. Try to avoid spinning the wheels as much as possible to prevent overheating of either the tyres or the motor. DO NOT allow the vehicle to spin the wheels above 56 km/h.



Information

The ESC system must be turned OFF before rocking the vehicle.

NOTICE

If you are still stuck after rocking the vehicle a few times, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid motor overheating, possible damage to the reduction gear, and tyre damage. See "Towing" section in chapter 8.

Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing in corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration.

Driving at night

Night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight. Here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and increase the distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other drivers' headlamps.
- Keep your headlamps clean and properly aimed. Dirty or improperly aimed headlamps will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlamps of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain or on slick pavement:

- Slow down and allow extra following distance. A heavy rainfall makes it harder to see and increases the distance needed to stop your vehicle.
- Turn OFF your Smart Cruise Control (SCC). (if equipped)
- Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.
- Be sure your tyres have enough tread depth. If your tyres do not have enough tread depth, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. **See "Tyre replacement" section in chapter 9.**
- Turn on your headlamps to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.
- If you believe your brakes may be wet, apply them lightly whilst driving until normal braking operation returns.

Hydroplaning

If the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough, your vehicle may have little or no contact with the road surface and actually ride on the water. The best advice is SLOW DOWN when the road is wet.

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the depth of tyre tread decreases, refer to "Tyre replacement" section in chapter 9.

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be reduced.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times whilst the vehicle is moving slowly.

Highway driving

Tyres

Adjust the tyre inflation, as specified. Under-inflation may overheat or damage the tyres.

Do not install worn-out or damaged tyres, which may reduce traction or fail the braking operation.



Information

Never inflate your tyres above the maximum inflation pressure, as specified on your tyres.

Coolant and high voltage battery

Driving at higher speeds on the highway consumes more electrical energy and is less efficient than driving at a slower, more moderate speed. Maintain a moderate speed in order to conserve electrical energy when driving on the highway.

Be sure to check both the coolant level and the electric energy level before driving.

Reducing the risk of a rollover

Your multi-purpose passenger vehicle is defined as a Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV). SUV's have higher ground clearance and a narrower track to make them capable of performing in a wide variety of off-road applications. The specific design characteristics give them a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles making them more likely to roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. Due to this risk, driver and passengers are advised to always buckle their seat belts. In a rollover crash, an unrestrained person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

There are steps that a driver can make to reduce the risk of a rollover. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres, do not load your vehicle with heavy cargo on the roof, and never modify your vehicle in any way.



WARNING

As with other Sports Utility Vehicle (SUV), failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control, an accident or vehicle rollover.

- **Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.**
- **Specific design characteristics (higher ground clearance, narrower track, etc.) give this vehicle a higher centre of gravity than ordinary vehicles.**
- **An SUV is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as conventional vehicles.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or abrupt manoeuvres.**
- **In a rollover crash, an unrestrained person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Make sure everyone in the vehicle is properly restrained.**



WARNING

Your vehicle is equipped with tyres designed to provide safe travel and handling capability. Do not use a size and type of tyre and wheel that is different from the one that was originally installed on your vehicle. It can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could lead to steering failure or rollover and serious injury. When replacing the tyres, be sure to equip all four tyres with the tyre and wheel of the same size, type, tread, brand and load-carrying capacity. If you nevertheless decide to equip your vehicle with any tyre/wheel combination not recommended by Genesis for off road driving, you should not use these tyres for highway driving.

WINTER DRIVING

The severe weather conditions of winter quickly wear out tyres and cause other problems. To minimise winter driving problems, you should take the following precautions:

Snow or icy conditions

You need to keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

Apply the brakes gently. Speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause the vehicle to skid.

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to install tyre chains on your tyres.

Always carry emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, a flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

Snow tyres



WARNING

Snow tyres should be equivalent in size and type to the vehicle's standard tyres. Otherwise, the safety and handling of your vehicle may be adversely affected.

We recommend that you use snow tyres when the road temperature is below 7°C (45°F). Refer to the below chart, and mount the recommended snow tyre for your vehicle.

Standard tyre		Recommended snow tyre	
Tyre size	Wheel size	Tyre size	Wheel size
235/55 R19	8.0J x 19	235/55 R19	8.0J x 19
255/45 R20	8.5J x 20	255/45 R20	8.5J x 20
255/40 R21	8.5J x 21	255/40 R21	8.5J x 21

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, make sure to use the same Inflation pressure as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. The traction provided by snow tyres on dry roads may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

Summer tyres

- Summer tyres are used to maximise the driving performance on dry roads.
- If the temperature is below 7°C (44°F) or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, the summer tyres lose their brake performance and traction as the tyre grip weakens significantly.
- If the temperature is below 7°C (44°F) or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, mount snow tyres or all-season tyres of the same size with your vehicle's standard tyre for safe driving. Both snow and all-season tyres have M+S markings.
- When using the M+S tyres, use tyres with the same tread produced by the same manufacturer for safe driving.
- When driving with the M+S tyres with the lower maximum allowable speed than that of the vehicle's standard summer tyre, be careful not to exceed the speed allowed for the M+S tyres.

Tyre chains



Since the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner, they can be damaged by mounting some types of snow chains on them.

Do not mount tyre chains on vehicle equipped with aluminium wheels; snow chains may cause damage to the wheels. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper snow chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

When using tyre chains, install tyre chains only on the rear tyres.



WARNING

The use of tyre chains may adversely affect vehicle handling:

- **Drive less than 30 km/h or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.**
- **Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.**
- **Avoid sharp turns or locked wheel braking.**



Information

- **Install tyre chains only in pairs and on the rear tyres. It should be noted that installing tyre chains AutoSock (fabric snow chain) on the tyres will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.**
- **Do not install studded tyres without first checking local and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.**

Chain Installation

When installing tyre chains, follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly possible. Drive slowly (less than 30 km/h) with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until the noise stops. Remove the tyre chains as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

When mounting snow chains, park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning Flasher and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle (if available). Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the vehicle before installing snow chains.

NOTICE

When using tyre chains:

- **Wrong size chains or improperly installed chains can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.**
- **If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chain to prevent contact with the vehicle body.**
- **To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.5~1.0 km.**

Winter precautions

Check battery and cables

Winter temperatures affect battery performance. **Inspect the battery and cables, as specified in chapter 9.** We recommend that the battery charging level be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer or in a service station.

To prevent locks from freezing

To prevent the locks from being frozen, spray approved de-icing fluid or glycerin into key holes. When a lock opening is already covered with ice, spray approved de-icing fluid over the ice to remove it. When an internal part of a lock freezes, try to thaw it with a heated key. Carefully use the heated key to avoid an injury.

Use approved window washer anti-freeze solution in system

To prevent the window washer from being frozen, add authorised window washer anti-freeze solution, as specified on the window washer container. We recommend the window washer anti-freeze solution available from an authorised Genesis repairer, and most vehicle accessory outlets. Do not use coolant or other types of anti-freeze solution, to prevent any damage to the vehicle paint.

Do not let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. When there is the risk that your parking brake may freeze, temporarily apply it with the gear in P (Park). Also, block the rear wheels in advance, so the vehicle may not roll. Then, release the parking brake.

Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the fenders and interfere with the steering. When driving in such conditions during the severe winter, you should check underneath the vehicle on a regular basis, to ensure that the front wheels and the steering components is unblocked.

Carry emergency equipment

In accordance with weather conditions, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment, whilst driving. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

Do not place objects or materials in the motor compartment

Putting objects or materials in the motor compartment may cause an motor failure. Such damage will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

TRAILER TOWING (IF EQUIPPED)

If you are considering towing with your vehicle, you should first your country's legal requirements. As laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. Ask an authorised Genesis repairer for further details before towing. Remember that Towing a trailer is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Towing a trailer means changes in handling, durability, and energy economy. Successful, safe trailering requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper trailer towing is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty. This section contains many time-tested, important Towing a trailer tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.



WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- **If you don't use the correct towing equipment, or if you drive improperly whilst towing, you can lose control of the vehicle when pulling a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the braking performance may be reduced. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.**
- **Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (Gross Combination Weight), GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight), GAW (Gross Axle Weight) and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.**



Information

- **Do not install any equipment on the vehicle that blocks the licence plate and cannot be easily removed or repositioned.**
- **When a trailer is not used, detach it from the vehicle so that the licence plate is visible.**

If you do decide to pull a trailer (for australia)

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Do not do any towing with your vehicle during its first 2,000 km (1,200 miles) in order to allow the motor to properly break in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious motor or reduction gear damage.
- When towing a trailer, be sure to consult an authorised Genesis repairer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h).
- On a long uphill gradient, do not exceed 70 km/h or the posted speed limit, whichever is lower.

Towing Trailer

The recommended towing capacity of this vehicle will be provided with the Genuine Genesis Approved Tow Bar, which will meet the requirements of Australian Standard: AS 4177. For further information with regard to trailer towing:

- for Genuine Genesis parts and accessories (including the Genuine Genesis Approved Tow Bar and its availability for purchase) please consult your nearest authorised Genesis repairer or visit www.Genesis.com.
- for Rules and Regulations please consult your State or Territory road authorities.

It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that any tow bar used is compatible with and suitable for your vehicle, and is within the towing capacity of your vehicle. Your Genesis should not be used to tow heavy loads as it is not designed for such use.

Subject to applicable law, Genesis Motor Company Australia Pty Ltd shall not be liable for any losses, damages, costs, expenses (including but not limited to consequential and indirect losses, personal injury and deaths) caused by towing which is not in compliance with the instructions set out in this owner's manual and under relevant law, rules and regulations.



WARNING

Genesis DO NOT recommend the use of load levelling devices of any type. The use of a load levelling devices may place undue stress on the chassis causing chassis or mounting point failure.

Trailer towing equipment

Towbars

It's important to have the correct towbar equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right towbar. Here are some rules to follow:

- Do you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer towbar? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the towbar. If you don't seal them, carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for towbars. Do not attach rental towbars or other bumper-type towbars to them. Use only a framemounted towbar that does not attach to the bumper.
- Any part of the rear number plate or lighting devices of the vehicle must not be obscured by the mechanical coupling device.
- A Genesis trailer towbar accessory is available at an authorised Genesis repairer.

NOTICE

We recommend only genuine Genesis towbars (these towbars are made and tested in Australia/NZ for local conditions).

Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the towbar manufacturer or trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly. If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes loaded, then it needs its own brakes and they must be adequate. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly. Be sure not to modify your vehicle's brake system.



WARNING

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer towbar and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tyres and brakes. During your trip, occasionally check to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and trailer brakes are still working.



Information

When the ambient temperature is lower than 0°C (32°F) and the remaining high voltage battery is low, the power of the vehicle with a trailer can be dropped, causing a trouble in acceleration or drop of the speed when driving hills. When driving with a trailer, be sure to charge the high voltage battery more than 50% if the ambient temperature is lower than 0°C (32°F).

Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You will need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer and because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Reversing

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always reverse slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making turns

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, kerbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden manoeuvres. Signal well in advance.

Turn signals

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.



WARNING

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use an approved trailer wiring harness. Failure to do so could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury. Consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

Driving on hills

Reduce speed before you start down a long or steep downgrade. On a long uphill grade, reduce your speed to around 70 km/h to reduce the possibility of motor overheating.

NOTICE

To prevent motor overheating:

- If you tow a trailer with the maximum gross vehicle weight and maximum trailer weight, it can cause the motor to overheat. When driving in such conditions, allow the motor to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the motor has cooled sufficiently.
- When towing a trailer, your vehicle speed may be much slower than the general flow of traffic, especially when climbing an uphill grade. Use the right hand lane when towing a trailer on an uphill grade. Choose your vehicle speed according to the maximum posted speed limit for vehicles with trailers, the steepness of the grade, and your trailer weight.

Parking on hills

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill.

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking area. Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the kerb (left if headed down hill, right if headed up hill).
2. Press the shift button to P (Park).
3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place wheel chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, apply the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes and parking brakes.
7. Press the shift button to P (Park).
8. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.



WARNING

To prevent serious or fatal injury:

- **Do not get out of the vehicle without the parking brake firmly set. If you have left the vehicle running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You and others could be seriously or fatally injured.**
- **Do not use the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle on an uphill.**

Driving the vehicle after it has been parked on a hill

1. Press the shift button to P (Park), apply the brakes and hold the brake pedal down whilst performing the following:
 - Start your vehicle;
 - Shift into gear; and
 - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when towing a trailer

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include reduction gear fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these items before you start your trip. Don't forget to also maintain your trailer and towbar. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all towbar nuts and bolts should be tight.

NOTICE

To prevent vehicle damage:

- **Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur on hot days or during uphill driving.**
- **When towing check reduction gear fluid more frequently.**

VEHICLE WEIGHT

Two labels on your driver's door sill show how much weight your vehicle was designed to carry: the Tyre and Loading Information Label and the Certification Label.

Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, from the vehicle's specifications and the Certification Label:

Base Kerb Weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including high voltage battery and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Kerb Weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo Weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Kerb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Certification Label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)

This is the Base Kerb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the Certification Label located on the driver's door sill.

Overloading



WARNING

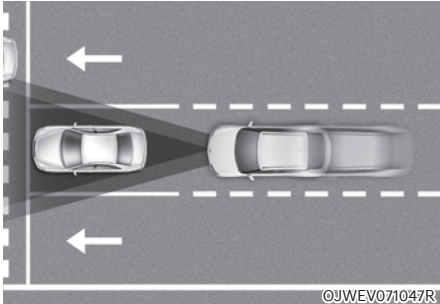
The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) and the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the Certification Label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

7. Driver assistance system

Driver Assistance system functions can be updated by Over-The-Air software update.
Descriptions for each function of the system may differ from the owners' manual once updated.
See "OTA software update (if equipped)" section in chapter 5 for details.

Driving safety	
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)	7-2
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)	7-30
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)	7-38
Safe Exit Assist (SEA)	7-50
Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)	7-57
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)	7-60
Driver Attention Warning (DAW)	7-66
Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM)	7-72
Driving convenience	
Smart Cruise Control (SCC)	7-74
Lane Following Assist (LFA)	7-93
Parking safety	
Rear View Monitor (RVM)	7-97
Surround View Monitor (SVM)	7-102
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)	7-109
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW)	7-120
Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW)	7-126
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA)	7-133
Parking Convenience	
Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2)	7-143
Declaration of conformity	7-170

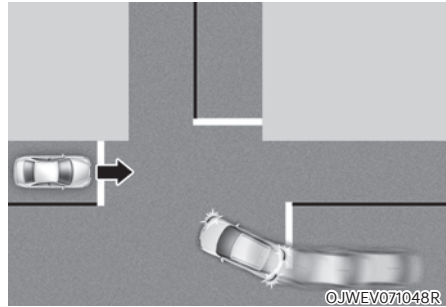
FORWARD COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (FCA)



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect and monitor the vehicle ahead or help detect a powered two-wheeler, pedestrian or cyclist in the roadway and warn the driver that a collision is imminent with a warning message and warning and apply emergency braking.

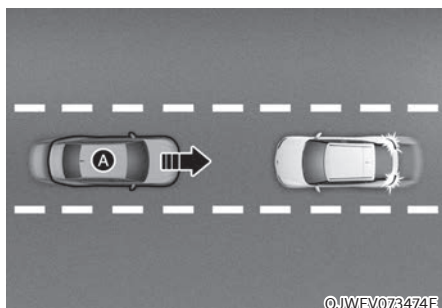
In addition, if equipped with front corner radars, when driving at high speeds, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will help detect vehicles in front and adjacent lanes. If a collision is imminent when changing lanes, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will may assist with braking your vehicle to help reduce collision speed or avoid a collision.

Junction Turning function



Junction Turning function can help avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle or powered two-wheeler in an adjacent lane when turning right at a crossroad with the turn signal on by applying emergency braking. Also, Junction Turning function may assist with braking your vehicle to help reduce collision speed or avoid a collision.

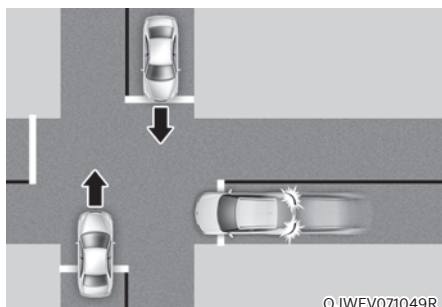
Direct Oncoming function



[A]: Oncoming vehicle

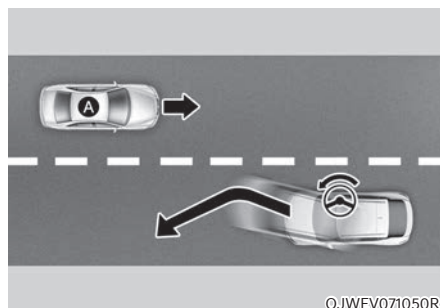
Direct Oncoming function helps reduce the speed at the collision when a vehicle or powered two-wheeler approaching from the opposite side is detected.

Junction Crossing function



Junction Crossing function can help avoid a collision with oncoming vehicles on the left or right side when crossing an intersection by applying emergency braking. Also, Junction Crossing function may assist with braking your vehicle to help reduce collision speed or avoid a collision.

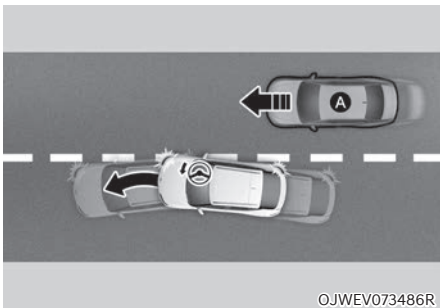
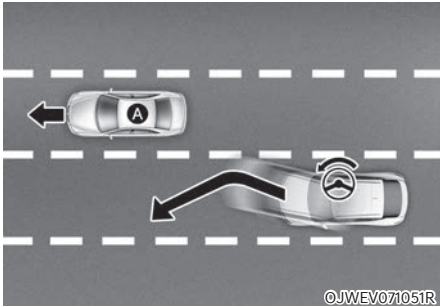
Lane-Change Oncoming function



[A]: Oncoming vehicle

Lane-Change Oncoming function helps avoid a collision with an oncoming vehicle or powered two-wheeler when changing lanes by assisting the driver's steering. Also, Lane-Change Oncoming function may assist with driver's steering to help reduce collision speed or avoid a collision.

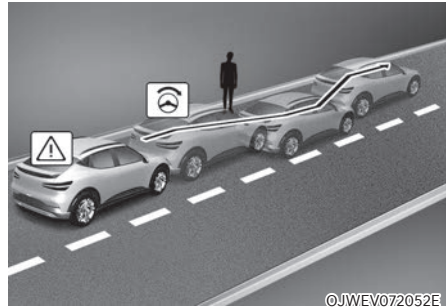
Lane-Change Side function



[A]: Front-side vehicle

Lane-Change Side function helps avoid a collision with the vehicle or powered two-wheeler ahead in the next lane when changing lanes by assisting the driver's steering. Also, Lane-Change Side function may assist with driver's steering to help reduce collision speed or avoid a collision.

Evasive Steering Assist function



- Driver steering assist
Evasive Steering Assist function helps avoid a collision with a vehicle, powered two-wheeler, pedestrian or cyclist ahead in the same lane. When a risk of collision is detected, Evasive Steering Assist function will warn the driver and if the driver steers to avoid collision it will assist the driver's steering.
- Evasive steering assist
Evasive Steering Assist function helps avoid a collision with a vehicle, powered two-wheeler, pedestrian or cyclist ahead in the same lane. When a risk of collision is detected, Evasive Steering Assist function will warn the driver and if there is space to avoid collision in the lane, it will assist the driver's steering.

Detecting sensor



- [1]: Front view camera, [2]: Front radar,
[3]: Front corner radar
[4]: Rear corner radar

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.



CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensor:

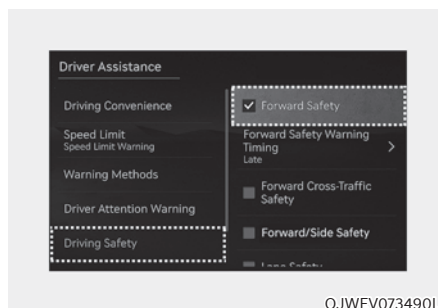
- Never disassemble the detecting sensor or sensor assembly, or cause any damage to it.
- If the detecting sensors have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Never install any accessories or stickers on the front windscreen, or tint the front windscreen.
- Pay extreme caution to keep the front view camera dry.
- Never place any reflective objects (for example, white paper, mirror) over the instrument panel.
- Do not place any objects near the front windscreen or install any accessories on the front windscreen. It can affect the performance of the defogging and defrosting function of the climate control system, which may prevent the Driver Assistance systems from operating.
- Do not apply licence plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard, near the front radar cover.
- Always keep the front radar and cover clean and free of dirt and debris.

Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurised water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.

- If the radar or around the radar has been damaged or impacted in any way, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate even though a warning message does not appear on the cluster. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Front radar cover, front corner radar and rear bumper genuine parts with rear corner radars have proven their performance. Replacing or painting the rear bumper may result in poor performance of Blind-Spot Collision Avoidance Assist. When the parts need to be replaced or modified, make sure to use qualified products.
- Use only genuine Genesis parts to repair or replace a damaged front radar cover. Do not apply paint to the front radar cover.
- Vehicles equipped with front corner radar and/or rear corner radar
 - Do not apply licence plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard, near the front corner radar or rear corner radar.
 - The function may not work properly when the bumper has been replaced, or the surroundings of the front corner radar or rear corner radar has been damaged or paint has been applied.
 - If a trailer, carrier, etc., is installed, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

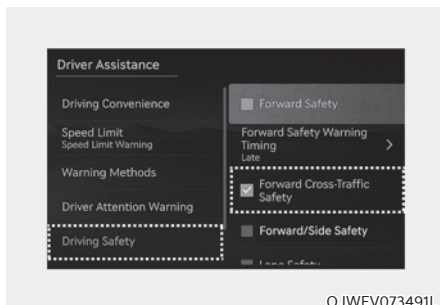
Setting features



Forward Safety

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Driving Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

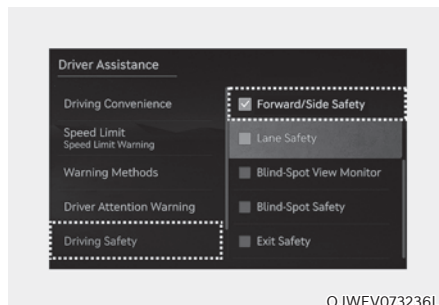
- If 'Forward Safety' is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning depending on the collision risk levels. Braking assist will be applied depending on the collision risk levels. If 'Forward Safety' is deselected, Forward Safety will turn off. The warning light  will illuminate on the cluster.



OJWEV073491L

Forward Cross-Traffic Safety

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Drive Assistance → Driving Safety → Forward Cross-Traffic Safety' from the Settings menu to turn on Junction Crossing function and deselect to turn off the function.



OJWEV073236L

Forward/Side Safety

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Driving Safety → Forward/Side Safety' from the Settings menu to turn on Lane-Change Oncoming function, Lane-Change Side function, and Evasive Steering Assist function.

- If 'Forward/Side Safety' is selected, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with a warning message, an audible warning depending on the collision risk levels. Steering assist will be applied depending on the collision risk levels. If 'Forward/Side Safety' is deselected, Forward Safety will turn off. The warning light  will illuminate on the instrument cluster.

The driver can monitor Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist On/Off status from the Settings menu. If the warning light  or  remains ON when Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is on, have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

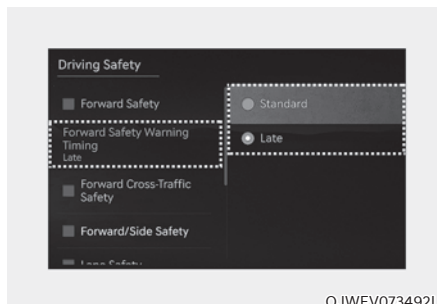
WARNING

When the vehicle is restarted, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will always turn on. However, if "Forward Safety" is deselected, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.



CAUTION

- The settings for 'Forward Safety' include 'Basic function', 'Junction Turning' and 'Direct Oncoming'. 'Forward Cross-Traffic Safety' include 'Junction Crossing'. 'Forward/Side Safety' include 'Lane-Change Oncoming', 'Lane-change side' and 'Evasive Steering Assist'.
- If 'Forward Safety' is set to 'Off', Junction Crossing function will not operate even when 'Forward Cross-Traffic Safety' and 'Forward/Side Safety' is selected.
- Steering wheel vibration can be turned on or off. Select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Haptic Warning' from the Settings menu.



OJWEV073492L

Forward Safety Warning Timing

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Driving Safety → Forward Safety Warning Timing' from the Settings menu to change the initial warning activation time for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning time can be set to either 'Standard (Normal)' or 'Late (Later)'.

- Use 'Standard (Normal)' in normal driving conditions. If the Warning Timing seems sensitive, change it to 'Late (Later)'.
- If 'Late (Later)' is selected, Forward Collision Avoidance Assist, warns the driver more slowly.



CAUTION

- Even though 'Standard (Normal)' is selected for Warning Timing, if a detected vehicle in front suddenly stops, the warning may seem late.
- Select 'Late (Later)' for Warning Timing when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.



Information

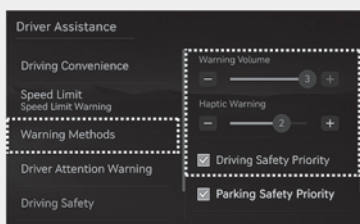
- Warning timing settings do not apply to Forward/Side Safety.
- If the vehicle is restarted, Warning timing will maintain the last setting.

■ Type A



OJWEV073186L

■ Type B



OJWEV073441L

i Information

- If you change the **Warning Methods**, **Warning Methods** of other **Driver Assistance** systems may change.
- With the **Warning Volume** in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the **Haptic Warning** to level 0, the **Warning Volume** will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.
- With the **Haptic Warning** deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the **Warning Volume** to level 0, the **Haptic Warning** will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.
- **Warning Method** will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.

Warning Methods

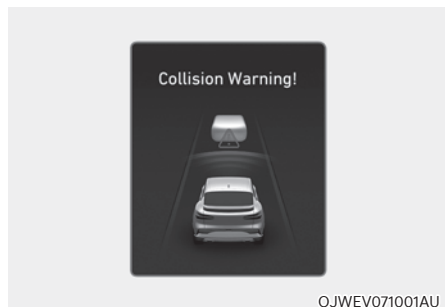
Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

- **Warning Volume:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' on the infotainment system, and adjust the warning volume. Even if you set the warning volume to 0, Warning volume will keep its volume in 1.
- **Haptic Warning:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' on the infotainment system, and set or adjust the steering wheel vibration warning.
- **Driving Safety Priority:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Driving Safety Priority' on the infotainment system, the audio volume is reduced whilst a warning sounds.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

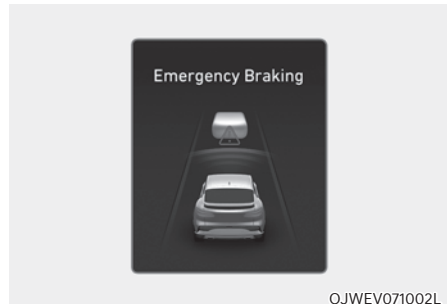
Warning and control

The basic function for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is to warn and help control the vehicle depending on the collision risk level: 'Collision Warning', 'Emergency Braking' and 'Stopping vehicle and ending brake control'.



Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light will blink and the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- If a vehicle or powered two-wheeler is detected in front, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-200 km/h.
- If a pedestrian or cyclist is detected in front, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-85 km/h.



Emergency Braking

To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the  warning light will blink and the 'Emergency Braking' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.

Emergency braking will operate under the following conditions.

- Vehicle or powered two-wheeler:

	Driving vehicle	Stopped vehicle
Weak braking power	Approximately 10-200 km/h	
Strong braking power	Approximately 10-130 km/h	Approximately 10-85 km/h (Approximately 10-100 km/h) *1

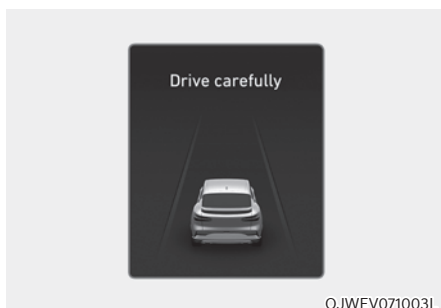
*1 : If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist judges that avoiding a collision is difficult even by changing the driving lane, braking is assisted more earlier.

- If a pedestrian or cyclist is detected in front, the function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-65 km/h.



CAUTION

- The function operation range may decrease due to the front traffic condition or the surroundings of the vehicle.
- When driving at night, the powered two-wheeler recognition performance is degraded, so Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be temporarily limited or may not work.



Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.
For your safety, the driver should press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.



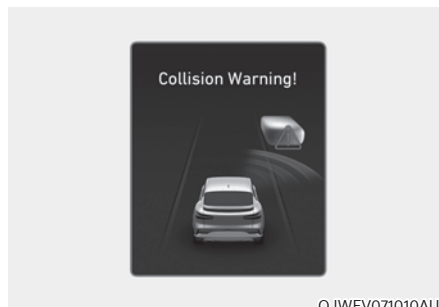
Information

The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.

Junction Turning function

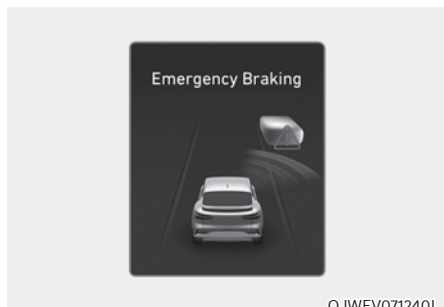
Warning and control

Junction Turning function will warn and control the vehicle depending on the collision risk level: 'Collision Warning', 'Emergency Braking' and 'Stopping vehicle and ending brake control'.



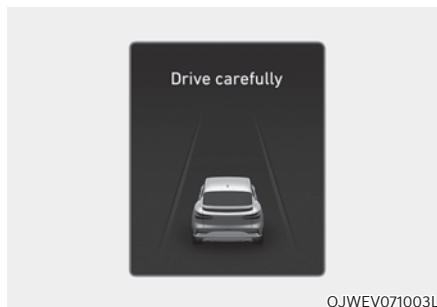
Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light will blink and the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-30 km/h and the oncoming vehicle or powered two-wheeler speed is between approximately 30-70 km/h.



Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the  warning light will blink and the 'Emergency Braking' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-30 km/h and the oncoming vehicle or powered two-wheeler speed is between approximately 30-70 km/h.



Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.
For your safety, the driver should press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.

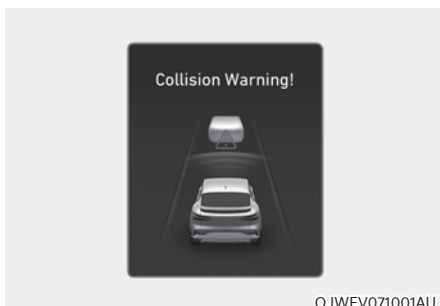


Information

The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.

Direct Oncoming function

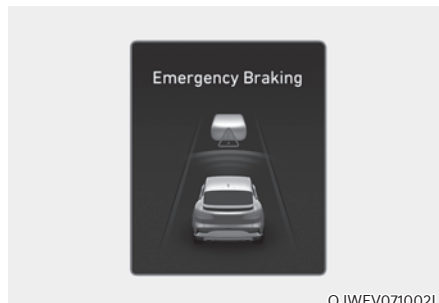
Direct Oncoming function will warn and control the vehicle depending on the collision risk level: 'Collision Warning', 'Emergency Braking' and 'Stop vehicle and end brake control'.



Collision Warning

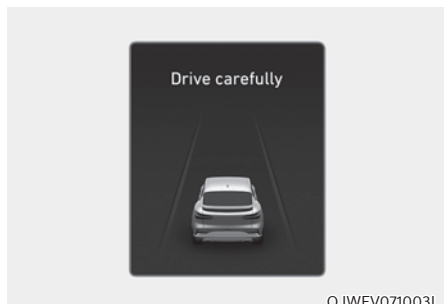
- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light will blink and the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.

The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 30-130 km/h and the oncoming vehicle or powered two-wheeler speed is approximately above 10 km/h.



Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the  warning light will blink and the 'Emergency Braking' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- In emergency braking situation, braking is assisted with strong braking power by the function to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 30-130 km/h and the oncoming vehicle or powered two-wheeler speed is approximately above 10 km/h.



Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster. For your safety, the driver should press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.



CAUTION

- **If your vehicle, the oncoming vehicle or powered two-wheeler is not driving straight, Direct Oncoming function warning and control may be late or may not operate.**
- **When driving at night, the powered two-wheeler recognition performance is degraded, so Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be temporarily limited or may not work.**



Information

The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.

Junction Crossing function

Warning and control

Junction Crossing function will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: 'Collision Warning', 'Emergency Braking' and 'Stopping vehicle and ending brake control'



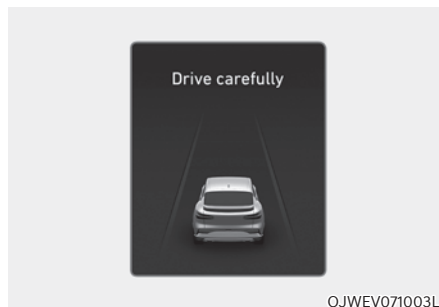
Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light will blink and the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-55 km/h and the detected crossing vehicle speed is between approximately 10-60 km/h.



Emergency Braking

- To warn the driver that emergency braking will be assisted, the  warning light will blink and the 'Emergency Braking' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 10-55 km/h and the detected crossing vehicle speed is between approximately 10-40 km/h.



Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.
For your safety, the driver should press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.



CAUTION

If the collision angle with the crossing vehicle is beyond a certain range, Junction Crossing function warning and control may be late or may not operate.



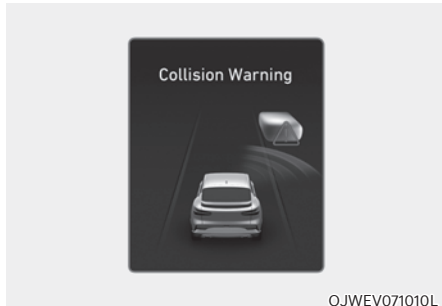
Information

The audible warning can be turned off whilst collision warning or emergency braking is operating by pressing the hazard warning flasher button.

Lane-Change Oncoming function

Warning and control

Lane-Change Oncoming function will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: 'Collision Warning' and 'Emergency Steering'



Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light will blink and the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h and the detected oncoming vehicle or powered two-wheeler speed is approximately above 10 km/h and the relative speed with your vehicle is approximately below 200 km/h.



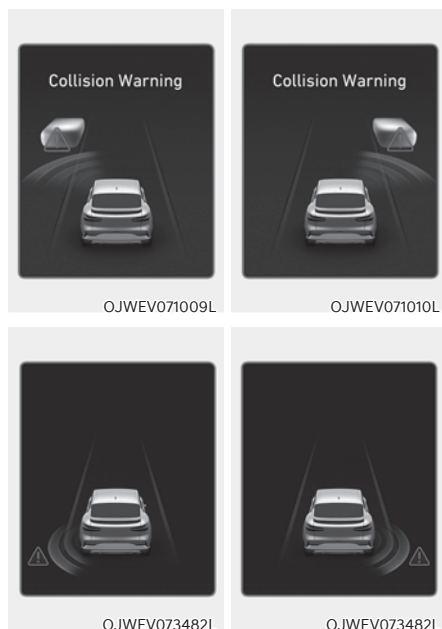
Emergency Steering

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the  warning light will blink and the 'Emergency Steering' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h and the detected oncoming vehicle or powered two-wheeler speed is approximately above 10 km/h and the relative speed with your vehicle is approximately below 200 km/h.
- In emergency steering situation, steering is assisted by the function to help prevent collision with the oncoming vehicle.

Lane-Change Side function

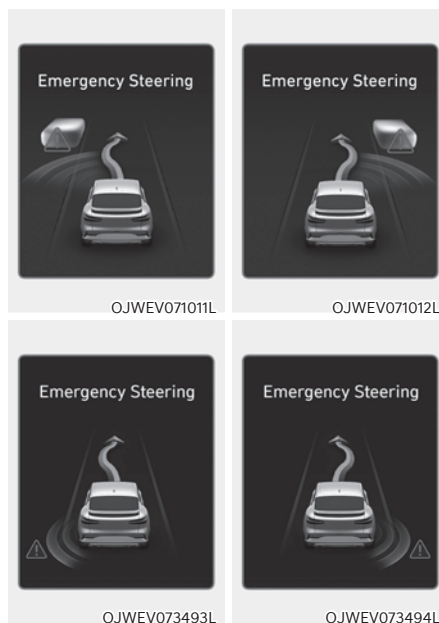
Warning and control

Lane-Change Side function will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: 'Collision Warning' and 'Emergency Steering'



Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of a collision, the  warning light will blink and the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate. When the oncoming vehicle or powered two-wheeler is detected in a blind spot, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will illuminate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h.



Emergency Steering

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the  warning light will blink and the 'Emergency Steering' warning message will appear on the instrument cluster. Also, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate. When the oncoming vehicle or powered two-wheeler is detected in a blind spot, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will illuminate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-145 km/h.
- In emergency steering situation, steering is assisted by the function to help prevent collision with the front-side vehicle.



CAUTION

- Lane-Change Side function does not operate if the vehicle speed of the preceding vehicle from the front-side or powered two-wheeler is 0 km/h.
- The detecting range of the front corner radar and the rear corner radar is determined by a standard road width, therefore, on a narrow road, Lane-Change Side function may detect other vehicles and powered two-wheeler two lanes over and warn you.
In contrast, on a wide road, Lane-Change Side function may not be able to detect a vehicle driving in the next lane and may not warn you.
- Collision-avoidance assist will be cancelled under the following circumstances:
 - Your vehicle enters the next lane by a certain distance
 - Your vehicle is away from the collision risk
 - The steering wheel is sharply steered
 - The brake pedal is pressed
 - Forward Collision-avoidance assist is operating
- After Lane-Change Side function operation or lane change, you must drive to the centre of the lane. Lane-Change Side function will not operate if the vehicle is not driven in the centre of the lane.



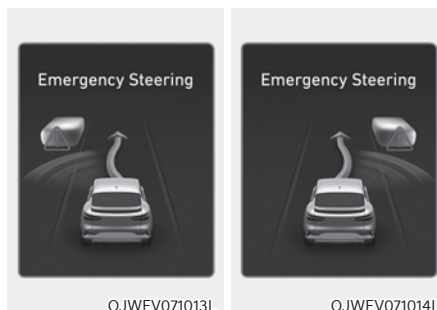
Information

When an additional accident is expected, Lane-Change Side function will not assist with steering and only warn the driver of a collision.

Evasive Steering Assist function

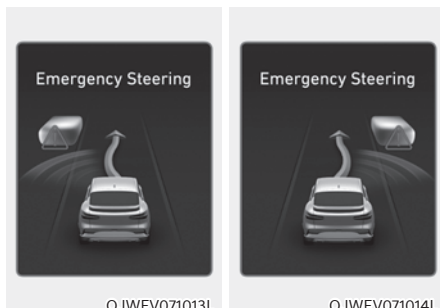
Warning and control

Evasive Steering Assist function will warn and control the vehicle with 'Emergency steering'.



Emergency Steering (Driver steering assist)

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the warning light will blink and the 'Emergency Steering' message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 40-85 km/h.
- If there is a risk of collision with a vehicle, powered two-wheeler, pedestrian and cyclist in front, the steering will be assisted to help prevent collision when the driver steers the vehicle to avoid collision.



Emergency Steering (Evasive steering assist)

- To warn the driver that emergency steering will be assisted, the  warning light will blink and the 'Emergency Steering' message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- The function will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 65-75 km/h.
- If there is high risk of collision with a pedestrian, cyclist or powered two-wheeler in front, and the speed is not within the emergency braking operation range, the steering will be assisted to help prevent collision when there is space to avoid collision in the driving lane.



CAUTION

- The steering wheel may turn automatically when emergency steering is operating.
- Emergency steering will automatically cancel when risk factors disappear. If necessary, the driver must steer the vehicle.
- Emergency steering may not operate or may cancel during operation if the steering wheel is held tight or steered in the opposite direction.
- When steering is assisted to avoid collision with a vehicle, powered two-wheeler, pedestrian and cyclist, Evasive steering assist will be cancelled if collisions with other objects (vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists) are expected.
- Evasive steering assist may not operate if space to avoid collision in the driving lane is insufficient.
- When driving at night, the powered two-wheeler recognition performance is degraded, so Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be temporarily limited or may not work.



Information

For more details on warning messages, refer to Collision Warning in "Basic function".



WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.
- The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never deliberately operate Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver presses the brake pedal to avoid a collision.
- Depending on the road and driving conditions, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver.
- During Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
- If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.
- Even if there is a problem with Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking will function normally.
- During emergency braking, braking control by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will automatically cancel when the driver excessively presses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.



CAUTION

- Depending on the condition of the vehicle, powered two-wheeler, pedestrian and cyclist in front and the surroundings, the speed range or detecting range to operate Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may reduce. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may only warn the driver, or it may not operate.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate under certain conditions by judging the risk level based on the condition of the vehicle and powered two-wheeler, driving direction, speed and surroundings.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited or disabled if the vehicle speed is too high or the distance to the vehicle or powered two-wheeler ahead is far.
- When a collision with a surrounding vehicle is expected, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side and Evasive Steering Assist functions will only warn the driver.

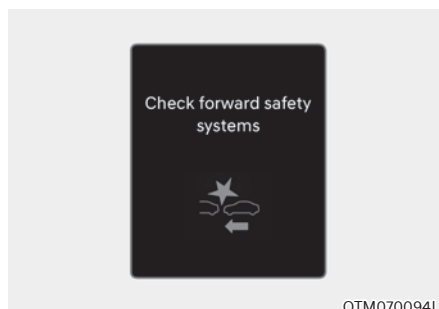


Information

- In a situation where collision is imminent, braking may be assisted by Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist when braking is insufficient by the driver.
- The images and colours in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

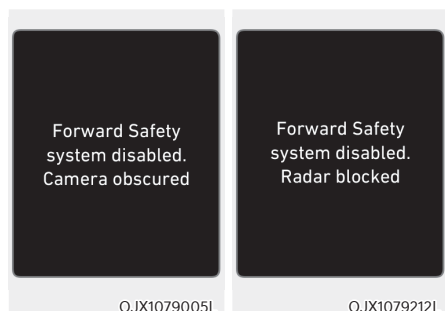
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction



OTM070094L

When Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the 'Check forward safety systems' warning message will appear, and the , , and  warning lights will illuminate on the cluster. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



When the front windshield where the front view camera is located, front radar cover, bumper or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs the 'Forward Safety system(s) disabled. Camera obscured' or the 'Forward Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message, and the ,  and  warning lights will illuminate on the cluster.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

If Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after obstruction (snow, rain, or foreign material) is removed (including trailer, carrier, etc., from the rear bumper), we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

- Even though the warning message or warning light does not appear on the cluster, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain), where any objects are not detected after turning ON the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained. Therefore, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist is may not operate properly.

Limitations of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are contaminated or damaged
- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low due to surrounding environment
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windscreen, damaged glass, or sticky foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windscreen
- Washer fluid is continuously sprayed, or the wiper is on
- Driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Street light or light from an oncoming traffic is reflected on the wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- An object is placed on the instrument panel

- Your vehicle is being towed
- The surrounding is very bright
- The surrounding is very dark, such as in a tunnel, etc.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The brightness outside is low, and the headlamps are not on or are not bright
- Driving through steam, smoke or shadow
- Only part of the vehicle, powered two-wheeler, pedestrian or cyclist is detected
- The vehicle in front is a bus, heavy truck, truck with an unusually shaped cargo, trailer, etc.
- The vehicle or powered two-wheeler in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located unusually, etc.
- The brightness outside is low, and the tail lamps are not on or are not bright
- The rear of the front vehicle or powered two-wheeler is small or the vehicle does not look normal, such as when the vehicle is tilted, overturned, or the side of the vehicle is visible, etc.
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high
- A vehicle, powered two-wheeler, pedestrian or cyclist suddenly cuts in front
- The bumper around the front radar is impacted, damaged or the front radar is out of position
- The temperature around the front radar is high or low
- Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge
- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- A material is near that reflects very well on the front radar, such as a guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The cyclist in front is on a bicycle made of material that does not reflect on the front radar
- The vehicle or powered two-wheeler in front is detected late
- The vehicle or powered two-wheeler in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle
- The vehicle or powered two-wheeler in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed
- The vehicle or powered two-wheeler in front is bent out of shape
- The vehicle or powered two-wheeler in front is covered with snow
- You are departing or returning to the lane
- Unstable driving
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle or powered two-wheeler in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- The vehicle or powered two-wheeler in front has an unusual shape
- The vehicle or powered two-wheeler in front is driving uphill or downhill
- The pedestrian or cyclist is not fully detected, for example, if the pedestrian is leaning over or is not fully walking upright
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing or equipment that makes it difficult to detect



The illustration above shows the image the front view camera and front radar are capable of detecting as a vehicle, powered two-wheeler, pedestrian and cyclist.

- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving very quickly
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is short or is posing a low posture
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front has impaired mobility
- The pedestrian or cyclist in front is moving intersected with the driving direction
- There is a group of pedestrians, cyclists or a large crowd in front
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect
- The pedestrian or cyclist is difficult to distinguish from the similarly shaped structure in the surroundings
- You are driving by a pedestrian, cyclist, traffic signs, structures, etc., near the intersection
- Driving in a parking lot
- Driving through a tollgate, construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise

Junction Crossing, Lane-Change Oncoming, Lane-Change Side, Evasive Steering Assist function

- The temperature around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is high or low
- A trailer or carrier is installed around the rear corner radar
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered with snow, rain, dirt, etc.
- The bumper around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is impacted, damaged or the radar is out of position
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is blocked by other vehicles, walls or pillars
- Driving on a highway (or motorway) ramp
- Driving on a road where the guardrail or wall is in double structure
- The other vehicle or powered two-wheeler drives very close behind your vehicle, or the other vehicle passes by your vehicle in close proximity
- The speed of the other vehicle or powered two-wheeler is very fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time
- Your vehicle passes by the other vehicle or powered two-wheeler
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle or powered two-wheeler next to you and has accelerated
- The vehicle or powered two-wheeler in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or when the vehicle or powered two-wheeler two lanes away moves to the next lane from you
- A powered two-wheeler or bicycle is detected
- A vehicle such as a flat trailer is detected
- A big vehicle such as a bus or truck is detected
- A small moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart or a baby stroller is detected
- A vehicle with low height such as a sports car is detected
- The lane is difficult to see due to foreign material, such as rain, snow, dust, sand, oil and water puddles
- The colour of the lane marking is not distinguishable from the road

- There are markings on the road near the lane or the markings on the road looks similar to the lane markings
- The shadow is on the lane marking by a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
- The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings are crossing
- There are more than two lane markings on the road
- The lane markings are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the intersection
- The lane is very wide or narrow
- There is a kerb or road edges without a lane
- The vehicle in front is driving with one side on the lane marking
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short



WARNING

- Driving on a curved road



OJWEV071056R



OJWEV073483E



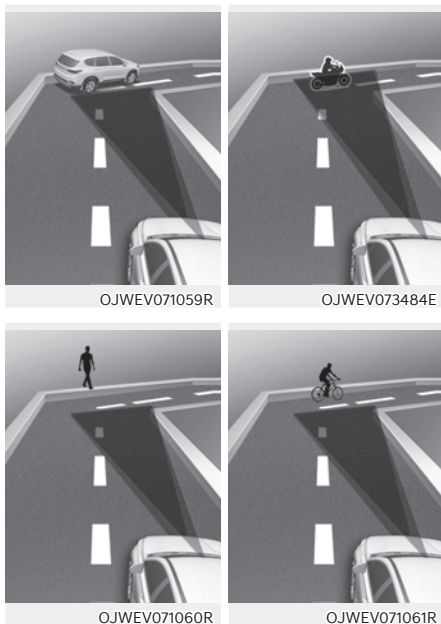
OJWEV071057R



OJWEV071058R

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, powered two-wheelers, pedestrians or cyclists in front of you when driving on curved roads adversely affecting the performance of the sensors. This may result in no warning, braking assist or steering assist when necessary.

When driving on a curve, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer the vehicle and press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect a vehicle, powered two-wheeler, pedestrian or cyclist in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curved road.

If this occurs, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake or steering wheel.

Always check the traffic conditions around the vehicle.

- **Driving on an inclined road**



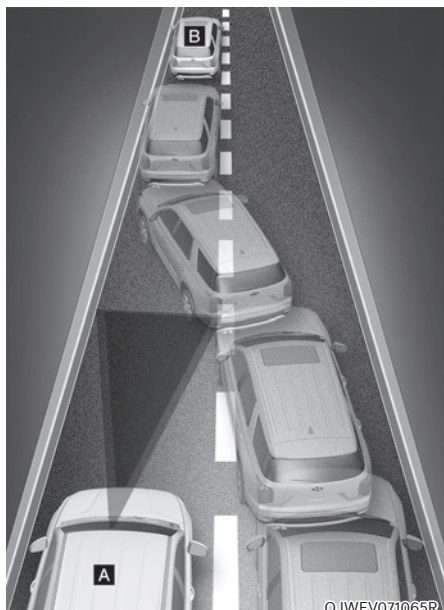
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not detect other vehicles, powered two-wheelers, pedestrians or cyclists in front of you whilst driving uphill or downhill, adversely affecting the performance of the sensors.

This may result in unnecessary warning, braking assist or steering assist or no warning, braking assist or steering assist when necessary.

Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead is suddenly detected.

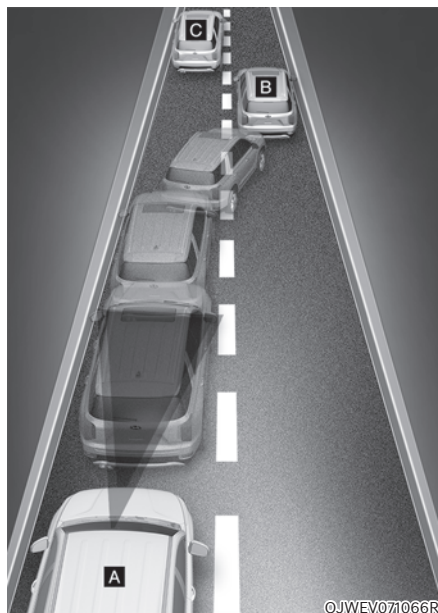
Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving uphill or downhill and if necessary, steer your vehicle and press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

- Changing lanes



[A]: Your vehicle,
[B]: Lane changing vehicle

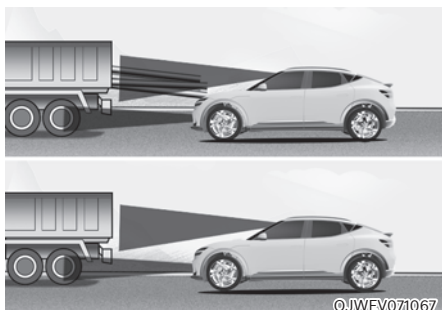
When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



[A]: Your vehicle,
[B]: Lane changing vehicle,
[C]: Same lane vehicle

When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not immediately detect the vehicle that is now in front of you. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

- Detecting vehicle



If the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab, or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance, additional special attention is required. Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect the cargo extending from the vehicle. In these instances, you must maintain a safe braking distance from the rearmost object, and if necessary, steer your vehicle and press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.



WARNING

- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist for safety reasons.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may operate if objects that are similar in shape or characteristics to vehicles, powered two-wheelers, pedestrians and cyclists are detected.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate on bicycles, motorcycles, or smaller wheeled objects, such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialised.



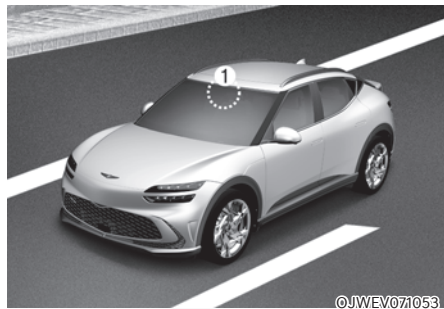
Information

For limitations in the driver's blind spot areas and precautions for the rear corner radars, refer to the "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.

LANE KEEPING ASSIST (LKA)

Lane Keeping Assist is designed to help detect lane markings (or road edges) whilst driving over a certain speed. Lane Keeping Assist will warn the driver if the vehicle leaves the lane without using the turn signal, or will automatically assist the driver's steering to help prevent the vehicle from departing the lane.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect lane markings (or road edges).

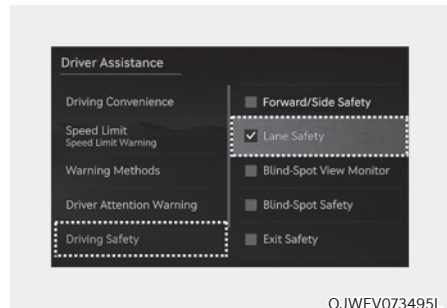
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.



CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

Lane Keeping Assist settings Setting features



OJWEV073495L

Lane Safety

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Driving Safety → Lane Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Lane Safety' is selected, Lane Keeping Assist automatically assists the driver's steering, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate. When lane departure is detected to help prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane. If 'Lane Safety' is deselected, Lane Keeping Assist turns off and the yellow  indicator light appears on the cluster.



WARNING

- If the vehicle is restarted, Lane Keeping Assist turns on and 'Lane Safety' is selected.
- The driver should always be aware of the surroundings. If 'Lane safety' is deselected, Lane Keeping Assist cannot assist you.
- Lane Keeping Assist does not control the steering wheel when the vehicle is driven in the middle of the lane.

i Information

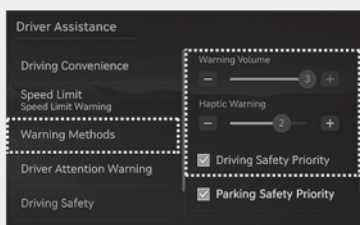
If you turn off Lane Keeping Assist by pressing the Lane Driving Assist (/⊕\) button on the steering wheel, Lane safety setting also turns off.

■ Type A



OJWEV073186L

■ Type B



OJWEV073441L

Warning Methods

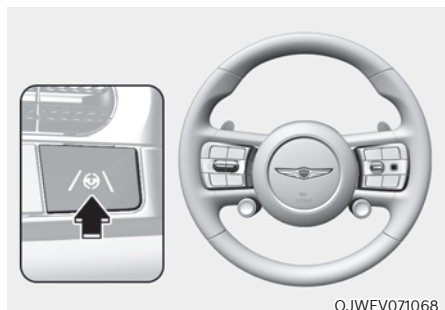
Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

- **Warning Volume:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' on the infotainment system, and adjust the warning volume.
- **Haptic Warning:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' on the infotainment system, and set or adjust the steering wheel vibration warning.
- **Driving Safety Priority:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Driving Safety Priority' on the infotainment system, the audio volume is reduced whilst a warning sounds.

i Information

- If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- With the Warning Volume in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the Haptic Warning to level 0, the Warning Volume will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.
- With the Haptic Warning deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the Warning Volume to level 0, the Haptic Warning will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.

Turning Lane Keeping Assist On/Off



OJWEV071068

Whenever the vehicle is turned on, Lane Keeping Assist will always turn on. The green  indicator light will illuminate on the cluster.

When Lane Keeping Assist is on, press and hold the Lane Driving Assist () button to turn off the function.

When Lane Keeping Assist is off, the  indicator turns yellow.

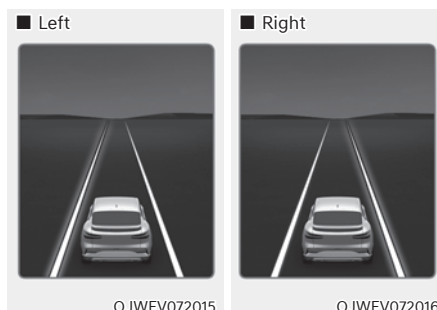
Information

- When Lane Keeping Assist is ready to operate,  indicator turns grey on the instrument cluster.
- When Lane Keeping Assist is operating,  indicator turns green on the instrument cluster.

Lane Keeping Assist operation

Warning and control

Lane Keeping Assist will warn and help control the vehicle with Lane Departure Warning and Lane Keeping Assist.



OJWEV072015

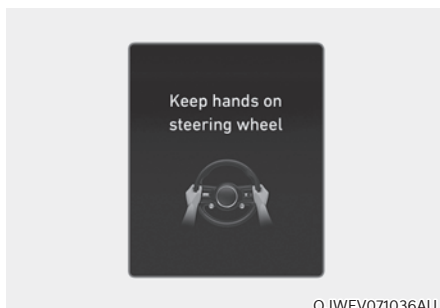
OJWEV072016

Lane Departure Warning

- To warn the driver that the vehicle is departing from the projected lane in front, the green  indicator light will blink on the cluster, the lane line will blink on the cluster depending on which direction the vehicle is veering, and an audible warning will sound. Also, the steering wheel will vibrate.
- Lane Keeping Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 60-200 km/h.

Lane Keeping Assist

- To warn the driver that the vehicle is departing from the projected lane in front, the green  indicator light will blink on the cluster, and the steering wheel will make adjustments to keep vehicle inside the lane.
- Lane Keeping Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is between approximately 60-200 km/h.



Hands-off warning

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the 'Keep hands on the steering wheel' warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound in stages.

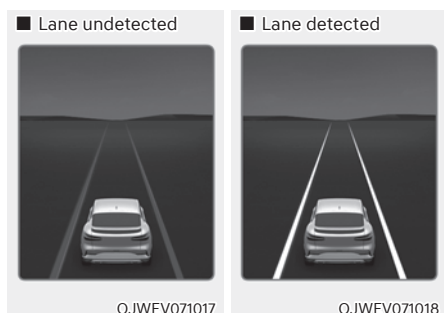


WARNING

- The steering wheel may not be assisted if the steering wheel is held very tight or the steering wheel is steered over a certain degree.
- Lane Keeping Assist does not operate at all times. It is the responsibility of the driver to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.
- The hands-off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
- If the steering wheel is held very lightly, the hands-off warning message may appear because Lane Keeping Assist may not recognise that the driver has their hands on the steering wheel.
- If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.

i Information

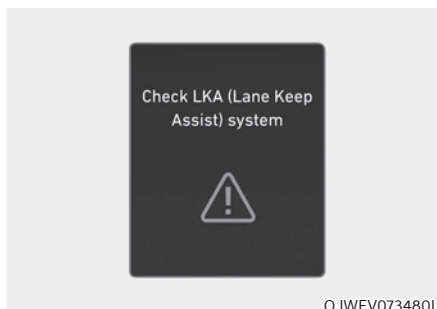
- Even though the steering is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist, the driver may control the steering wheel.
- The steering wheel may feel heavier or lighter when the steering wheel is assisted by Lane Keeping Assist than when it is not.



- When lane markings (or road edges) are detected, the lane lines on the cluster changes from grey to white.
- The images and colours in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.
- For more details on setting the functions in the infotainment system Vehicle Settings, refer to "Vehicle settings (infotainment system)" section in chapter 4.

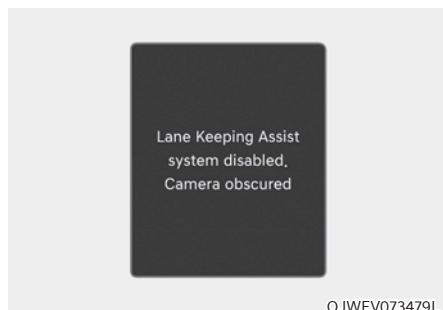
Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations

Lane Keeping Assist malfunction



When Lane Keeping Assist is not working properly, the 'Check LKA (Lane Keeping Assist) system' warning message will appear and the yellow Lane Keeping Assist  warning light appears on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Lane Keeping Assist disabled



When the front windscreen where the front view camera is located, or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Lane Keeping Assist.

If this occurs, the 'Lane Keeping Assist system disabled. Camera obscured' warning message and the master (⚠) warning light or Lane Keeping Assist (🚗) warning light appears on the instrument cluster.

Lane Keeping Assist operates properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

If Lane Keeping Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

- Even though the warning message does not appear on the instrument cluster, Lane Keeping Assist may not properly operate.
- If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained. Therefore, Lane Keeping Assist may not operate properly.



Information

You can check the message in the utility information view of the instrument cluster.

Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist

Lane Keeping Assist may not operate properly or may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The lane is contaminated or difficult to detect because:
 - The lane markings (or road edge) are covered with rain, snow, dirt, oil, etc.
 - The colour of the lane marking (or road edge) is not distinguishable from the road
 - There are markings (or road edges) on the road near the lane or the markings (or road edges) on the road look similar to the lane markings (or road edge)
 - The lane marking (or road edge) is indistinct or damaged
 - The shadow is on the lane marking (or road edge) by a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
- The number of lanes change or the lanes merge
- There are more than two lane markings (or road edges) on the road
- The lane markings (or road edges) are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the intersection
-

- The lane (or road width) is very wide or narrow
- There is a road edge without a lane
- There is a boundary structure in the roadway, such as a tollgate, sidewalk, kerb, etc.
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short or the vehicle in front is covering the lane marking (or road edge)



Information

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Lane Keeping Assist:

- The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle. Do not solely rely on Lane Keeping Assist and drive dangerously.
- The operation of Lane Keeping Assist can be cancelled or not work properly depending on road conditions and surroundings. Always be cautious whilst driving.
- Refer to "Limitations of Lane Keeping Assist" if the lane is not detected properly.
- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Lane Keeping Assist for safety reasons.
- If the vehicle is driven at high speed, the steering wheel will not be controlled. The driver must always follow the speed limit when using Lane Keeping Assist.
- If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Lane Keeping Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Lane Keeping Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- If you attach objects to the steering wheel, steering may not be assisted properly.
- Lane Keeping Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialised.
- Lane Keeping Assist will not operate when:
 - Within a certain period of time after turning on or off the turn signal or hazard warning flasher.
 - The vehicle is not driven in the centre of the lane when Lane Keeping Assist is turned on or right after changing a lane.
 - ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or VSM (Vehicle Stability Management) is activated.
 - The vehicle is driven on a sharp curve.
 - Vehicle speed is below 55 km/h or above 210 km/h.
 - The vehicle makes sharp lane changes.
 - The vehicle brakes suddenly.

BLIND-SPOT COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (BCA)

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect and monitor approaching vehicles in the driver's blind spot area and warn the driver of a possible collision with a warning message and audible warning.

In addition, if there is a risk of collision when driving forward out of a parking space, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist can help avoid a collision by applying the brake and steer.

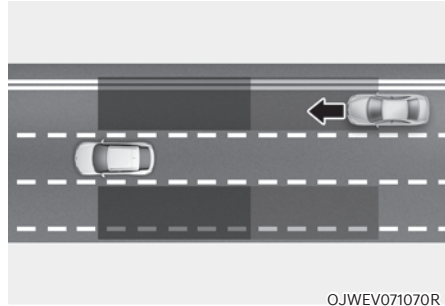


Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and informs the driver that a vehicle is in the blind spot.



CAUTION

The detecting range may vary depending on the speed of your vehicle. Even if there is a vehicle in the blind spot area, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not warn you when you pass by at high speeds.

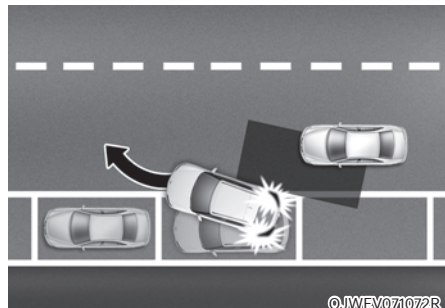


Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist helps detect and informs the driver that a vehicle is approaching at high speed from the blind spot area.



CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on the speed of the vehicle approaching at high speed.



When you are driving forward out of a parking space, if Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist judges that there is a collision risk with an approaching vehicle in the blind spot, it can help avoid collision by applying the brake.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Rear corner radar

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.



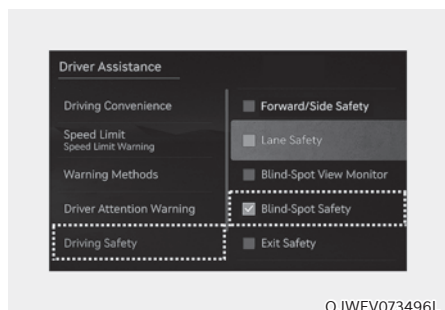
CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensor:

- Never disassemble the rear corner radar or radar assembly, or cause any damage to it.
- If the rear corner radar or near the radar has been damaged or impacted in any way, even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- If the rear corner radars have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Use only genuine Genesis parts to repair the rear bumper where the rear corner radar is located.
- Rear bumper genuine parts with rear corner radars have proven their performance. Replacing or painting the rear bumper may result in poor performance of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist. When the parts need to be replaced or modified, make sure to use qualified products.
- Do not apply licence plate frame or objects, such as a bumper sticker, film or a bumper guard near the rear corner radar.
- If a trailer, carrier, etc., is installed, it may adversely affect the performance of the rear corner radar or Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings

Setting features



Blind-Spot Safety

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Driving Safety → Blind-Spot Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- If 'Blind-Spot Safety' is selected, Blind-Spot Collision Avoidance Assist warns the driver with a warning message, an audible warning depending on the collision risk levels. Braking assist is applied for parking exit depending on the collision risk levels.



When the vehicle is restarted with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist off, the 'Blind-Spot Safety System is Off' message will appear on the instrument cluster.

If you select 'Blind-Spot Safety', warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink for three seconds. In addition, if the vehicle is turned on, when 'Blind-Spot Safety' is selected, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror blinks for three seconds.



WARNING

The driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely. If 'Blind-Spot Safety' is deselected, Blind-spot Collision-Avoidance Assist cannot assist you.



Information

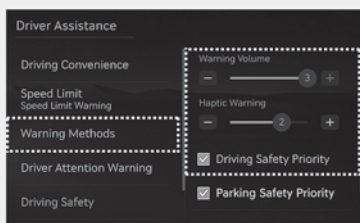
If the vehicle is restarted, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will maintain the last setting.

■ Type A



OJWEV073186L

■ Type B



OJWEV073441L

i Information

- If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- With the Warning Volume in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the Haptic Warning to level 0, the Warning Volume will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.
- With the Haptic Warning deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the Warning Volume to level 0, the Haptic Warning will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.

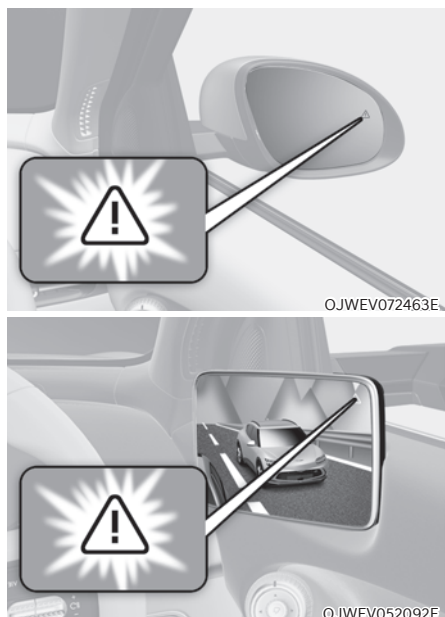
Warning Methods

Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

- Warning Volume: Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' on the infotainment system, and adjust the warning volume.
- Haptic Warning: Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' on the infotainment system, and set or adjust the steering wheel vibration warning.
- Driving Safety Priority: Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Driving Safety Priority' on the infotainment system, the audio volume is reduced whilst a warning sounds.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation

Warning and control



Collision warning

- To warn the driver a vehicle is detected, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) will illuminate. At the same time, a warning message will appear on the instrument cluster.
- Vehicle detection operates when your vehicle speed is above 20 km/h and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 10 km/h.

Collision warning will operate when the turn signal is turned on in the direction of the detected vehicle.

- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror and head-up display (if equipped) will blink. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- When the turn signal is turned off or you move away from the lane, the collision warning will be cancelled and Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will return to vehicle detection state.
- Collision warning will operate when your vehicle speed is above 40 km/h and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 10 km/h.



WARNING

- The detecting range of the rear corner radar is determined by a standard road width, therefore, on a narrow road, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect other vehicles two lanes over and warn you. In contrast, on a wide road, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not be able to detect a vehicle driving in the next lane and may not warn you.
- When the hazard warning flasher is on, the collision warning by the turn signal will not operate.



Information

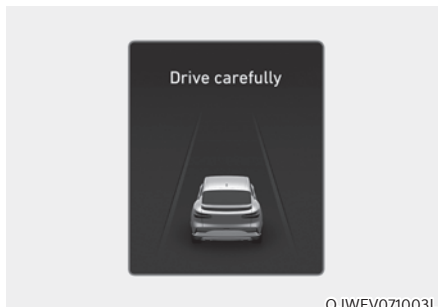
- If the driver's seat is on the right side, the collision warning may occur when you turn right. Maintain a proper distance with the vehicles in the right lane.
- The images and colours in the instrument cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the settings menu.



OJWEV071146R

Collision-avoidance assist (whilst departing)

- To warn the driver of a collision, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and a warning message will appear on the instrument cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound, warning light on the head-up display (if equipped) will blink and the steering wheel will vibrate.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h and the speed of the vehicle in the blind spot area is above 5 km/h.
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with the vehicle in the blind spot area.



OJWEV071003L

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.
For your safety, the driver should press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist's warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy. Adjust the volume inside your vehicle appropriately and always be careful.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid collision.
- When Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating, braking control by the function will automatically cancel when the driver excessively presses the accelerator pedal or sharply steers the vehicle.
- During Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
- Even if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic steering and braking will function normally.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions.

- Driver should maintain control of the vehicle at all times. Do not depend on Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist. Maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never operate Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, animal, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.



WARNING

The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There will only be a warning when:

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function

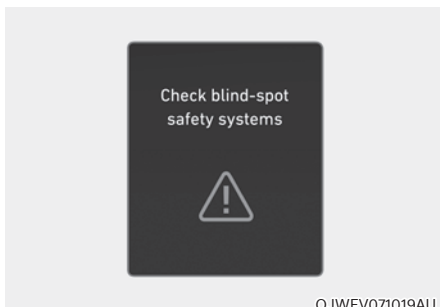


CAUTION

- Depending on the condition of the vehicle, powered two-wheeler pedestrian and cyclist in front and the surroundings, the speed range to operate Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may reduce. Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may only warn the driver, or it may not operate.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate under certain conditions by judging the risk level based on the condition of the oncoming vehicle, driving direction, speed and surroundings.
- When a collision with a surrounding vehicle is expected, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will not assist you with steering but only warn the you of a collision.

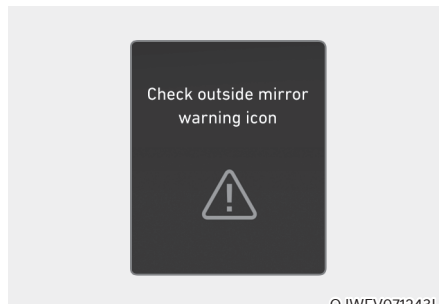
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction



OJWEV071019AU

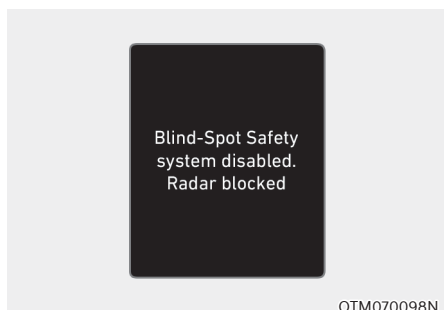
When Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the 'Check blind-spot safety system(s)' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



OJWEV071243L

When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the 'Check outside mirror warning icon' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor are covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detection performance, temporarily limiting or disabling the Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs the 'Blind-Spot Safety system(s) disabled. Camera obscured' or the 'Blind-Spot Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when such foreign material or trailer, etc., is removed, and then the vehicle is restarted.

If Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

- Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate.
- Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where any objects are not detected right after the vehicle is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material right after the vehicle is turned on.



CAUTION

Turn off Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist to install or remove a trailer, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist when finished.

Limitations of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered with snow, rain, dirt, etc.
- The temperature around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is high or low due to surrounding environment
- The front corner radar or rear corner radar is blocked by other vehicles, walls or pillars
- Driving on a highway (or motorway) ramp
- The road pavement (or the peripheral ground) abnormally contains metallic components (for example, possibly due to subway construction)
- There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as sound barriers, guardrails, central dividers, entry barriers, street lamps, signs, tunnels, walls, etc. (including double structures)
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- The lane markings (or road edge) are covered with rain, snow, dirt, oil, etc.
- The colour of the lane marking (or road edge) is not distinguishable from the road
- There are markings (or road edges) on the road near the lane or the markings (or road edges) on the road look similar to the lane markings (or road edge)
- The shadow is on the lane marking (or road edge) by a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
- The lane number increases or decreases, or the lane markings (or road edges) are crossing
- There are more than two lane markings (or road edges) on the road
- The lane markings (or road edges) are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines, such as a construction area
- There are road markings, such as zigzag lanes, crosswalk markings and road signs
- The lane suddenly disappears, such as at the intersection
- The lane (or road width) is very wide or narrow
- There is a road edge without a lane
- The distance to the front vehicle is extremely short or the vehicle in front is covering the lane marking (or road edge)
- The other vehicle drives very close behind your vehicle, or the other vehicle passes by your vehicle in close proximity
- The speed of the other vehicle is very fast that it passes by your vehicle in a short time
- Your vehicle passes by the other vehicle
- Your vehicle changes lane
- Your vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated
- The vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you, or when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane from you
- A trailer, carrier or other attachment is installed around the rear corner radar

- The bumper around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is covered with objects, such as a bumper sticker, bumper guard, bike rack, etc.
- The bumper around the front corner radar or rear corner radar is impacted, damaged or the radar is out of position
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.

Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly when the following objects are detected:

- A motorcycle or bicycle is detected
- A vehicle such as a flat trailer is detected
- A big vehicle such as a bus or truck is detected
- A moving obstacle such as a pedestrian, animal, shopping cart or a baby stroller is detected
- A vehicle with low height such as a sports car is detected

Steering and braking control may not work, driver's attention is required in the following circumstances:

- The vehicle severely vibrates whilst driving over a bumpy road, uneven road or concrete patch
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tyre pressure is low or a tyre is damaged
- The braking system has been modified
- The vehicle makes abrupt lane changes



WARNING

- Driving on a curved road



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on a curved road. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane.

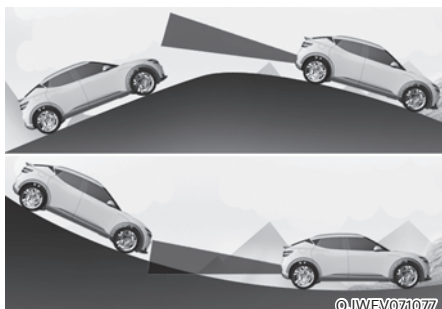
Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on a curved road. The function may recognise a vehicle in the same lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

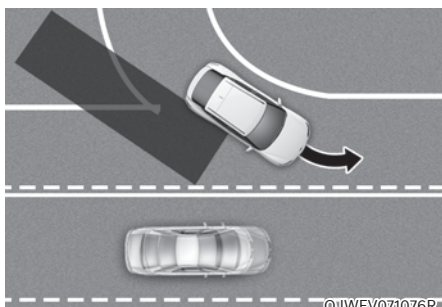
- Driving on an inclined road



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving on a slope. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane or may incorrectly detect the ground or structure.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

- Driving where the road is merging/dividing



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving where the road merges or divides. The function may not detect the vehicle in the next lane.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

- Driving where the heights of the lanes are different



Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly when driving where the heights of the lanes are different. The function may not detect the vehicle on a road with different lane heights (underpass joining section, grade separated intersections, etc.).

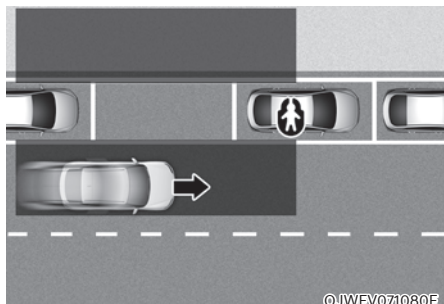
Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.



WARNING

- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, make sure that you turn off **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist**.
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist** may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- **Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist** may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialised.

SAFE EXIT ASSIST (SEA)



After the vehicle stops, when an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected after a passenger opens the door, Safe Exit Assist will warn the driver with a warning message and an audible warning to help prevent a collision.



In addition, when the electronic child safety lock button is in the LOCK position and an approaching vehicle from the rear area is detected, the electronic child safety lock button will not unlock even if the driver presses the button to prevent the rear doors from opening.



CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on the speed of the approaching vehicle.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Rear corner radar

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

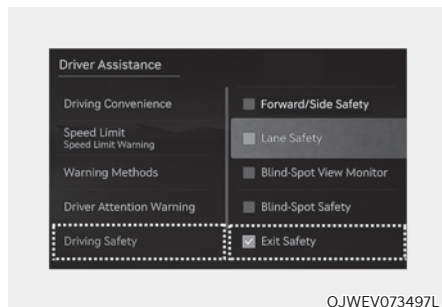


CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radars, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.

Safe Exit Assist settings

Setting features



Safe Exit Assist

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Driving Safety → Exit Safety' from the Settings menu to turn on Safe Exit Assist and deselect to turn off the function.



WARNING

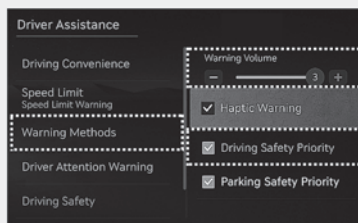
The driver should always be aware that unexpected and sudden situations can occur. If 'Exit Safety' is deselected, Safe Exit Assist cannot assist you.



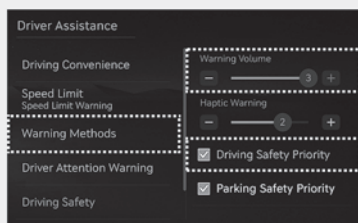
Information

If the vehicle is restarted, Safe Exit Assist will maintain the last setting.

■ Type A



■ Type B



Warning Methods

Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

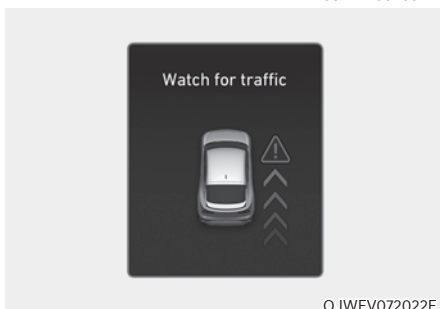
- **Warning Volume:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' on the infotainment system, and adjust the warning volume. Even if you set the warning volume to 0, Warning volume will keep its volume in 1.
- **Driving Safety Priority:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Driving Safety Priority' on the infotainment system, the audio volume is reduced whilst a warning sounds.

i Information

- If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

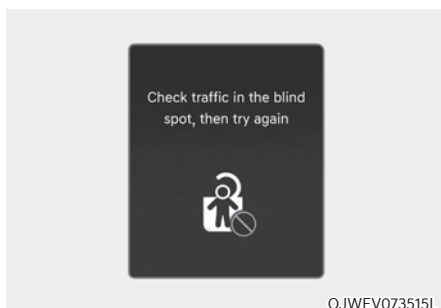
Safe Exit Assist operation

Warning and control



Collision warning when exiting vehicle

- When an approaching vehicle from the rear is detected at the moment a door is opened, the 'Watch (out) for traffic' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound. The warning light will also blink on the outside rearview mirror or digital side mirror (if equipped).
- Safe Exit Assist will warn the driver when your vehicle speed is below 3 km/h, and the speed of the approaching vehicle from the rear is above 6 km/h.



OJWEV073515L

Safe Exit Assist linked with Electronic child safety lock

- The warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and 'Check traffic in the blind spot, then try again' warning message will appear on the cluster.
- Safe Exit Assist will warn the driver when vehicle speed is below 3 km/h and the speed of the approaching vehicle from the rear is above 6 km/h.

Information

For more details on electric child safety lock  button, refer to "Electronic child safety lock" section in chapter 5.



CAUTION

If the driver presses the electronic child lock  button again within 10 seconds after the warning message appears, Safe Exit Assist judges that the driver has unlocked the doors acknowledging the rear status. The electronic child safety lock will turn off (button indicator OFF) and the rear doors will unlock. Always check the surroundings before turning off the electronic child safety lock button.



Information

If a rear door is opened from the outside, it will open regardless of Safe Exit Assist operation.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Safe Exit Assist:

- For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Safe Exit Assist warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Safe Exit Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- Safe Exit Assist does not operate in all situations or cannot prevent all collisions.

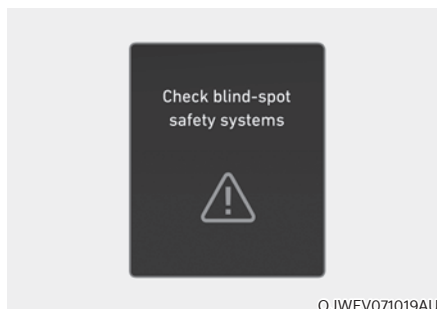
- Safe Exit Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions. Always check vehicle surroundings.
- The driver and passengers are responsible for accidents that occurs whilst exiting the vehicle. Always check the surroundings before you exit the vehicle.
- Never deliberately operate Safe Exit Assist. Doing so may lead to serious injury or death.
- Safe Exit Assist does not operate if there is a problem with Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist. The warning message of Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist will appear when:
 - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist sensor or the sensor surrounding is polluted or covered
 - Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist fails to warn passengers or falsely warn passengers

Information

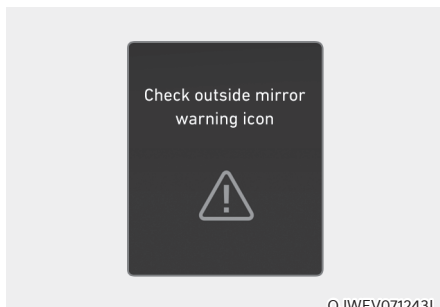
After the vehicle is turned off, Safe Exit Assist operates approximately for 3 minutes, but turns off immediately if the doors are locked.

Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations

Safe Exit Assist malfunction



When Safe Exit Assist is not working properly, the 'Check blind-spot safety system(s)' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master () warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



OJWEV071243L

When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the 'Check outside mirror warning icon' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Safe Exit Assist disabled



OTM070098N

When the rear bumper around the rear corner radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Safe Exit Assist.

If this occurs, the 'Blind-Spot Safety system(s) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message will appear on the cluster.

Safe Exit Assist will operate properly when such foreign material or trailer, etc., is removed, and then the vehicle is restarted.

If Safe Exit Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

- Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Safe Exit Assist may not properly operate.
- Safe Exit Assist may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where any objects are not detected right after the vehicle is turned on, or when the detecting sensor is blocked with foreign material right after the vehicle is turned on.



CAUTION

Turn off Safe Exit Assist to install or remove a trailer, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on Safe Exit Assist when finished.

Limitations of Safe Exit Assist

Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Getting out of the vehicle where trees or grass are overgrown
- Getting out of the vehicle where the road is wet
- The approaching vehicle is very fast or very slow



Information

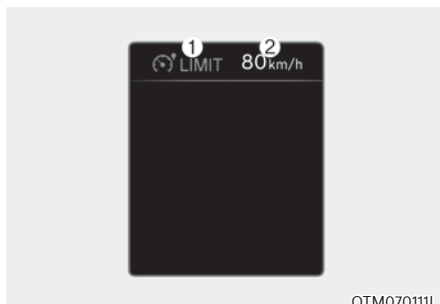
For more details on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.



WARNING

- Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- Safe Exit Assist may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialised.
- If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the radar is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained. Therefore, Safe Exit Assist may not operate properly.

MANUAL SPEED LIMIT ASSIST (MSLA)



OTM070111L

(1) Speed Limit indicator

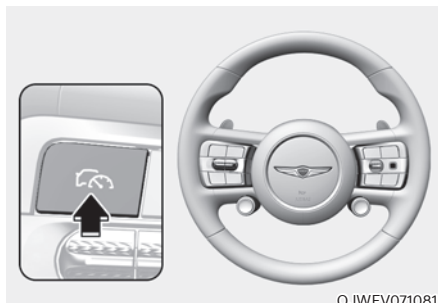
(2) Set speed

You can set the speed limit when you do not want to drive over a specific speed.

If you drive over the preset speed limit, Manual Speed Limit Assist operates (set speed limit will blink and chime will sound) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

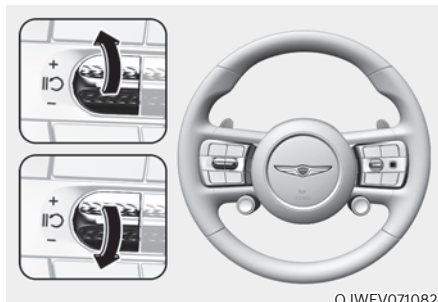
Manual Speed Limit Assist operation

Setting speed limit



OJWEV071081

1. Press and hold Driving Assist (⚡) button at the desired speed. The Speed Limit (LIMIT) indicator will illuminate on the cluster.



OJWEV071082

2. Push the + switch up or - switch down, and release it at the desired speed.
Push the + switch up or - switch down and hold it. The speed will increase or decrease to the nearest multiple of ten at first, and then increase or decrease by 10 km/h.



OTM070203L

3. The set speed limit will be displayed on the cluster.

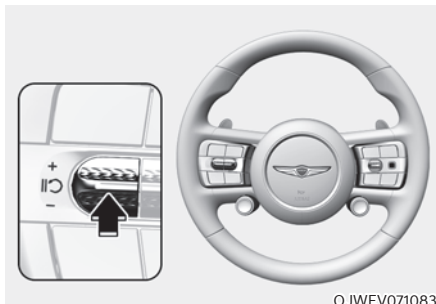
If you would like to drive over the preset speed limit, press the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point to activate the kickdown function.

The set speed limit will blink and chime will sound until you return the vehicle speed within the speed limit.

Information

When the accelerator pedal is not pressed beyond the pressure point, vehicle speed will maintain within the speed limit.

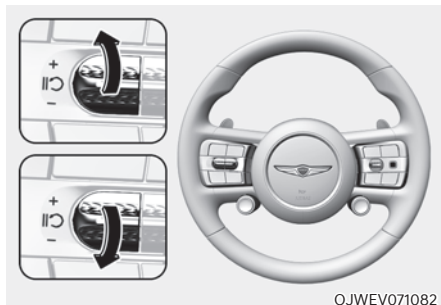
Temporarily pausing Manual Speed Limit Assist



OJWEV071083

Press the   switch to temporarily pause the set speed limit. The set speed limit will turn off but the Speed Limit ( LIMIT) indicator will stay on.

Resuming Manual Speed Limit Assist



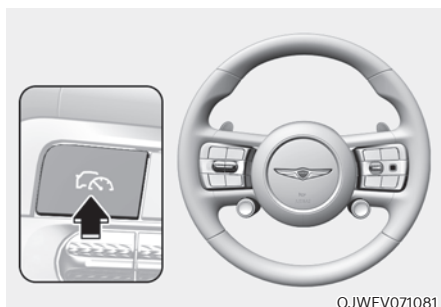
OJWEV071082

To resume Manual Speed Limit Assist after the function was paused, operate the +, -, **RES** switch.

If you push the + switch up or - switch down, vehicle speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.

If you press the **RES** switch, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.

Turning off Manual Speed Limit Assist



OJWEV071081

Press the Driving Assist (**DRIVE ASSIST**) button to turn Manual Speed Limit Assist off. The Speed Limit (**SPEED LIMIT**) indicator will go off.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Manual Speed Limit Assist:

- Always set the vehicle speed under the applicable speed limit.
- Keep Manual Speed Limit Assist off when the function is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed. Check that the Speed Limit (**SPEED LIMIT**) indicator is off.
- Manual Speed Limit Assist does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive safely and should always be aware of unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMIT ASSIST (ISLA)

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist uses information from the detected road sign and navigation system to inform the driver of the speed limit and additional information of the current road. Also, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist helps the driver to maintain within the speed limit of the road.



CAUTION

- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly if the function is used in other countries.
- If a navigation is applied to your vehicle, the navigation needs to be regularly updated for Intelligent Speed Limit Assist to operate properly.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Front view camera

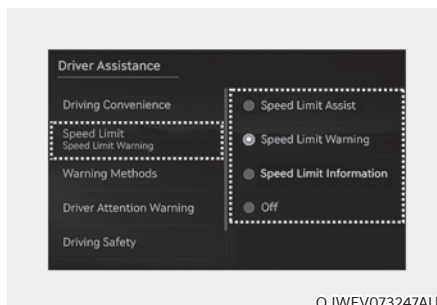
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.



CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings *Speed Limit*



©JWEV073247AU

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Speed Limit' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

- **Speed Limit Assist:** Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver of speed limit and additional road signs, and warn the driver if the vehicle speed is faster than the speed limit. In addition, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver to change set speed of Manual Speed Limit Assist and/or Smart Cruise Control to help the driver stay within the speed limit.
- **Speed Limit Warning:** Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver of speed limit. In addition, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will warn the driver when the vehicle is driven faster than the speed limit.
- **Speed Limit Information:** Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will inform the driver of speed limit and additional road signs.
- **Off:** Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will turn off. The  warning light is displayed.



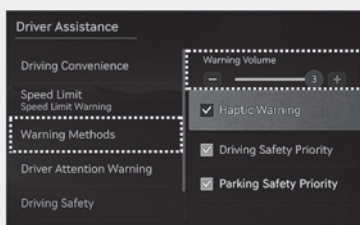
WARNING

When the vehicle is restarted, Speed Limit Warning will automatically turn on.

For your safety, only change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.

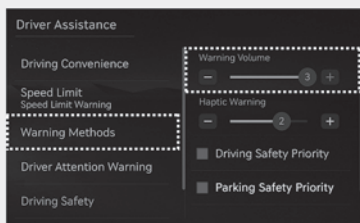
Warning Methods

■ Type A



OJWEV073522L

■ Type B



OJWEV073449L

The Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

- Warning Volume: Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system to change the warning volume.



Information

If you change the Warning methods, the Warning methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.



CAUTION

The setting of the Warning Volume applies to all functions of Intelligent Speed Limit Assist.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation

Warning and control

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will warn and control the vehicle by 'Displaying speed limit', 'Warning overspeed', 'Changing set speed' and 'Set Speed Auto Change'.



OJWEV072249AU

Displaying speed limit

Speed limit information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Information

- If speed limit information of the road cannot be recognised, '---' sign will be displayed. Please refer to "Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limit Assist" if the road signs are difficult to recognise.
- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist provides additional road sign information in addition to speed limit. The additional road sign information provided may vary according to your country.
- The images and colours in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.



OJWEV071250L

Warning overspeed

When driving at a speed higher than the displayed speed limit, the red speed limit indicator will blink and warning sounds.

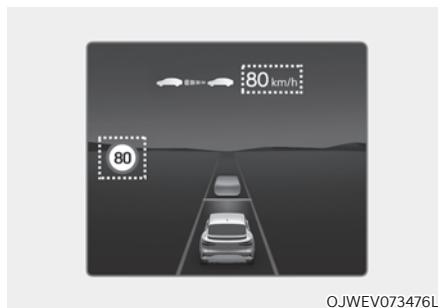


ORG3EV072032AU

OJWEV072457L

Changing set speed

If the speed limit of the road changes during the operation of Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control, an arrow in the direction of up or down is displayed to inform the driver that the set speed needs to be changed. At this time, the driver can change the set speed according to the speed limit by using the + or - switch on the steering wheel.



OJWEV073476L

Set Speed Auto Change (Navigation equipped)

Manual Speed Limit Assist or Smart Cruise Control assists the vehicle to adjust its speed according to the speed limit. When the cruising speed is set as same as the speed limit, the vehicle automatically adjusts its speed if the speed limit changes. The function operates on the road which has a speed limit of 70 km/h or higher. When the function is active, the cruising speed on the instrument cluster appears in green.



WARNING

- Even after changing the set speed according to the speed limit of the road, the vehicle can still be driven over the speed limit. If necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed.
- If the speed limit of the road is under 30 km/h, the set speed change function will not work.

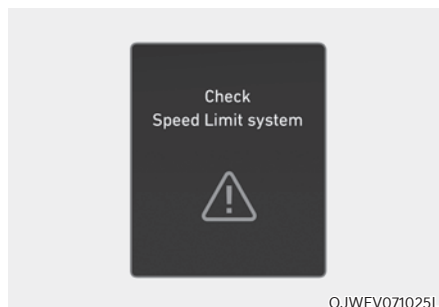


Information

- For more details on Manual Speed Limit Assist operation, refer to "Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA)" section in this chapter.
- For more details on Smart Cruise Control operation, refer to "Smart Cruise Control (SCC)" section in this chapter.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations

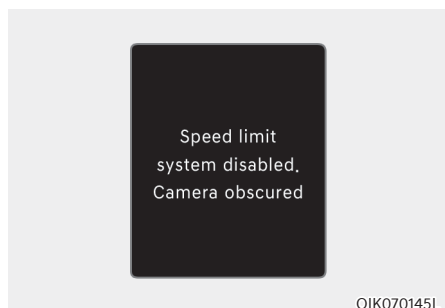
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction



OJWEV071025L

When Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is not working properly, the 'Check speed limit system' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light and the speed limit (Ⓢ) warning light will appear on the instrument cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist disabled



When the front windscreen where the front view camera is located is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Intelligent Speed Limit Assist. If this occurs, the 'Speed limit system disabled. Camera obscured' warning message and the speed limit  warning light will appear on the instrument cluster.

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.

If Intelligent Speed Limit Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

- **Even though the warning message or warning light does not appear on the instrument cluster, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not properly operate.**
- **If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained. Therefore, Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly.**

Limitations of Intelligent Speed Limit Assist

Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The road sign is contaminated or indistinguishable
 - The road sign is difficult to see due to bad weather, such as rain, snow, fog, etc.
 - The road sign is not clear or damaged
 - The road sign is partially obscured by surrounding objects or shadow
 - A road sign near the road you are driving is detected
- The road signs do not conform to the standards below:
 - The text or picture on the road sign is different from the standard
 - The road sign is installed between the main line and the exit road or between diverging roads
 - There is no conditional road signs on the road sign located on the exit road
 - A sign is attached to another vehicle
- The distance between the vehicle and the road signs is too far
- The vehicle encounters illuminant road signs

- Intelligent Speed Limit Assist incorrectly recognises numbers or pictures in the street signs or other signs as the speed limit
- A road sign near the road you are driving is detected
- Multiple signs are installed close together
- The minimum speed limit sign is misrecognise
- The minimum speed limit sign is on the road
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel or passing under a bridge
- Headlamps are not used or the brightness of the headlamps are weak at night or in the tunnel
- Road signs are difficult to recognise due to the reflection of sunlight, street lights, or oncoming vehicles
- The navigation information or GPS information contain errors.
- The driver does not follow the guide of the navigation.
- The driver is driving a new road that is not in the navigation system yet.
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Driving on a road that is sharply curved or continuously curved
- Driving through speed bumps, or driving up and down or left to right on steep inclines
- The vehicle is shaking heavily
- Driving on a newly opened road



WARNING

- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist is a supplemental function that helps the driver to comply with the speed limit on the road, and may not display the correct speed limit or control the driving speed properly.**
- **Always set the vehicle speed to the speed limit in your country.**
- **Intelligent Speed Limit Assist may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialised.**



Information

For more details on the limitations of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

DRIVER ATTENTION WARNING (DAW)

Inattentive Driving Warning

Driver Attention Warning can help determine the driver's attention level by analyzing driving pattern and driving time whilst the vehicle is driven. Driver Attention Warning will recommend a break when the driver's attention level falls below a certain level.

Leading vehicle departure alert function

Leading Vehicle Departure Alert function will inform the driver when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to help detect driving patterns and front vehicle departure whilst vehicle is being driven.

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

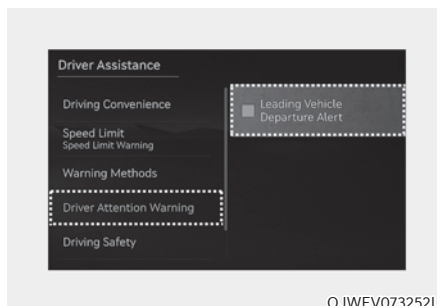


CAUTION

- Always keep the front view camera in good condition to maintain optimal performance of Driver Attention Warning.
- For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

Driver Attention Warning settings

Setting features



Leading Vehicle Departure Alert

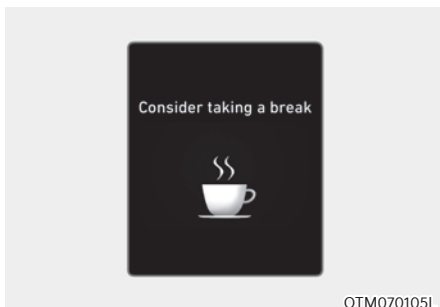
With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Driver Attention Warning' and then enable Leading vehicle departure alert in the infotainment system to use the function.

- If 'Leading Vehicle Departure Alert' is selected, the function will inform the driver when a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop.

Driver Attention Warning operation

Inattentive Driving Warning

The basic function of Driver Attention Warning is to warn the driver 'Consider taking a break'.



Consider taking a break

The 'Consider taking a break' message will appear and the inattentive driving (☹️) warning light will blink on the cluster with a warning sound to suggest that the driver take a break, when the driver's attention level is below a certain level.

- Driver Attention Warning will not suggest a break when the total driving time is shorter than 4 minutes or 4 minutes has not passed after the last break was suggested.



CAUTION

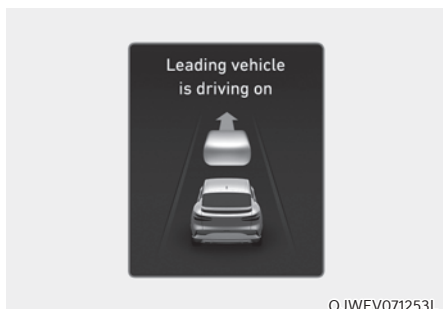
- Driver Attention Warning may suggest a break depending on the driver's driving pattern or habits, even if the driver doesn't feel fatigue.
- Driver Attention Warning is a supplemental function and may not be able to determine whether the driver is inattentive.
- The driver who feels fatigued should take a break at a safe location, even though there is no break suggestion by Driver Attention Warning.



WARNING

For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.

Leading vehicle departure alert function



OJWEV071253L

When a detected vehicle in front departs from a stop, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert will inform the driver by displaying the 'Leading vehicle is driving on' message on the cluster and an audible warning will sound.



WARNING

- If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle.



CAUTION

- Leading Vehicle Departure Alert is a supplemental function and may not alert the driver whenever the front vehicle departs from a stop.
- Always check the front of the vehicle and road conditions before departure.

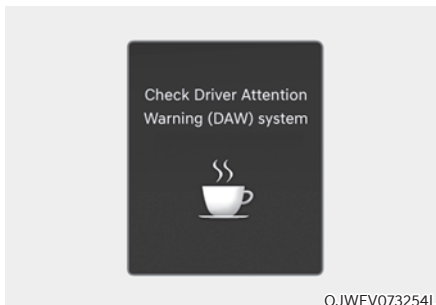


Information

The images and colours in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.

Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations

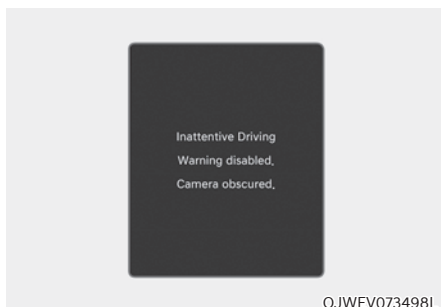
Driver Attention Warning malfunction



OJWEV073254L

When Driver Attention Warning is not working properly, the 'Check Driver Attention Warning (DAW) system' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light and the inattentive driving (☕) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Driver Attention Warning disabled



When the front windscreen where the front view camera is located is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Driver Attention Warning.

If this occurs, the 'Inattentive Driving Warning disabled. Camera obscured' warning message, the master (⚠) warning light and the inattentive driving (🚦) warning light will appear on the instrument cluster. Driver Attention Warning will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed. If Driver Attention Warning does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that your vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

- Driver Attention Warning may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain) where any objects are not detected right after turning ON the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the camera is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained. Therefore, Driver Attention Warning may not operate properly.

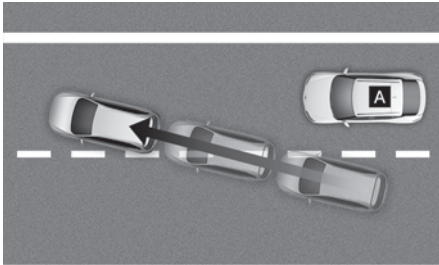
Limitations of Driver Attention Warning

Driver Attention Warning may not work properly in the following situations:

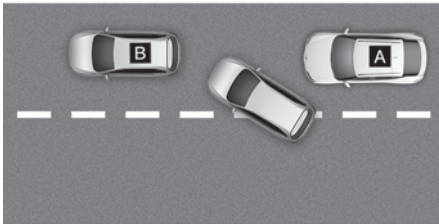
- The vehicle is driven violently
- The vehicle intentionally crosses over lanes frequently
- The vehicle is controlled by Driver Assistance system, such as Lane Keeping Assist
- Lanes are blurred or erased

Leading vehicle departure alert function

- When the vehicle cuts in



©JWEV071084R

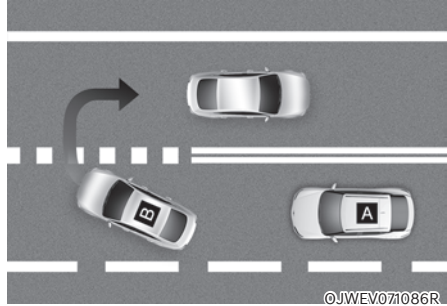


©JWEV071085R

[A]: Your vehicle, [B]: Front vehicle

If a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, Leading Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When the vehicle ahead sharply steers

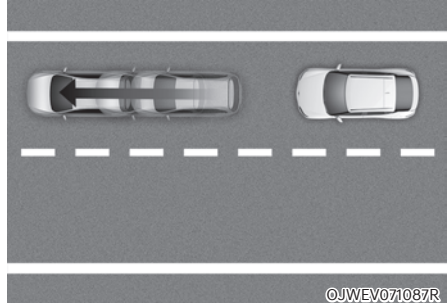


©JWEV071086R

[A]: Your vehicle, [B]: Front vehicle

If the vehicle in front makes a sharp turn, such as to turn left or right or make a U-turn, etc., Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When the vehicle ahead abruptly departs



©JWEV071087R

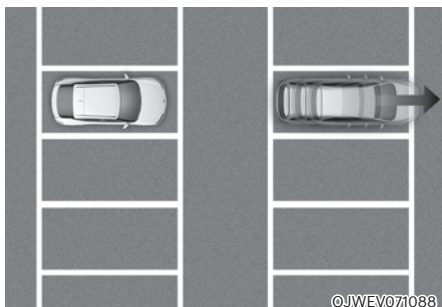
If the vehicle in front abruptly departs, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When a pedestrian or bicycle is between you and the vehicle ahead



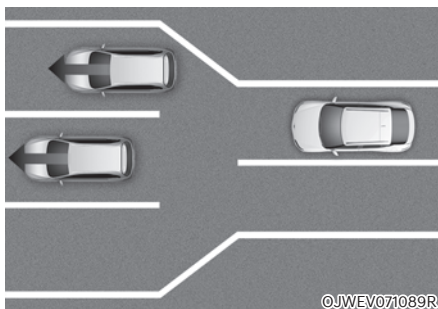
If there is a pedestrian(s) or bicycle(s) in between you and the vehicle in front, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.

- When in a parking lot



If a vehicle parked in front drives away from you, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may alert you that the parked vehicle is driving away.

- When driving at a tollgate or intersection, etc.



If you pass a tollgate or intersection with lots of vehicles or you drive where lanes are merged or divided frequently, Leading Vehicle Departure Alert may not operate properly.



WARNING

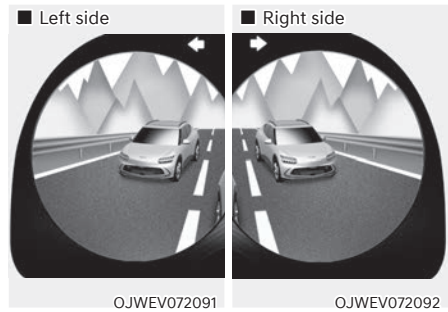
Driver Attention Warning may not operate for about 15 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the front view camera is initialised.



Information

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

BLIND-SPOT VIEW MONITOR (BVM)



Blind-Spot View Monitor displays the rear blind spot area of the vehicle in the cluster when the turn signal is turned on to help safely change lanes.

Detecting sensor



[1], [2]: Wide-side view camera
(camera located at bottom of the mirror)

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Blind-Spot View Monitor settings

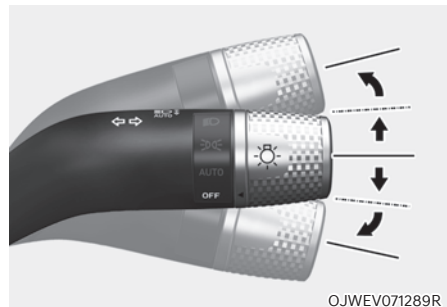
Setting features

Blind-Spot View

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Driving Safety → Blind-Spot View Monitor' from the Settings menu to turn on Blind-Spot View Monitor and deselect to turn off the function.

Blind-Spot View Monitor operation

Operating switch



Turn signal switch

Blind-Spot View Monitor will turn on and off when the turn signal is turned on and off.

Blind-Spot View Monitor

Operating conditions

When the left or right side turn signal turns on, the image in that direction is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Off conditions

- When the turn signal turns off, the image on the instrument cluster will turn off.
- When the hazard warning flasher is on, Blind-Spot View Monitor will turn off, regardless of the turn signal status.
- When other important warning is displayed on the instrument cluster, Blind-Spot View Monitor may turn off.

Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction

When Blind-Spot View Monitor is not working properly, or the cluster display flickers, or the camera image does not display properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

- **The image shown on the cluster may differ from the actual distance of the object. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.**
- **Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Blind-Spot View Monitor may not operate properly.**

SMART CRUISE CONTROL (SCC)

Smart Cruise Control is designed to help detect the vehicle ahead and help maintain the desired speed and minimum distance between the vehicle ahead.

Overtaking Acceleration Assist

Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, if the function judges that the driver is determined to overtake the vehicle in front, acceleration will be assisted.

Based on Driving Style

Smart Cruise Control will operate based on driving style, such as inter-vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Front view camera, [2]: Front radar
[3]: Front corner radar

The front view camera and front radar are used as a detecting sensor to help detect vehicles in front.

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

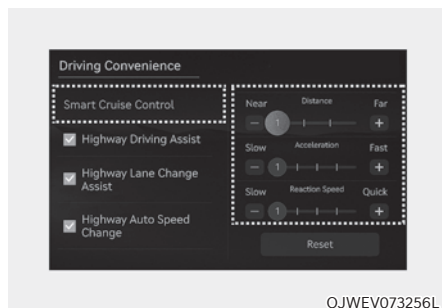


CAUTION

Always keep the front view camera and front radar in good condition to maintain optimal performance of Smart Cruise Control.

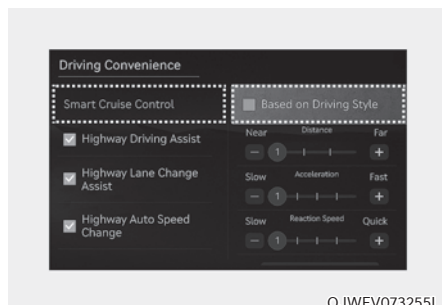
For more details on the precautions of the front view camera and front radar, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

Smart Cruise Control settings



Smart Cruise Control

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Driving Convenience → Smart Cruise Control' from the infotainment system to change the vehicle distance, the acceleration, and the reaction speed manually.



Based on Driving Style

With the vehicle on, if 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Driving Convenience → Smart Cruise Control → Based on Driving Style' is selected from the infotainment system, Smart Cruise Control will operate based on the driver's driving style, such as vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed.

i Information

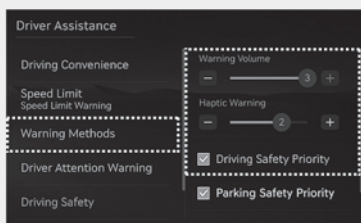
- If the 'Based on Driving Style' is supported, you can select it from the 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Driving Convenience → Smart Cruise Control'.
- Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating with 'Driving Style Settings' selected, if you press and hold the Vehicle Distance () button, 'Driving Style Settings' will change deactivated. If you press and hold the Vehicle Distance () button again, 'Driving Style Setting' will be activated.
- The driver's driving style continuously learned and reflected from whilst the driver drives the vehicle.
- When driver's driving style is deactivated, the driver's driving style such as vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed will maintain in the same stage as Based on Driving Style.
- Even if the steps of the driver's driving style such as vehicle distance, acceleration, reaction speed displayed when the Base on Driving Style is activated or deactivated are the same, the driving style to be controlled may be differently.

■ Type A



OJWEV073186L

■ Type B



OJWEV073441L

i Information

- If you change the **Warning Methods**, **Warning Methods** of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- **Warning Method** will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- With the **Warning Volume** in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the **Haptic Warning** to level 0, the **Warning Volume** will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.
- With the **Haptic Warning** deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the **Warning Volume** to level 0, the **Haptic Warning** will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.

Warning Methods

Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

- **Warning Volume:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' on the infotainment system, and adjust the warning volume. Even if you set the warning volume to 0, Warning volume will keep its volume in 1.
- **Haptic Warning:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' on the infotainment system, and set or adjust the steering wheel vibration warning.
- **Driving Safety Priority:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Driving Safety Priority' on the infotainment system, the audio volume is reduced whilst a warning sounds.

Smart Cruise Control operation

Operating conditions

Basic function

Smart Cruise Control operates when the following conditions are satisfied.

- The gear is in D (Drive)
- Your vehicle speed is within the operating speed range
 - 10-180 km/h: when there is no vehicle in front
 - 0-180 km/h: when there is a vehicle in front
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS (Anti-Lock Braking System) is on

Smart Cruise Control does not operate in the following conditions.

- The driver's door is closed
- Your vehicle is in power down mode (Ⓜ indicator on)
- Parking brake is applied
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or ABS (Anti-Lock Braking System) is controlling the vehicle
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist brake control is operating
- Remote Smart Parking Assist brake control is operating (if equipped)



Information

At a stop, if there is a vehicle in front of your vehicle, Smart Cruise Control turns on when the brake pedal is pressed.

Overtaking Acceleration Assist

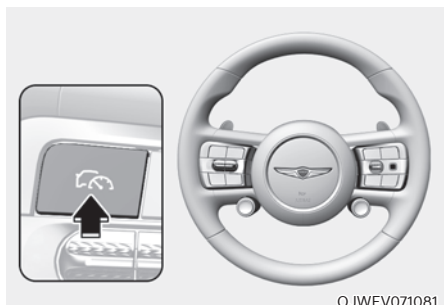
Overtaking Acceleration Assist operates when the turn signal indicator is turned on to the right (right-hand drive) whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, and the following conditions are satisfied:

- Your vehicle speed is above 60 km/h
- The hazard warning flasher is off
- A vehicle is detected in front of your vehicle
- Deceleration is not needed to maintain distance with the vehicle in front



WARNING

- **When the turn signal indicator is turned on to the right (right-hand drive) whilst there is a vehicle ahead, the vehicle may accelerate temporarily. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **Regardless of the driving direction in your country, Overtaking Acceleration Assist will operate when the conditions are satisfied. When using the function in countries with different driving direction, always check the road conditions at all times.**

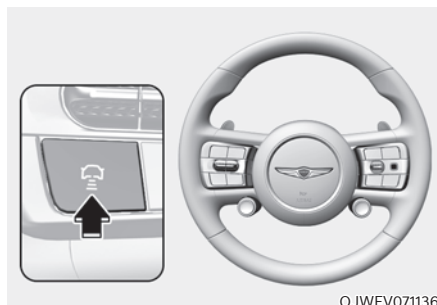


Turning on Smart Cruise Control

- Press the Driving Assist () button to turn on Smart Cruise Control. The speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.
- If there is no vehicle in front of you, the set speed will be maintained, but if there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead. If the vehicle ahead accelerates, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the set speed.

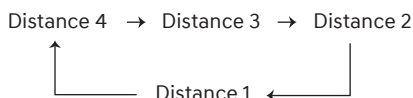
Information

If your vehicle speed is between 0-30 km/h when you press the Driving Assist () button, the Smart Cruise Control speed will be set to 30 km/h.



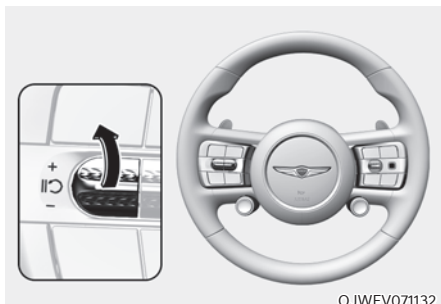
Setting vehicle distance

Each time the button is pressed, the headway changes as follows:



Information

- If you drive at 90 km/h, the distance is maintained as follows:
 - Distance 4 - approximately 53 m
 - Distance 3 - approximately 40 m
 - Distance 2 - approximately 30 m
 - Distance 1 - approximately 25 m
- The distance is set to the last set distance when the vehicle is restarted, or when Smart Cruise Control was temporarily cancelled.



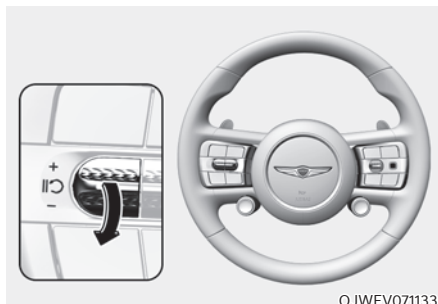
Increasing set speed

- Push the + switch up and release it immediately. The set speed will increase by 1 km/h each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the + switch up and hold it whilst monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The set speed will increase by 10 km/h each time the switch is operated in this manner. Release the switch when the desired speed is shown, and the vehicle will accelerate to that speed. You can increase the set speed to 180 km/h.



WARNING

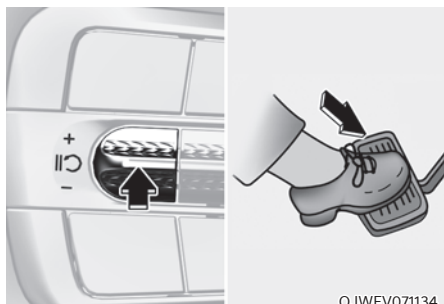
Check the driving condition before using the + switch. Driving speed may sharply increase when you push up and hold the + switch.



Decreasing set speed

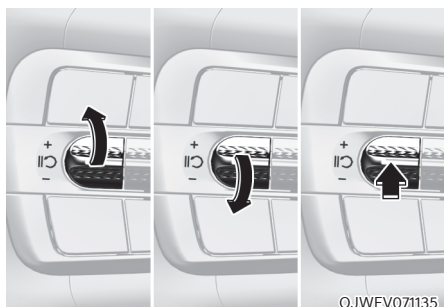
- Push the - switch down and release it immediately. The set speed will decrease by 1 km/h each time the switch is operated in this manner.
- Push the - switch down and hold it whilst monitoring the set speed on the cluster. The set speed will decrease by 10 km/h each time the switch is operated in this manner.

Release the switch at the speed you want to maintain. You can decrease the set speed to 30 km/h.



Temporarily cancelling Smart Cruise Control

Press the  switch or press the brake pedal to temporarily cancel Smart Cruise Control.



Resuming Smart Cruise Control

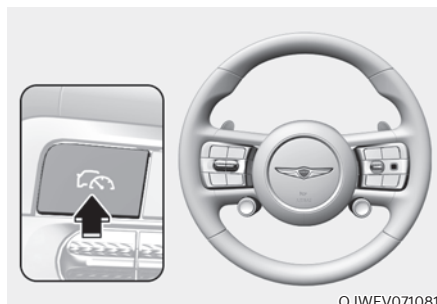
To resume Smart Cruise Control after the function was cancelled, operate the +, - or  switch.

If you push the + switch up or - switch down, vehicle speed will be set to the current speed on the cluster.

If you push the  switch, vehicle speed will resume to the preset speed.

WARNING

Check the driving condition before using the  switch. Driving speed may sharply increase or decrease when you press the  switch.



Turning off Smart Cruise Control

Press the Driving Assist () button to turn Smart Cruise Control off.

Information

If your vehicle is equipped with Manual Speed Limit Assist, press and hold the Driving Assist () button to turn off Smart Cruise Control. However Manual Speed Limit Assist will turn on.

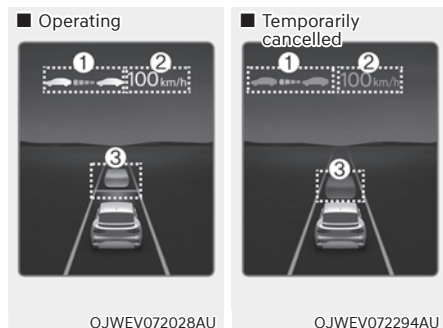
WARNING

Do not use the switches and buttons at the same time. Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly.

Display and control

You can see the status of the Smart Cruise Control operation in the Driving Assist view on the cluster. Refer to "View modes" section in chapter 4.

Smart Cruise Control will be displayed as below depending on the status of the function.



Basic function

- When operating
 - (1) Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the selected distance level
 - (2) Set speed
 - (3) Whether there is a vehicle ahead and the target vehicle distance
- When temporarily cancelled
 - (1) Your vehicle (grey)
 - (2) Previous set speed (grey)
 - (3) Vehicle ahead and distance level (grey)

i Information

- The distance of the front vehicle on the cluster is displayed according to the actual distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.
- The target distance may vary according to the vehicle speed and the set distance level. If the vehicle speed is low, even though the vehicle distance have changed, the change of the target vehicle distance may be small.
- The images and colours in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.



Accelerating temporarily

If you want to speed up temporarily without altering the set speed whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, press the accelerator pedal. Whilst the accelerator pedal is pressed, the set speed, distance level and target distance will blink on the cluster.

However, if the accelerator pedal is pressed insufficiently, the vehicle may decelerate.

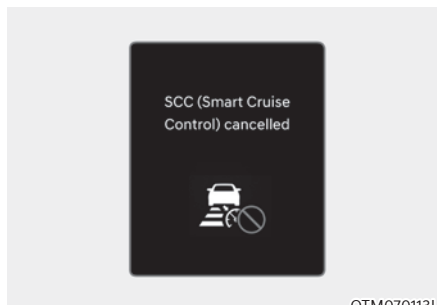
⚠ WARNING

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed and distance is not controlled automatically even if there is a vehicle in front of you.



Based on Driving Style operating

When Based on driving style is operating, the vehicle distance level and target distance will be displayed white based on the driving style.



Temporarily cancelling Smart Cruise Control

Smart Cruise Control will be temporarily cancelled automatically when:

- The vehicle speed is above 190 km/h
- The vehicle is stopped for a certain period of time
- The accelerator pedal is continuously pressed for a certain period of time
- The conditions for the Smart Cruise Control to operate is not satisfied

If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled automatically, the 'SCC (Smart Cruise Control) cancelled' warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver.



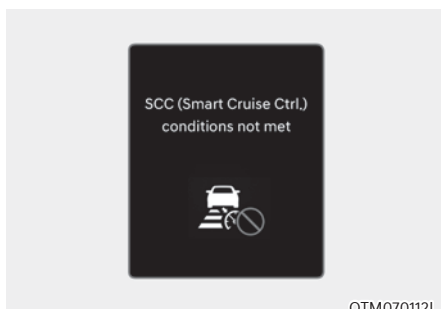
Information

If Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled whilst the vehicle is at a standstill with the function activated, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) maybe applied.



WARNING

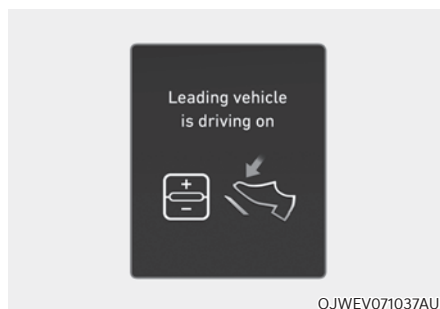
When Smart Cruise Control is temporarily cancelled, distance with the front vehicle will not be maintained. Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



OTM070112L

Smart Cruise Control conditions not satisfied

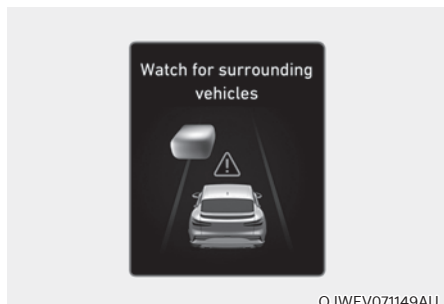
If the Driving Assist button, + switch, - switch or  switch is pushed when Smart Cruise Control operating conditions are not satisfied, the 'SCC (Smart Cruise Ctrl. conditions not met)' will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound.



OJWEV071037AU

In traffic situation

In traffic, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle will start as well. In addition, after the vehicle has stopped and a certain time have passed, the 'Use switch or pedal to accelerate' message will appear on the cluster. Press the accelerator pedal or push the + switch, - switch or  switch to start driving.



Warning road conditions ahead

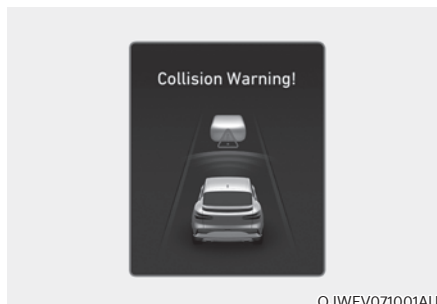
In the following situation, the 'Watch for surrounding vehicles' warning message will appear on the cluster, and an audible warning will sound to warn the driver of road conditions ahead.

- The vehicle in front disappears when Smart Cruise Control is maintaining the distance with the vehicle ahead whilst driving below a certain speed.



WARNING

Always pay attention to vehicles or objects that may suddenly appear in front of you, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



Collision Warning

Whilst Smart Cruise Control is operating, when the collision risk with the vehicle ahead is high, the 'Collision Warning' warning message will appear on the cluster, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate to warn the driver. Always have your eyes on the road whilst driving, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



WARNING

In the following situations, Smart Cruise Control may not warn the driver of a collision.

- The distance from the front vehicle is near, or the vehicle speed of the front vehicle is faster or similar with your vehicle
- The speed of the front vehicle is very slow or is at a standstill
- The accelerator pedal is pressed right after Smart Cruise Control is turned on



WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Smart Cruise Control:

- Smart Cruise Control does not substitute for proper and safe driving. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- Smart Cruise Control may not recognise unexpected and sudden situations or complex driving situations, so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.
- Keep Smart Cruise Control off when the function is not in use to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.
- Do not open the door or leave the vehicle when Smart Cruise Control is operating, even if the vehicle is stopped.
- Always be aware of the selected speed and headway distance.
- Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the headway distance is too close during high-speed driving, a serious collision may result.
- When maintaining distance with the vehicle ahead, if the front vehicle disappears, Smart Cruise Control may suddenly accelerate to the set speed. Always be aware that unexpected and sudden situations can occur.
- Vehicle speed may decrease on an upward slope and increase on a downward slope.
- Always be aware of situations such as when a vehicle cuts in suddenly.
- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off Smart Cruise Control for safety reasons.
- Turn off Smart Cruise Control when your vehicle is being towed.
- Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- Smart Cruise Control may not detect an obstacle in front and lead to a collision. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.

- Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane change may cause a delay in Smart Cruise Control reaction or may cause Smart Cruise Control to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
- Always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely, even though a warning message does not appear or an audible warning does not sound.
- If any other system's warning message is displayed or warning sound is generated, Smart Cruise Control warning message may not be displayed and warning sound may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- The vehicle manufacturer is not responsible for any traffic violation or accidents caused by the driver.
- Always set the vehicle speed under the speed limit in your country.
- Vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed may change if the driver's driving style changes.



CAUTION

- The vehicle must be driven sufficiently to reflect the actual driving style of the driver, such as inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed.
- Based on Driving style does not reflect whether the driver has changed when determining the driver's driving style.
- If you are driving in special conditions, such as snow, rain, fog or steep slopes, the vehicle may not be driven according to the driver's driving style.

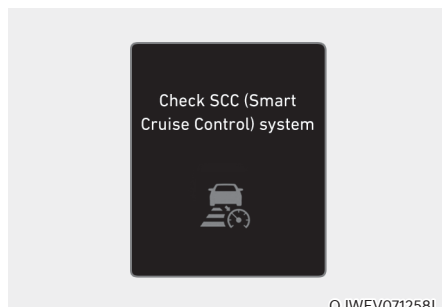


Information

- Smart Cruise Control may not operate for 15 seconds after the vehicle is started or the front view camera or front radar is initialised.
- You may hear a sound when the brake is controlled by Smart Cruise Control.
- Based on Driving Style may not reflect the driver's driving style or driving conditions that affects driving safety.
- Based on Driving Style does not reflect any other driving style other than inter-vehicle distance, acceleration and reaction speed.

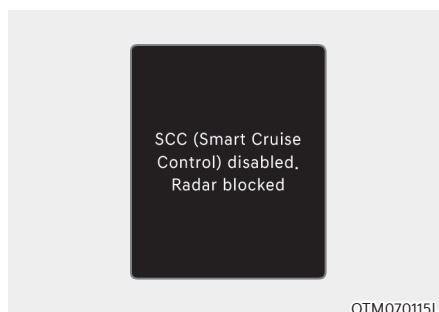
Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations

Smart Cruise Control malfunction



When Smart Cruise Control is not working properly, the 'Check SCC (Smart Cruise Control) system' warning message will appear, and the ⚠ warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Smart Cruise Control disabled



When the front radar cover or sensor is covered with snow, rain, or foreign material, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Smart Cruise Control.

If this occurs the 'SCC (Smart Cruise Control) disabled. Radar blocked' warning message will appear for a certain period of time on the cluster.

Smart Cruise Control will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed.



WARNING

Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, Smart Cruise Control may not properly operate.



CAUTION

Smart Cruise Control may not properly operate in an area (for example, open terrain), where any objects are not detected after turning ON the vehicle.

Limitations of Smart Cruise Control

Smart Cruise Control may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- The detecting sensor or the surroundings are contaminated or damaged
- Washer fluid is continuously sprayed, or the wiper is on
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windscreen, damaged glass, or sticky foreign material (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Moisture is not removed or frozen on the windscreen
- The field of view of the front view camera is obstructed by sun glare
- Street light or light from an oncoming vehicle is reflected on the wet road surface, such as a puddle on the road
- The temperature around the front view camera is high or low
- An object is placed on the instrument panel
- The surrounding is very bright
- The surrounding is very dark, such as in a tunnel, etc.
- The brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- The brightness outside is low, and the headlamps are not on or are not bright
- Driving in heavy rain or snow, or thick fog
- Driving through steam, smoke or shadow
- Only part of the vehicle is detected
- The vehicle in front has no tail lights, tail lights are located unusually, etc.
- The brightness outside is low, and the tail lamps are not on or are not bright
- The rear of the front vehicle is small or does not look normal (for example, tilted, overturned, etc.)
- The front vehicle's ground clearance is low or high
- A vehicle suddenly cuts in front
- Your vehicle is being towed
- Driving through a tunnel or iron bridge
- Driving near areas containing metal substances, such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- An object reflecting off the front radar such as a guardrail, nearby vehicle, etc.
- The bumper around the front radar is impacted, damaged or the front radar is out of position
- The temperature around the front radar is high or low
- Driving in vast areas where there are few vehicles or structures (for example, desert, meadow, suburb, etc.)
- The vehicle in front is made of material that does not reflect on the front radar
- Driving near a highway (or motorway) interchange or tollgate
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- Driving on a curved road
- The vehicle in front is detected late
- The vehicle in front is suddenly blocked by an obstacle
- The vehicle in front suddenly changes lane or suddenly reduces speed

- The vehicle in front is bent out of shape
- The front vehicle's speed is fast or slow
- With a vehicle in front, your vehicle changes lane at low speed
- The vehicle in front is covered with snow
- Unstable driving
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front is not detected
- You are continuously driving in a circle
- Driving in a parking lot
- Driving through a construction area, unpaved road, partial paved road, uneven road, speed bumps, etc.
- Driving on an incline road, curved road, etc.
- Driving through a roadside with trees or streetlights
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- Driving through a narrow road where trees or grass are overgrown
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves, such as driving in an area with strong radio waves or electrical noise

- Driving on a curved road



On curves, Smart Cruise Control may not detect a vehicle in the same lane, and may accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed may rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select the appropriate set speed on curves and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.



Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane.

Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the Smart Cruise Control.

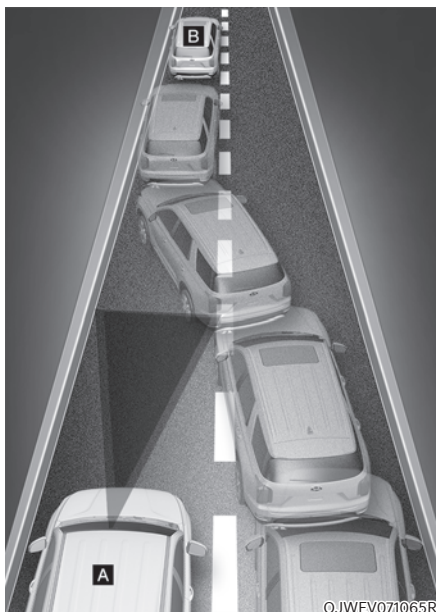
- Driving on an inclined road



During uphill or downhill driving, the Smart Cruise Control may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, vehicle speed will rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is detected suddenly.

Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and apply the brake pedal or accelerator pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

- Changing lanes

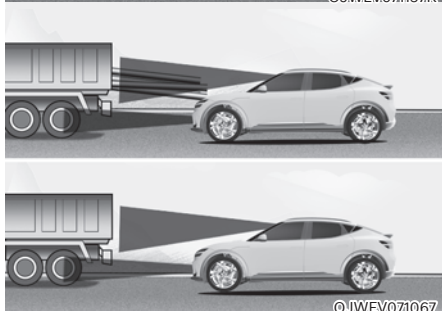
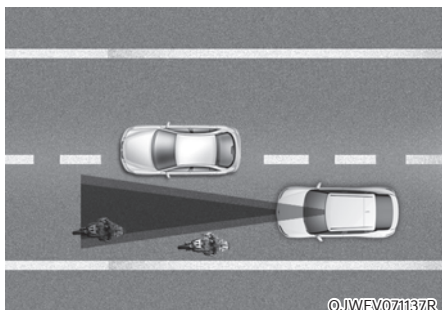


[A]: Your vehicle,

[B]: Lane changing vehicle

When a vehicle moves into your lane from an adjacent lane, it cannot be detected by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range. Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect the vehicle when the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

- Situations when detecting are limited



In the following cases, some vehicles in your lane cannot be detected by the sensor:

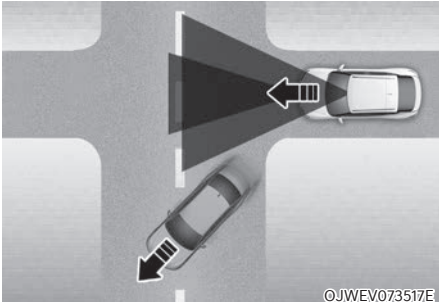
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Vehicles with higher ground clearance or vehicles carrying loads that stick out of the back of the vehicle
- Vehicles that has the front lifted due to heavy loads
- Vehicles within approximately 2 m from your vehicle
- Oncoming vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile, such as trailers
- Narrow vehicles, such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Special vehicles
- Animals and pedestrians

Adjust your vehicle speed by pressing the brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

In the following cases, the vehicle in front cannot be detected by the sensor:

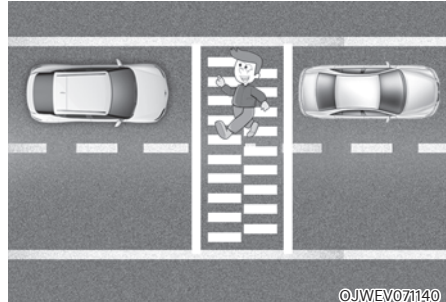
- You are steering your vehicle
- Driving on narrow or sharply curved roads

Adjust your vehicle speed by pressing the brake pedal according to the road and driving conditions ahead.

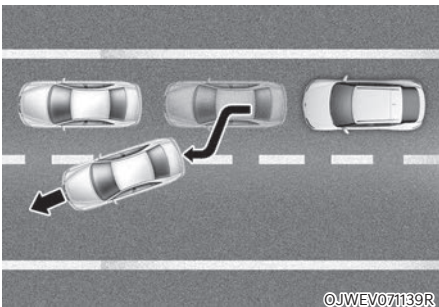


- When a vehicle ahead disappears at an intersection, your vehicle may accelerate.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.



- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.



- When a vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, Smart Cruise Control may not immediately detect the new vehicle that is now in front of you.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions whilst driving.

LANE FOLLOWING ASSIST (LFA)

Lane Following Assist is designed to help detect lane markings and/or vehicles on the road, and assists the driver's steering to help centre the vehicle in the lane.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Front view camera

The front view camera is used as a detecting sensor to detect lane markings and front vehicles.

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.



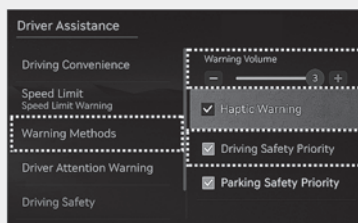
CAUTION

For more details on the precautions of the front view camera, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA)" section in this chapter.

Lane Following Assist settings

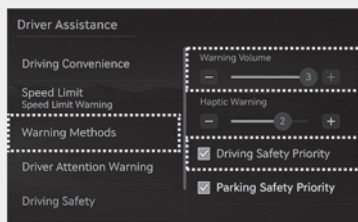
Warning Methods

■ Type A



OJWEV073521L

■ Type B



OJWEV073442L

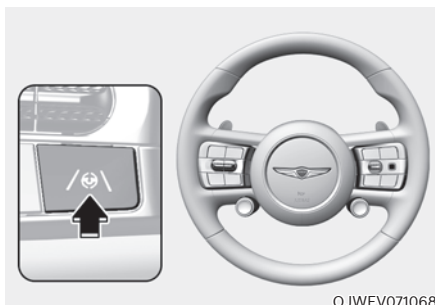
Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

- **Warning Volume:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' on the infotainment system, and adjust the warning volume. Even if you set the warning volume to 0, Warning volume will keep its volume in 1.
- **Driving Safety Priority:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Driving Safety Priority' on the infotainment system, the audio volume is reduced whilst a warning sounds.

i Information

- If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- With the Warning Volume in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the Haptic Warning to level 0, the Warning Volume will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.
- With the Haptic Warning deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the Warning Volume to level 0, the Haptic Warning will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.
- Even if you set the warning volume to '0', the warning sound will sound at the volume set to '1'.

Lane Following Assist operation *Warning and control*



OJWEV071068

Turning Lane Following Assist On/Off

With the vehicle on, shortly press the Lane Driving Assist button located on the steering wheel to turn on Lane Following Assist. The grey or green  indicator light will illuminate on the cluster.

Press the button again to turn off the function.



OJWEV072035AU

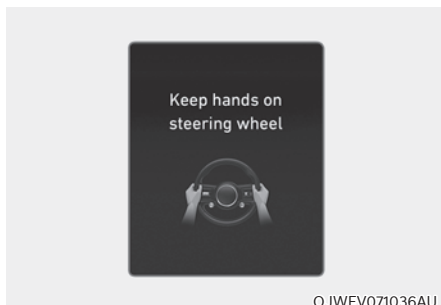
Lane Following Assist

If the vehicle ahead and/or both lane markings are detected and your vehicle speed is below 180 km/h, the green  indicator light illuminates on the cluster, and Lane Following Assist helps centre the vehicle in the lane by assisting the steering wheel.



CAUTION

When the steering wheel is not assisted, the white  indicator light blinks and change to grey.



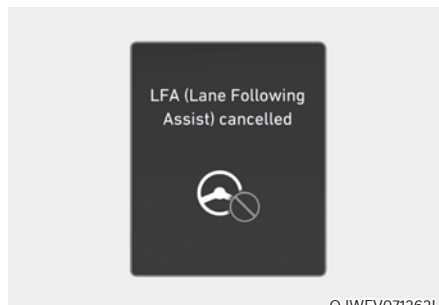
OJWEV071036AU

Hands-off warning

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds, the 'Keep hands on the steering wheel' warning message will appear and an audible warning will sound in stages.

First stage : Warning message

Second stage : Warning message (red steering wheel) and audible warning



OJWEV071262L

If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after the hands-off warning, the 'LFA (Lane Following Assist) cancelled' warning message will appear and Lane Following Assist will be automatically cancelled.

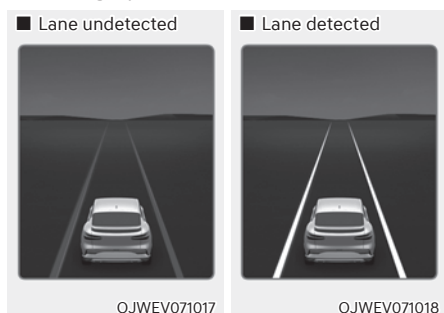


WARNING

- The steering wheel may not be assisted if the steering wheel is held very tight or the steering wheel is steered over a certain degree.
- Lane Following Assist does not operate at all times. It is the responsibility of the driver to safely steer the vehicle and to maintain the vehicle in its lane.
- The hands-off warning message may appear late depending on road conditions. Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.
- If the steering wheel is held very lightly the hands-off warning message may appear because Lane Following Assist may not recognise that the driver has their hands on the steering wheel.
- If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the hands-off warning may not work properly.

i Information

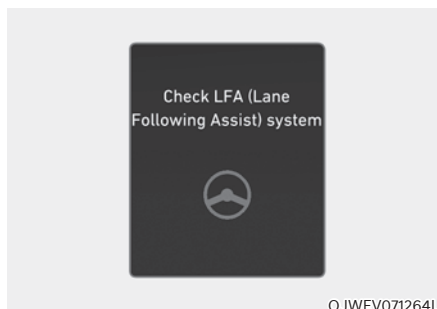
- For more details on setting the functions in the infotainment system Vehicle Settings, refer to "Vehicle settings (infotainment system)" section in chapter 4.
- When both lane markings are detected, the lane lines on the cluster will change from grey to white.



- The images and colours in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster
- If lane markings are not detected, steering wheel control by Lane Following Assist can be limited depending on whether a vehicle is in front or the driving conditions of the vehicle.
- Even though the steering is assisted by Lane Following Assist, the driver may control the steering wheel.
- The steering wheel may feel heavier or lighter when the steering wheel is assisted by Lane Following Assist than when it is not.

Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations

Lane Following Assist malfunction



When Lane Following Assist is not working properly, the 'Check LFA (Lane Following Assist system)' warning message will appear for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Limitations of Lane Following Assist

For more details on Lane Following Assist limitations, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in this chapter.

i Information

For more details on Lane Following Assist precautions, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)" section in this chapter.

REAR VIEW MONITOR (RVM) (IF EQUIPPED)

Rear View Monitor shows the area behind the vehicle to assist you when parking or driving.

Detecting sensor



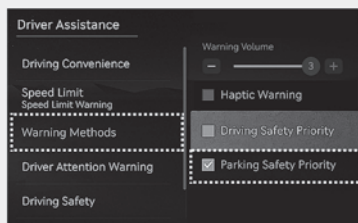
OJWEV071098L

[1]: Wide-rear view camera

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensor.

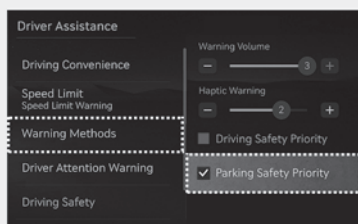
Rear View Monitor settings

■ Type A



OJWEV073523L

■ Type B



OJWEV073445L

Warning Methods

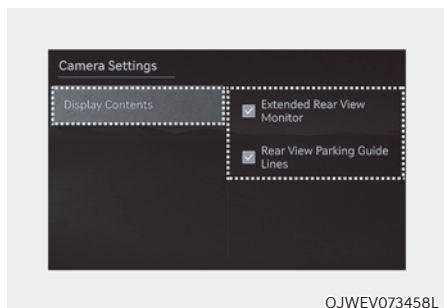
Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

- **Parking Safety Priority:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Parking Safety Priority' on the infotainment system, the audio volume is reduced whilst a warning sounds.

Information

- If you change the **Warning Methods**, **Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Camera settings



You can change Rear View Monitor 'Display Contents' or 'Display Settings' by touching the setup icon (⚙️) on the screen whilst Rear View Monitor is operating, or selecting 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Camera Settings' from the Settings menu whilst the vehicle is on.

- If 'Camera Settings' is selected, you may set whether to use 'Rear View Parking Guide Lines' or 'Extended Rear View Monitor'.

Extended rear view settings

If 'Extended Rear View Monitor' is selected, Rear View Monitor keeps displaying the rear view when shifting from R to N/D.

Rear View Parking Guide Lines

If 'Rear View Parking Guide Lines' is selected, the rear view parking guide lines will be displayed at the rear view area of the infotainment system screen.



Information

- **The horizontal guideline of the Rear View Parking Guidance shows the distance of 0.5 m, 1 m and 2.3 m from the vehicle.**
- **The horizontal markers of the Rear Top View Parking Guidance shows the tailgate opening distance and the distance of 1.5 m from the vehicle.**

Rear View Monitor operation

Parking/View button



Press the Parking/View button (1) to turn on Rear View Monitor.

Press the button again to turn off the function.

Rear view function



Rear view function shows the area behind the vehicle whilst driving or parking.

Rear View

Rear View will turn on under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed, whilst the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is 10 km/h or less.
- You may select rear top view, rear view, or rear wide view using the change view button (3).

Rear View will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- The gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive) when vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

Extended Rear View function

Extended Rear View function maintains showing the rear view when the gear is R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive).

Extended Rear View will turn on under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is 10 km/h or less.

Extended Rear View will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The infotainment system button (2) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- Vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

Rear Top View



Rear Top View shows the rear top view of your vehicle when parking for you to check the distance between an object and behind the vehicle.

Select the rear top view mode from the view buttons (3).

Rear View whilst driving

Rear View whilst driving will turn on under the following conditions:

- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed, whilst the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.
- You may select rear view or rear wide view using the change view button (3).

Rear View whilst driving will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The infotainment system button (2) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.

Information

- The rear view in all modes cannot be turned off when the gear is in R (Reverse).
- When the rear view is turned on, the last view mode appears.
- The rear parking guidelines will appear in rear view and rear top view mode. (When selected in 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Camera Settings → Display Contents → Rear View Parking Lines' from the Settings menu in the infotainment system) However, rear parking guidelines will not appear in the rear view whilst driving.
- The rear view whilst driving does not turn off even when the vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.
- When the rear view whilst driving is on, the rear top view is disabled.

Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations

Rear View Monitor malfunction

When Rear View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not display properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Limitations of Rear View Monitor

When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or when the vehicle is parked in an indoor parking lot, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.



WARNING

- The wide-rear view camera does not cover the complete area behind the vehicle. The driver should always check the rear area directly through the inside and outside rearview mirror before parking or backing up.
- The distance to the object shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance. This is because the image shown on Rear View Monitor is displayed by calibrating the image from the wide-rear view camera. When the vehicle is tilted by cargo weight or position, rear parking guidelines may differ from the actual distance. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.
- Always keep the wide-rear view camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Rear View Monitor may not operate properly. However, do not use chemical solvents such as strong detergents containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (petrol, acetone etc.). This may damage the camera lens.

SURROUND VIEW MONITOR (SVM) (IF EQUIPPED)

Surround View Monitor uses the wide view cameras and displays images around your vehicle through the infotainment system screen to help with safe parking or driving.

Detecting sensor



OJWEV071103



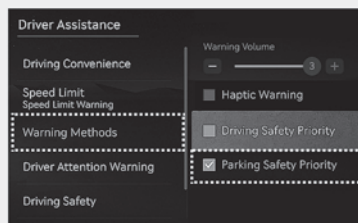
OJWEV071104L

- [1]: Wide-front view camera,
[2],[3]: Wide-side view camera
(under the outside rearview mirror),
[4]: Wide-rear view camera

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

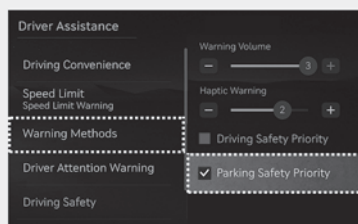
Surround View Monitor settings

■ Type A



OJWEV073523L

■ Type B



OJWEV073445L

Warning Methods

Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

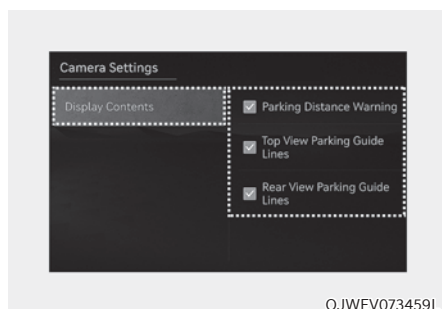
- **Parking Safety Priority:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Parking Safety Priority' on the infotainment system, the audio volume is reduced whilst a warning sounds.



Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Camera settings



You can change Surround View Monitor 'Display Contents' or 'Display Settings' by touching the setup icon (⚙️) on the screen whilst Surround View Monitor is operating, or selecting 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Camera Settings' from the Settings menu whilst the vehicle is on.

- In the Display Contents, you can change settings for 'Parking Distance Warning', 'Top View Parking Guide Lines' and 'Rear View Parking Guide Lines'.

Top View Parking Guide Lines

■ Front top view



■ Rear top view

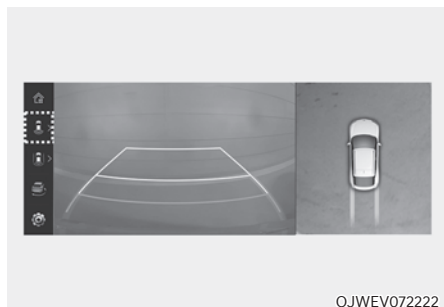


When the 'Top View Parking Guide Lines' is selected, parking guidance is displayed on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.

i Information

The horizontal markers of the Rear Top View Parking Guidance shows the tailgate opening distance and the distance of 2 m from the vehicle.

Rear View Parking Guide Lines

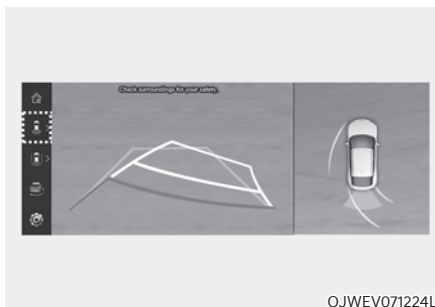


When the 'Rear View Parking Guide Lines' is selected, parking guidance is displayed in the rear view.

Information

The horizontal guideline shows the distance of 0.5 m, 1 m and 2.3 m from the vehicle.

Parking Distance Warning



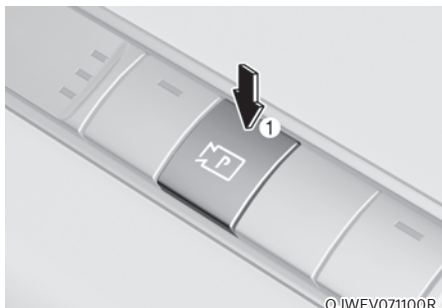
When the 'Parking Distance Warning' is selected, parking distance warning is displayed on the right side of the Surround View Monitor screen.

- The image will be displayed only when Parking Distance Warning is warning the driver.

Surround View Monitor Auto On

With the vehicle on, select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Surround View Monitor Auto On' from the Settings menu to use the function.

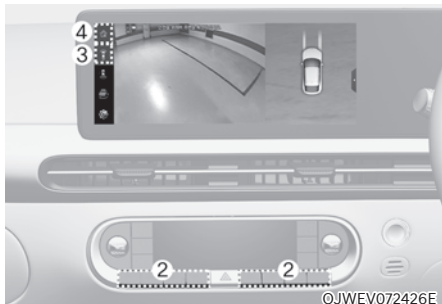
Surround View Monitor operation



Press the Parking/View button (1) to turn on Surround View Monitor.

Press the button again to turn off the function.

Front view



The front image is displayed on the screen when the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive) to assist in parking. Using the view button (3) you may select top view, front view, side view and wide view.

Front view whilst parking

The front view whilst parking function will turn on under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to N (Neutral) or D (Drive) from R (Reverse) and the vehicle speed is 10 km/h or less.
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed, whilst the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is 10 km/h or less.
- Surround View Monitor Auto On function is enabled by selecting 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Surround View Monitor Auto On' on the infotainment system.

Information

When the front view is turned on, the previous view mode will be displayed.

The front view whilst parking function will turn off under the following conditions:

- The Parking/View button (1) or the infotainment system button (2) is pressed.
- Vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- The gear is shifted to P (Park) or R (Reverse).

Front view whilst driving

The front view whilst driving function will turn on under the following conditions:

- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed, whilst the gear is in N (Neutral) or D (Drive), and vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

You can select a front view or a wide view by pressing the view switch button (3) on the surround view monitor screen.

The front view whilst driving function will turn off under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is shifted to P (Park) or R (Reverse).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- The infotainment system button (2) is pressed.

Information

- **When the front view whilst driving is turned on, the last view mode appears.**
- **The front view whilst driving does not turn off even when the vehicle speed is below 10 km/h once it is on.**
- **When the front view whilst driving is on, the front top view and side view are disabled.**

Rear view



The rear image is displayed on the screen when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) to assist in parking. Using the view button (3) you may select top view, rear view, side view and wide view.

Rear view whilst parking

The rear view whilst parking function will turn on under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- The Parking/View button (1) button is pressed when the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral), or D (Drive), and your vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.

You can select a top view, a rear view, a side view, or a wide view by pressing the view switch button (3) on the surround view monitor screen.

When the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), rear view whilst parking function will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park) from N (Neutral) or D (Drive).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- The infotainment system button (2) is pressed.
- Vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

When the gear is in R (Reverse), rear view whilst parking function will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).

Information

- When the rear view is activated, the latest used view mode appears.
- When the gear is in R (Reverse), the rear view does not turn off even if the infotainment system button (2) is pressed.

Rear View whilst driving

The driver can check the rear view on the screen whilst driving. The rear view whilst driving consist of a rear view whilst driving and a rear wide view whilst driving. Also, you can change the view mode you want to select by pressing the view button (3) on the infotainment system screen.

Rear View whilst driving function will turn on under the following conditions:

- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed, whilst driving above 10 km/h.
-  is selected among the view buttons (2) when vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

Rear View whilst driving function will turn off under the following conditions:

- The Parking/View button (1) or the infotainment system button (2) is pressed.
- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.

Information

- When the rear view whilst driving is turned on, the last view mode appears.
- The rear parking guidelines do not appear when the rear view is displayed whilst driving.
- The rear view whilst driving does not turn off even when the vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.
- When the rear view whilst driving is on, the rear top view and rear side view are disabled.

3D view

The 3D view shows the image around the vehicle from various angles.

You can change angles by tapping the screen. Press the 3D View button again to return to the initial angle.

3D view will turn on when the 3D view is selected among the view buttons (3) under the following conditions:

- The gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive) when vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.
- The Surround View Monitor is turned on when the gear is in R (Reverse).

When the gear is in P (Park), N (Neutral) or D (Drive), 3D view function will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).
- The Parking/View button (1) is pressed.
- The infotainment system button (2) is pressed.
- The Home button (4) is pressed.
- Vehicle speed is above 10 km/h.

When the gear is in R (Reverse), 3D view function will turn off under the following conditions:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park).

Information

- 3D view does not display guidelines.
- The top view displayed with the front/rear view or the 3D view is a calibrated image from the 4 wide-rear view cameras, which shows 360° around your vehicle from the top.
- The top view is not displayed with the front/rear wide view.
- You can zoom in or out in the top view mode with pinch in/out control or CCP (Central Control Point) control.

Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations

Surround View Monitor malfunction

When Surround View Monitor is not working properly, or the screen flickers, or the camera image does not display properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Limitations of Surround View Monitor

- When the vehicle is stopped for a long time in winter or when the vehicle is parked in an indoor parking lot, the exhaust fumes may temporarily blur the image.
- The screen may be displayed abnormally, and an icon will appear at the top left side of the screen under the following circumstances:
 - The boot is opened
 - The driver or front passenger door is opened
 - The outside rearview mirror is folded

WARNING

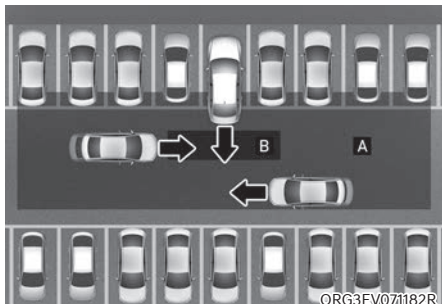
- ALWAYS look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles before moving the vehicle. What you see on the screen may differ from the actual vehicle's location.
- The distance to the object shown on the screen may differ from the actual distance. This is because the image shown on Surround View Monitor is displayed by calibrating the image from the wide-rear view camera. When the vehicle is tilted by cargo loading, rear parking guidelines may not be correct. Make sure to directly check the vehicle's surroundings for safety.
- Surround View Monitor is designed to be used on a flat surface. Therefore, if used on roads with different heights such as kerbs and speed bumps, the image in the screen may not look correct.
- Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Surround View Monitor may not operate properly. However, do not use chemical solvents such as strong detergents containing high alkaline or volatile organic solvents (petrol, acetone etc.). This may damage the camera lens.

Information

- When Rear View whilst Driving is on, it stays on whilst driving regardless of vehicle speed.
- When Rear View whilst Driving is on whilst backing up, the screen changes to the rear view.

REAR CROSS-TRAFFIC COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (RCCA)

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is designed to help detect vehicles approaching from the left and right side whilst your vehicle is reversing, and warn the driver that a collision is imminent with a warning message and an audible warning. Also, braking is assisted to help prevent collision.



[A]: Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning operating range,

[B]: Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operating range



CAUTION

Warning timing may vary depending on vehicle speed of the approaching vehicle.

Detecting sensor



[1]: Rear corner radar

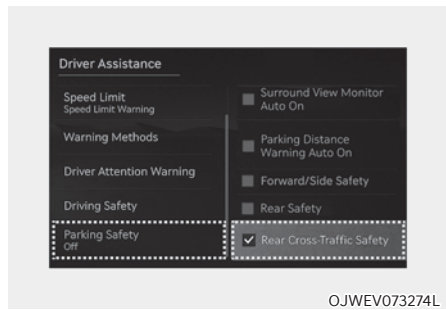
Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.



Information

For more details on the precautions of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings Setting features



Rear Cross-Traffic Safety

With the vehicle on, select 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Rear Cross-Traffic Safety' from the Settings menu to turn on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist and deselect to turn off the function.

WARNING

When the vehicle is restarted, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will always turn on. However, if 'Off' is selected after the vehicle is restarted, the driver should always be aware of the surroundings and drive safely.

CAUTION

Steering wheel vibration can be turned on or off. Select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Haptic Warning' from the Settings menu.

Information

If the vehicle is restarted, Warning Volume will maintain the last setting.

■ Type A



■ Type B



Warning Methods

Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

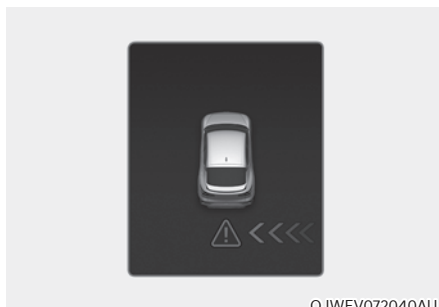
- Warning Volume: Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' on the infotainment system, and adjust the warning volume.
- Haptic Warning: Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' on the infotainment system, and set or adjust the steering wheel vibration warning.

i Information

- If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- With the Warning Volume in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the Haptic Warning to level 0, the Warning Volume will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.
- With the Haptic Warning deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the Warning Volume to level 0, the Haptic Warning will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation *Warning and control*

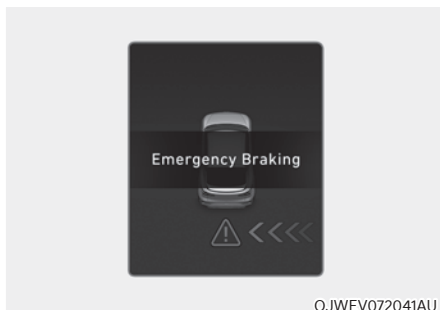
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn and control the vehicle depending on collision risk level: 'Collision Warning', 'Emergency Braking' and 'Stopping vehicle and ending brake control'.





Collision Warning

- To warn the driver of an approaching a detected vehicle from the rear left/right side of your vehicle, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror or digital side mirror (if equipped) will blink and a warning will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate. If the Rear View Monitor is operating, a warning will also appear on the infotainment system screen.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when all the following conditions are satisfied:
 - The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
 - Vehicle speed is below 8 km/h
 - The approaching a detected vehicle is within approximately 25 m from the left and right side of your vehicle
 - The speed of the a detected vehicle approaching from the left and right is above 5 km/h



Information

- **If the operating conditions are satisfied, there will be a warning whenever the vehicle approaches from the left or right side even though your vehicle speed is 0 km/h.**
- **The images and colours in the cluster may differ depending on the cluster type or theme selected from the cluster.**



Emergency Braking

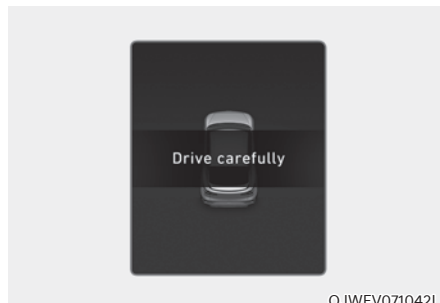
- To warn the driver of an approaching a detected vehicle from the rear left/right side of your vehicle, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror or digital side mirror (if equipped) will blink and a warning message will appear on the cluster. At the same time, an audible warning will sound and the steering wheel will vibrate. A warning will also appear on the infotainment system screen.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate when all the following conditions are satisfied:
 - The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
 - Vehicle speed is below 8 km/h
 - The approaching a detected vehicle is within approximately 1.5 m from the left and right side of your vehicle
 - The speed of the a detected vehicle approaching from the left and right is above 5 km/h
- Emergency braking will be assisted to help prevent collision with approaching vehicles from the left and right.



WARNING

Brake control ends when the conditions of the approaching vehicle from the rear left or right side are as below:

- **The approaching vehicle is out of the detecting range**
- **The approaching vehicle passes behind your vehicle**
- **The approaching vehicle does not drive toward your vehicle**
- **The approaching vehicle speed slows down**
- **The driver presses the brake pedal with sufficient power**



OJWEV071042L

Stopping vehicle and ending brake control

- When the vehicle is stopped due to emergency braking, the 'Drive carefully' warning message will appear on the cluster.
- For your safety, the driver should press the brake pedal immediately and check the surroundings.
- Brake control will end after the vehicle is stopped by emergency braking for approximately 2 seconds.
- During emergency braking, braking control by Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will automatically cancel when the driver excessively presses the brake pedal.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- For your safety, change the Settings after parking the vehicle at a safe location.
- If any other system's warning message is displayed or audible warning is generated, Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist's warning message may not be displayed and audible warning may not be generated.
- You may not hear the warning sound of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist if the surrounding is noisy.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid collision.
- During Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation, the vehicle may stop suddenly injuring passengers and shifting loose objects. Always have the seat belt on and keep loose objects secured.
- Even if there is a problem with Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist, the vehicle's basic braking will function normally.
- When Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is operating, braking control by function will automatically cancel when the driver excessively presses the accelerator pedal.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate in all situations or cannot avoid all collisions.
- Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may warn the driver late or may not warn the driver depending on the road and driving conditions.
- The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle. Do not solely depend on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, press the brake pedal to reduce driving speed or to stop the vehicle.
- Never deliberately operate Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist on people, animal, objects, etc. It may cause serious injury or death.



CAUTION

The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).

There will only be a warning when:

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function



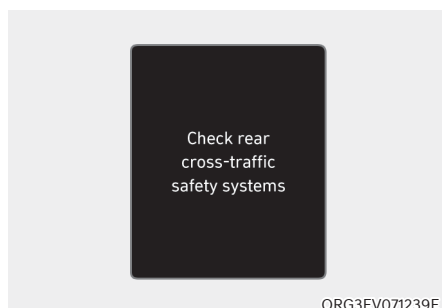
Information

If braking is assisted by Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist, the driver must immediately press the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings.

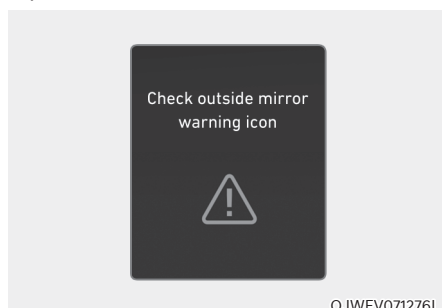
- Brake control will end when the driver presses the brake pedal with sufficient power.
- After shifting the gear to R (Reverse), braking control will operate once for left and right vehicle approach.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction

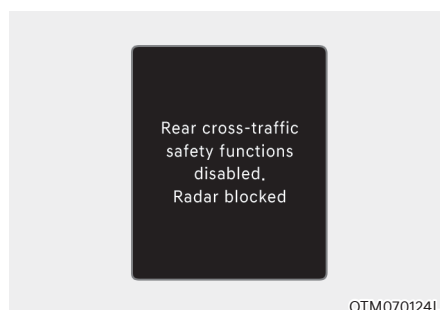


When Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist is not working properly, the 'Check rear cross-traffic safety system(s)' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



When the outside rearview mirror warning light is not working properly, the 'Check outside mirror warning icon' warning message will appear on the cluster for several seconds, and the master (⚠) warning light will illuminate on the cluster. If this occurs, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled



When the rear bumper around the rear-side radar or sensor is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, or installing a trailer or carrier, it can reduce the detecting performance and temporarily limit or disable Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist.

If this occurs, the 'Rear cross-traffic safety functions disabled. Radar blocked' warning message will appear on the cluster.

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist will operate properly when such foreign material or trailer, etc., is removed.

If Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist does not operate properly after it is removed, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

- Even though the warning message does not appear on the cluster, **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist** may not operate properly.
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist** may not operate properly in an area (for example, open terrain), where any substance are not detected after turning **ON** the vehicle.



CAUTION

Turn off Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist to install or remove a trailer, carrier, or another attachment. Turn on Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist when finished.

Limitations of Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly, or it may operate unexpectedly under the following circumstances:

- Departing from where trees or grass are overgrown
- Departing from where roads are wet
- Speed of the approaching vehicle is fast or slow

Braking control may not work, driver's attention is required in the following circumstances:

- The vehicle severely vibrates whilst driving over a bumpy road, uneven road or concrete patch
- Driving on a slippery surface due to snow, water puddle, ice, etc.
- The tyre pressure is low or a tyre is damaged
- The braking system has been modified
- Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating (if equipped)



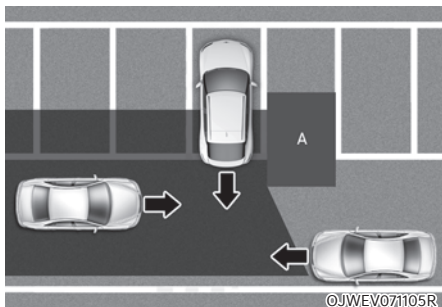
Information

For more details on the limitations of the rear corner radar, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)" section in this chapter.



WARNING

- Driving near a vehicle or structure

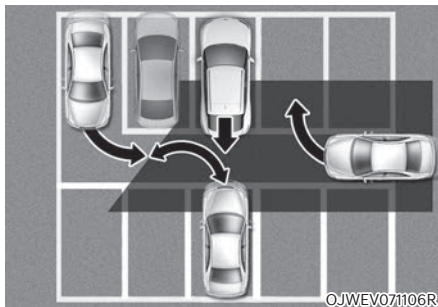


[A]: Structure

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when driving near a vehicle or structure, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

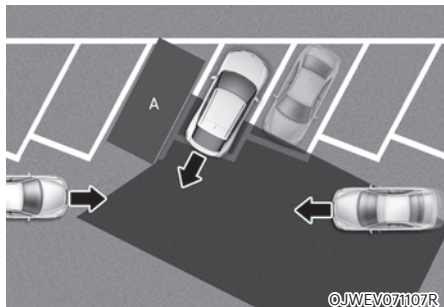
- When the vehicle is in a complex parking environment



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles which are parking or pulling out near your vehicle (example, a vehicle leaving beside your vehicle, a vehicle parking or pulling out in the rear area, a vehicle approaching your vehicle making a turn, etc.). If this occurs, the function may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

- When the vehicle is parked diagonally

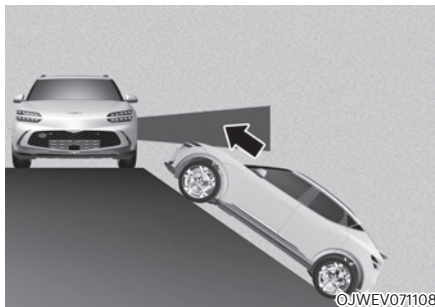


[A]: Vehicle

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when backing up diagonally, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

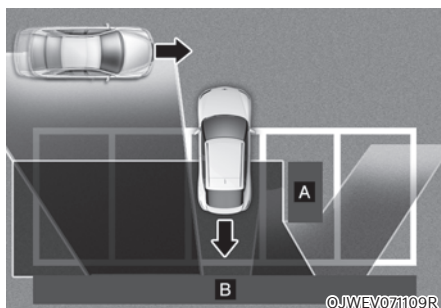
- When the vehicle is on or near a slope



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may be limited when the vehicle is on a uphill or downhill slope, or near it, and may not detect the vehicle approaching from the left or right. If this occurs, the function may not warn the driver or control the brakes when necessary.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

- Pulling into the parking space where there is a structure

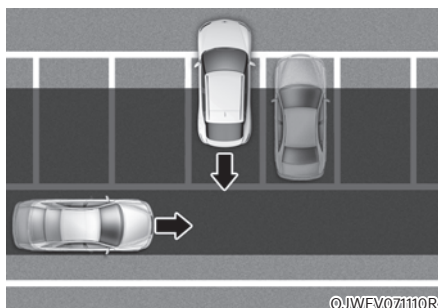


[A]: Structure, [B]: Wall

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by in front of you when parking in reverse into a parking space with a wall or structure in the rear or side area. If this occurs, the function may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

- When the vehicle is parked rearward



Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist may detect vehicles passing by behind you when parking in reverse into a parking space. If this occurs, the function may unnecessarily warn the driver and control the brake.

Always check your surroundings whilst backing up.

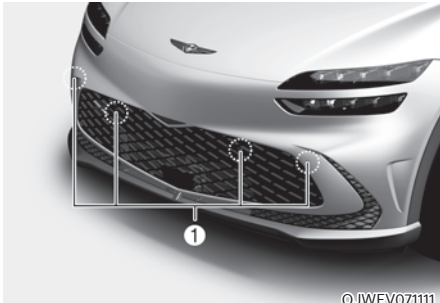
WARNING

- When you are towing a trailer or another vehicle, turn off **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist** for safety reasons.
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist** may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist** may not operate for 3 seconds after the vehicle is started, or the rear corner radars are initialised.
- If the vehicle is turned off and restarted whilst the radar is blocked or malfunctioned, the condition is maintained. Therefore, **Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist** may not operate properly.

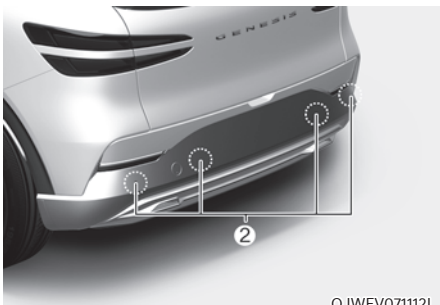
FORWARD/REVERSE PARKING DISTANCE WARNING (PDW) (IF EQUIPPED)

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will help warn the driver if an obstacle is detected within a certain distance when the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse at low speeds.

Detecting sensor



OJWEV071111



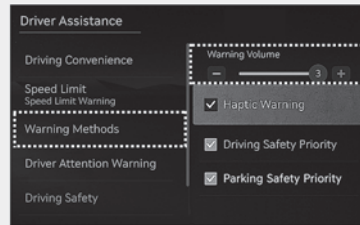
OJWEV071112L

- [1]: Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2]: Rear ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

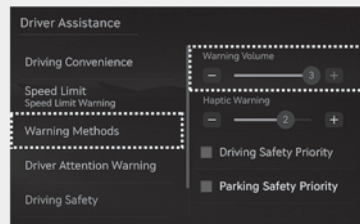
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning settings Warning Methods

■ Type A



OJWEV073522L

■ Type B



OJWEV073449L

Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

- **Warning Volume:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' on the infotainment system, and adjust the warning volume. Even if you set the warning volume to 0, Warning volume will keep its volume in 1.

Information

- If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning operation Operating button



Parking Safety button

- Press the Parking Safety (P ) button to turn on Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning. Press the button again to turn off the function.
- When Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is off (button indicator light off), if you shift the gear to R (Reverse), Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will automatically turn on.

Forward Parking Distance Warning

- Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate when one of the condition is satisfied.
 - The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to D (Drive) with Reverse Parking Distance Warning on
 - The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety (P ) button indicator light is on
 - 'Parking Distance Warning Auto On' is selected from the Settings menu and the gear is in D (Drive)

Information

- **Forward Parking Distance Warning does not operate when the vehicle's forward speed is above 10 km/h even when the Parking Safety (P ) button indicator is on. Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate again when the vehicle's forward speed decreases below 10 km/h whilst the Parking Safety (P ) button indicator is on.**
- **Whilst the gear is in R (Reverse), 'Forward Parking Distance Warning' warns only the front outer side area.**
- **Forward Parking Distance Warning is deactivated if the vehicle speed reaches above 30km/h. It will not reactivate although the vehicle speed drops below 10km/h. (Only when Parking Warning Auto On is not selected)**

Warning indicator and warning sound

Distance from object	Warning indicator	Warning sound
60~100 cm		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- When people, animals, or other objects are not positioned directly in front of the ultrasonic sensor, the distance might be differently detected.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Rear Parking Distance Warning will operate under following conditions.

- When the gear is shifted to R (Reverse).

Warning indicator and warning sound

Distance from object	Warning indicator	Warning sound
60~120 cm		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- When people, animals, or other objects are not positioned directly in front of the ultrasonic sensor, the distance might be differently detected.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction

After starting the vehicle, a beep will sound when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse) to indicate Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is operating properly.

However, if one or more of the following occurs, first check whether the ultrasonic sensor is damaged or blocked with foreign material. If it still does not work properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- The audible warning does not sound.
- The buzzer sounds intermittently.
- The 'Ultrasonic sensor error or blockage' warning message appears on the cluster.

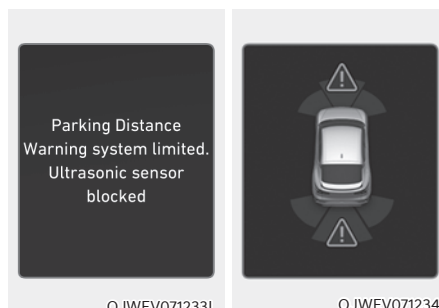


OJWEV071232L



OJWEV071234

Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning disabled



OJWEV071233L

OJWEV071234

If this occurs the 'Parking Distance Warning system limited. Ultrasonic sensor blocked' warning message appears on the cluster. Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed. If Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning does not operate properly after obstruction (snow, rain, or foreign material) is removed (including trailer, carrier, etc., from the rear bumper), we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

- **Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is a supplemental function. The operation of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the front and rear views before and whilst parking.**
- **Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning.**
- **Pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.**

Limitations of Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning

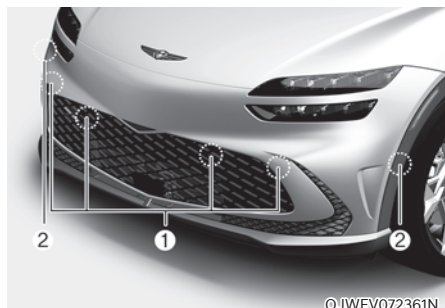
- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may not operate properly when:
 - Moisture is frozen to the sensor
 - Sensor is covered with foreign substance, such as snow or water (Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will operate properly when such substance is removed.)
 - The weather is extremely hot or cold
 - The sensor or sensor assembly is disassembled
 - The surface of the sensor is pressed hard or hit with a hard object
 - The surface of the sensor is scratched with a sharp object
 - The sensors or its surrounding area is directly sprayed with high pressure washer
- Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning may malfunction when:
 - Heavy rain or water spray is present
 - Water flows on the surface of the sensor
 - Affected by another vehicle's sensors
 - The sensor is covered with snow or ice
 - Driving on uneven road, gravel roads or bushes
 - Objects that generates ultrasonic waves are near the sensor
 - Licence plate is installed in a different spot from the original location
 - The vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
 - Attaching equipment or accessories next to the ultrasonic sensors

- The following objects may not be detected:
 - Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles.
 - Narrow objects, such as corners of a square column
 - Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
 - Objects smaller than 100 cm in length and narrower than 14 cm in diameter.
 - Pedestrians, animals or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors
- Parking Distance Warning Indicators may be displayed differently from the actual detected location when the obstacle is located between the sensors.
- Parking Distance Warning indicator may not occur sequentially depending on vehicle speed or obstacle shape.
- If Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning needs repair, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

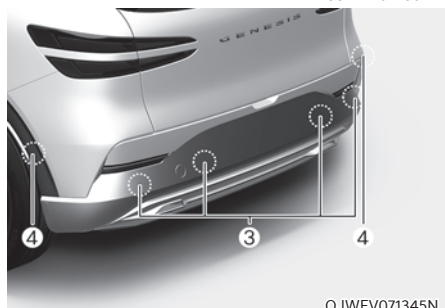
FORWARD/SIDE/REVERSE PARKING DISTANCE WARNING (PDW) (IF EQUIPPED)

Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Distance Warning will help warn the driver if an obstacle is detected within a certain distance when the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse at low speeds.

Detecting sensor



OJWEV072361N



OJWEV071345N

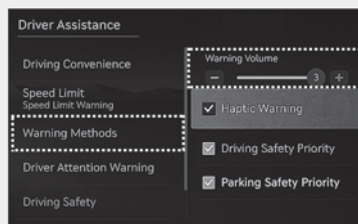
- [1]: Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2]: Front side ultrasonic sensors,
[3]: Rear ultrasonic sensors,
[4]: Rear side ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Parking Distance Warning Settings

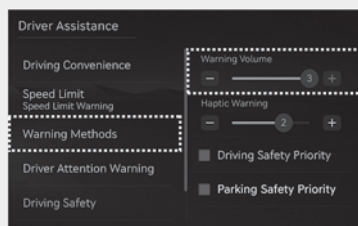
Warning Methods

■ Type A



OJWEV073522L

■ Type B



OJWEV073449L

Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

- **Warning Volume:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' on the infotainment system, and adjust the warning volume. Even if you set the warning volume to 0, Warning volume will keep its volume in 1.



Information

- **If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.**
- **Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.**
- **The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.**

Parking Distance Warning Auto On

To use Parking Distance Warning Auto On function, select 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety → Parking Distance Warning Auto On' from the infotainment system Settings menu.



Information

When Parking Distance Warning Auto On is selected, the Parking Safety button indicator (P ⏏) stays on.

Parking Distance Warning Operation

Operating button



Parking Safety button

- Press the Parking Safety (P ⏏) button to turn on Parking Distance Warning. Press the button again to turn off the function.
- When the gear is shift to R (Reverse), Parking Distance Warning will automatically turn on (Parking Safety button indicator on).

Forward Parking Distance Warning

Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate under the following conditions.

- The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to D (Drive) with Reverse Parking Distance Warning on
- The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety (P $\mathbb{A}$) button indicator light is on
- ‘Parking Distance Warning Auto On’ is selected from the Settings menu and the gear is in D (Drive)
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.

i Information

- **Forward Parking Distance Warning does not operate when the vehicle's forward speed is above 10 km/h even when the Parking Safety (P $\mathbb{A}$) button indicator is on. Forward Parking Distance Warning will operate again when the vehicle's forward speed decreases below 10 km/h whilst the Parking Safety (P $\mathbb{A}$) button indicator is on.**
- **Whilst the gear is in R (Reverse), 'Forward Parking Distance Warning' warns only the front outer side area.**
- **Forward Parking Distance Warning is deactivated if the vehicle speed reaches above 30 km/h. It will not reactivate although the vehicle speed drops below 10 km/h. (Only when Parking Warning Auto On is not selected)**

Warning indicator and warning sound

Distance from object	Warning indicator	Warning sound
60~100 cm		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Side Parking Distance Warning

Side Parking Distance Warning will operate under the following conditions.

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).
- The gear is shifted from R (Reverse) to D (Drive) with Reverse Parking Distance Warning on
- The gear is in D (Drive) and the Parking Safety (P ⏏) button indicator light is on
- 'Parking Distance Warning Auto On' is selected from the Settings menu and the gear is in D (Drive)
- The vehicle speed is below 10 km/h.

Warning indicator and warning sound

Distance from object	Warning indicator	Warning sound
60~100 cm		-
30~60 cm		-
within 30 cm		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range.
- If an object located within 30 cm from the side of the vehicle's path is detected, an audible warning will sound.
- If an object outside the side of the vehicle's path is detected, the warning indicator will be displayed.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle..

Information

Side Parking Distance Warning operated only when Forward or Reverse Parking Distance Warning is on.

Reverse Parking Distance Warning

Rear Parking Distance Warning will operate under the following conditions.

- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse).

Warning indicator and warning sound

Distance from object	Warning indicator	Warning sound
60~120 cm		Buzzer beeps intermittently
30~60 cm		Beeps more frequently
within 30 cm		Beeps continuously

- The corresponding indicator will illuminate whenever each ultrasonic sensor detects a person, animal or object in its sensing range. Also an audible warning will sound.
- When more than two objects are detected at the same time, the closest one will be warned with an audible warning.
- The shape of the indicator in the illustration may differ from the actual vehicle.

Parking Distance Warning Malfunction and Limitations

Parking Distance Warning malfunction

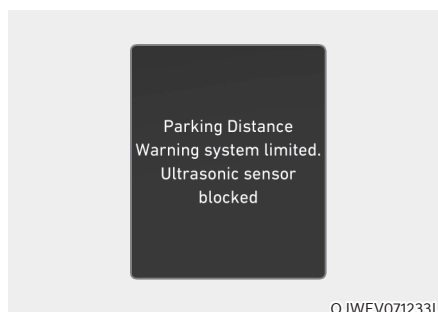
After starting the vehicle, a beep will sound when the gear is shifted to R (Reverse) to indicate Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning is operating properly.

However, if one or more of the following occurs, first check whether the ultrasonic sensor is damaged or blocked with foreign material. If it still does not work properly, have the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

- The audible warning does not sound.
- The buzzer sounds intermittently.
- The 'Ultrasonic sensor error or blockage' warning message appears on the cluster.



Parking Distance Warning disabled



If this occurs the 'Parking Distance Warning system limited. Ultrasonic sensor blocked' warning message appears on the cluster. Parking Distance Warning will operate properly when snow, rain or foreign material is removed. If Parking Distance Warning does not operate properly after obstruction (snow, rain, or foreign material) is removed (including trailer, carrier, etc., from the rear bumper), have the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Limitations of Parking Distance Warning

- Parking Distance Warning may not operate properly when:
 - Moisture is frozen to the sensor
 - Sensor is covered with foreign substance, such as snow or water (Parking Distance Warning will operate properly when such substance is removed.)
 - The weather is extremely hot or cold
 - The sensor or sensor assembly is disassembled
 - The surface of the sensor is pressed hard or hit with a hard object
 - The surface of the sensor is scratched with a sharp object
 - The sensors or its surrounding area is directly sprayed with high pressure washer
- Parking Distance Warning may malfunction when:
 - Heavy rain or water spray is present
 - Water flows on the surface of the sensor
 - Affected by another vehicle's sensors
 - The sensor is covered with snow or ice
 - Driving on uneven road, gravel roads or bushes
 - Objects that generates ultrasonic waves are near the sensor
 - Licence plate is installed in a different spot from the original location
 - The vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
 - Attaching equipment or accessories next to the ultrasonic sensors
- The following objects may not be detected:
 - Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles.
 - Narrow objects, such as corners of a square column
 - Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow.
 - Objects smaller than 100 cm in length and narrower than 14 cm in diameter.
 - Pedestrians, animals or objects that are very close to the ultrasonic sensors
 - An object in the side space between the front corner ultrasonic sensor and the rear corner ultrasonic sensor or an object approaching the side space



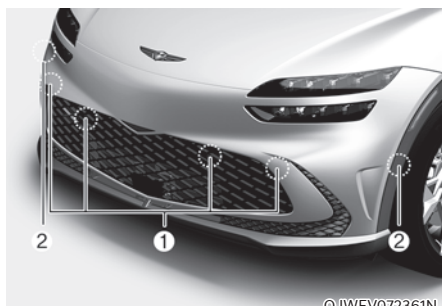
WARNING

- **Parking Distance Warning is a supplemental function. The operation of Parking Distance Warning can be affected by several factors (including environmental conditions). It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the front and rear views before and whilst parking.**
- **Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle due to the malfunction of Parking Distance Warning.**
- **Pay close attention when driving near objects, pedestrians, and especially children. Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.**
- **Parking Distance Warning does not warn you in the order of detection. It varies depending on the speed of the vehicle or the shape of a person, animal, or object.**
- **If the Parking Distance Warning does not operate properly, we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.**

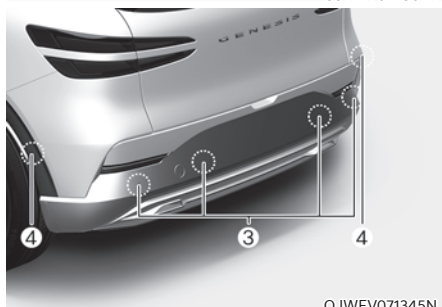
PARKING COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (PCA)

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist can warn the driver or assist with braking to help reduce the possibility of collision with a pedestrian or an object whilst driving at low speed.

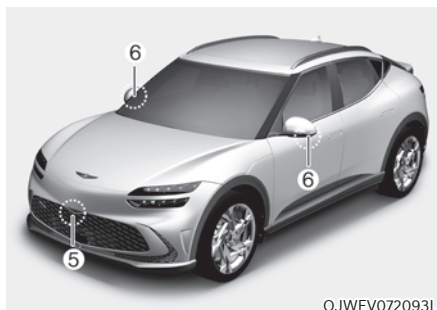
Detecting sensor



OJWEV072361N



OJWEV071345N



OJWEV072093L



OJWEV072104L

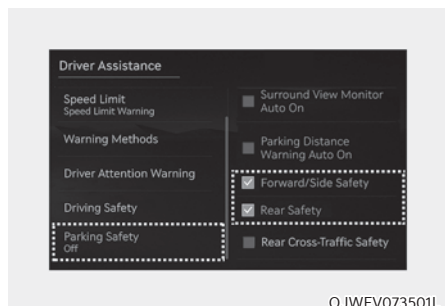
- [1]: Front ultrasonic sensors,
- [2]: Front side ultrasonic sensors,
- [3]: Rear ultrasonic sensors,
- [4]: Rear side ultrasonic sensors,
- [5]: Wide-front view camera,
- [6]: Wide-side view camera (Below the outside rearview mirror),
- [7]: Wide-rear view camera

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Settings

Setting features

Parking Safety



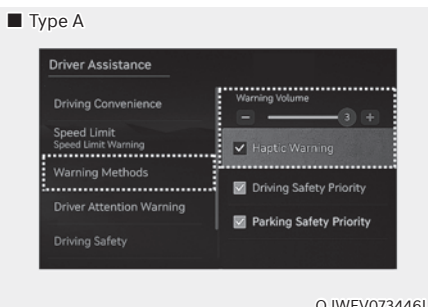
OJWEV073501L

With the vehicle on, select or deselect 'Driver Assistance → Parking Safety' from the Settings menu to set whether to use each function.

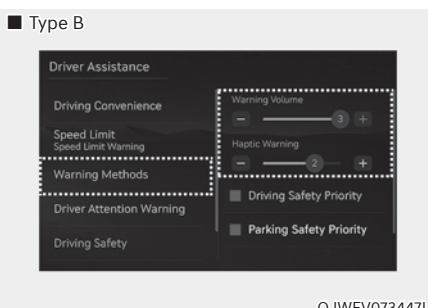
- If 'Forward/Side Safety' is selected, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver and assist with braking when a collision with a pedestrian or an object is imminent from the front or the side.
- If 'Rear Safety' is selected, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver and assist with braking when a collision with a pedestrian or an object is imminent from behind.

Information

'Forward/Side Safety' can be selected only when 'Rear Safety' is selected. If the vehicle is restarted, 'Rear Safety' is selected and 'Forward/Side Safety' maintains the last setting.



OJWEV073446L



OJWEV073447L

Warning Methods

Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

- **Warning Volume:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' on the infotainment system, and adjust the warning volume. Even if you set the warning volume to 0, Warning volume will keep its volume in 1.
- **Haptic Warning:** Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Haptic Warning' on the infotainment system, and set or adjust the steering wheel vibration warning.

i Information

- If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.
- With the Warning Volume in level 0, if you deselect or adjust the Haptic Warning to level 0, the Warning Volume will be automatically adjusted to volume level 2.
- With the Haptic Warning deselected or in level 0, if you adjust the Warning Volume to level 0, the Haptic Warning will be selected or automatically adjusted to volume level 2.

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Operation

Turning Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist On/Off



Press and hold the Parking Safety (P ) button more than 2 seconds, to turn the Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist on or off.

Operating conditions

Select 'Rear Safety' from the 'Parking Safety' menu of the infotainment system. Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is enabled when the following conditions are satisfied:

Rear Safety

- The tailgate and door are closed
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is released
- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse)
- Vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (detecting pedestrians)
- Vehicle speed is below 4 km/h (detecting objects)
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist components such as the wide-rear view camera and the rear ultrasonic sensors are in normal conditions

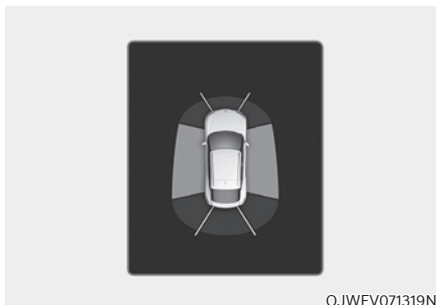
Forward/Side Safety

Select 'Forward/Side Safety' from the 'Parking Safety' menu of the infotainment system. Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is enabled when the following conditions are satisfied:

- The tailgate and door are closed
- The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) is released
- The gear is shifted to R (Reverse) or D (Drive)
- Vehicle speed is below 4 km/h (for pedestrians, objects)
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist components such as the wide-rear view camera and the rear ultrasonic sensors are in normal conditions

When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist activates, a line appears behind the vehicle image in the instrument cluster.

- Rear Safety: Behind the vehicle image
- Forward/Side Safety: In front of vehicle image



Information

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist operates only once after shifting the gear to R (Reverse) or D (Drive). To reactivate Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist, shift the gear from another gear to R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist

If Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist detects a risk of collision around the vehicle with a pedestrian or an object, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will warn the driver with an audible warning and warning message on the instrument cluster. If the infotainment screen is on, a warning will appear on the screen. If collision is imminent, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will assist you with braking.

Off conditions

Forward/Side Safety

Braking assist is released 2 seconds after shifting to D (drive) and 5 minutes after shifting to R (reverse). Immediately press the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings. Braking assist is also released in the following conditions when:

- The gear is shifted to other positions but N(Neutral)
- The brake pedal is pressed with sufficient power

Rear Safety

Braking assist is released after 5 minutes. Immediately press the brake pedal and check vehicle surroundings. Braking assist is also released in the following conditions when:

- The gear is shifted to P (Park) or D (Drive)
- The brake pedal is pressed with sufficient power

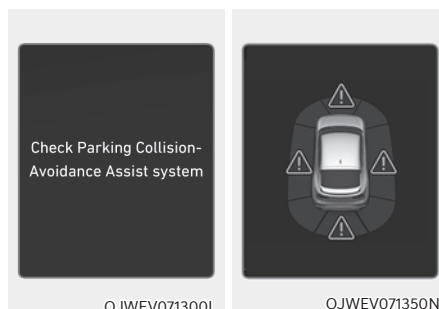


Information

When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist is activated whilst reversing, braking control will be released after 5 minutes and the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) will be engaged.

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Malfunction and Limitations

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction

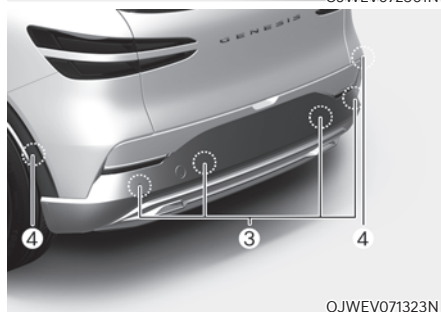
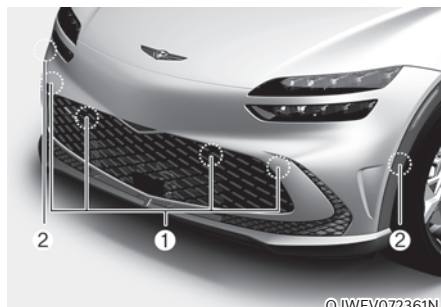


When Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or other related functions are not working properly, the 'Check Parking Safety system' warning message will appear on the cluster, and Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will turn off automatically. Have the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist disabled

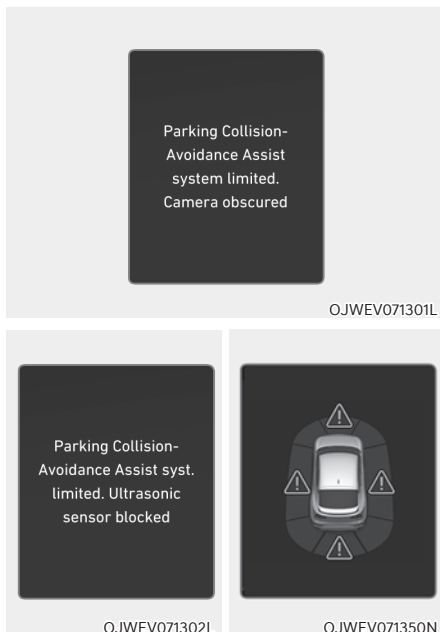


The wide view cameras are used as detecting sensors to detect pedestrians. If the camera lens is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it may adversely affect camera performance and Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly. Always keep the camera lens clean.



- [1]: Front ultrasonic sensors,
- [2]: Front side ultrasonic sensors,
- [3]: Rear ultrasonic sensors,
- [4]: Rear side ultrasonic sensors

The ultrasonic sensors detect objects around the vehicle. If the sensors are covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, it may adversely affect sensor performance and Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly. Always keep the rear bumper clean.



The 'Camera error or blockage' or 'Ultrasonic sensor error or blockage' warning message will appear on the cluster if the following situations occur:

- The camera(s) or ultrasonic sensor(s) is covered with foreign material, such as snow or rain, etc.
- There is inclement weather, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, etc.

If this occurs, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may turn off or may not operate properly. Check whether the cameras and ultrasonic sensors are clean.

Limitations of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not assist braking or warn the driver even if there are pedestrians or objects under the following circumstances:

- Any non-factory equipment or accessory is installed
- Your vehicle is unstable due to an accident or other causes
- Bumper height or rear ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
- Wide view camera (s) or ultrasonic sensor (s) is damaged
- Wide view camera(s) or the ultrasonic sensor (s) is stained with foreign material, such as snow, dirt, etc.
- Wide view camera (s) is obscured by a light source or by inclement weather, such as heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.
- The surrounding is very bright or very dark
- Outside temperature is very high or very low
- The wind is either strong (above 20 km/h) or blowing perpendicular to the rear bumper
- Objects generating excessive noise, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle vehicles or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle
- An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle
- The road is slippery or inclined
- The pedestrians are difficult to detect
- The image of the pedestrian in the front view camera is indistinguishable from the background
- There is ground height difference between the vehicle and the pedestrian

- The pedestrian is near the rear edge of the vehicle
- The pedestrian is not standing upright
- The pedestrian is either very short or very tall to detect
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to detect
- The pedestrian is wearing clothing that does not reflect ultrasonic waves well
- Size, thickness, height, or shape of the object does not reflect ultrasonic waves well (for example, pole, bush, kerbs, carts, edge of a wall, etc.)
- The pedestrian or the object is moving
- The pedestrian or the object is very close to the rear of the vehicle
- There is a large object such as a wall is behind the pedestrian or the object
- The object is not located at the front or rear centre of your vehicle
- The object is not parallel to the rear bumper
- The pedestrians or objects are close to the left/right side of the vehicle
- The sensors cannot detect the pedestrians and objects
- The road is slippery or inclined
- The driver drives the vehicle immediately after shifting to R (Reverse) or D (Drive)
- The driver accelerates or circles the vehicle
- The vehicle moves forward and rearward repeatedly
- The vehicle is driven immediately after starting the vehicle

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may unnecessarily warn the driver or assist with braking even if there are no pedestrians or objects under the following circumstances:

- Any non-factory equipment or accessory is installed
- Your vehicle is unstable due to an accident or other causes
- Bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified
- Your vehicle height is low or high due to heavy loads, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- Wide view camera(s) or the rear ultrasonic sensor(s) is stained with foreign material, such as snow, dirt, etc.
- The pattern on the road is mistaken for a pedestrian
- There is shadow or light reflecting on the ground
- Pedestrians or objects are around the path of the vehicle
- Objects generating excessive noise, such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle vehicles or truck air brakes, are near your vehicle
- Your vehicle is backing towards a narrow passage or parking space
- Your vehicle is backing towards an uneven road surface, such as an unpaved road, gravel, bump, gradient, etc.
- A trailer or carrier is installed on the rear of your vehicle
- An ultrasonic sensor with similar frequency is near your vehicle
- The pedestrian or the object is moving
- The driver accelerates or circles the vehicle
- The vehicle moves forward and rearward repeatedly

**WARNING**

Take the following precautions when using Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist:

- Always pay extreme caution whilst driving. The driver is responsible for controlling the brake for safe driving.
- Always pay attention to road and traffic conditions whilst driving, whether or not there is a warning.
- Always look around your vehicle to make sure there are no pedestrians or objects before moving the vehicle.
- The performance of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may vary under certain conditions. If vehicle speed is above 4 km/h, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will provide collision avoidance assist only when pedestrians are detected. Always look around and pay attention when driving your vehicle.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may operate differently under certain conditions. If the vehicle moves forward and rearward repeatedly, the Collision-Avoidance Assist may fail to assist braking or to warn the driver. Always pay attention when driving your vehicle.
- Some objects may not be detected by the ultrasonic sensors due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly or may operate unnecessarily depending on the road conditions and the surroundings.
- Do not solely rely on Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist. Doing so may lead to vehicle damage or injuries.

**CAUTION**

- Noise may be heard when sudden braking occurs to avoid a collision.
- If any other warning sound such as the seat belt warning chime is already generated, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warning may not sound.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not work properly if the bumper has been damaged, replaced or repaired.
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if interfered by strong electromagnetic waves.
- Playing the vehicle audio system at high volume may prevent passengers from hearing Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist warning sounds.
- Turn off Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist when towing a trailer. If towing and moving in reverse, Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist will activate as it detects the trailer.
- The brake control may not operate properly depending on the status of ESC (Electronic Stability Control).
There will only be a warning when:
 - The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light is on
 - ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is engaged in a different function
- Check the condition of the brake oil and brake pad on a regular basis. Brake performance may be reduced depending on the condition.



CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensors:

- Always keep the wide angle cameras and ultrasonic sensors clean.
- Do not use any cleanser containing acid or alkaline detergents when cleaning the camera lens. Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Do not spray the wide angle cameras or the rear ultrasonic sensors or their surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. It may cause the wide angle cameras or the ultrasonic sensors to malfunction.
- Do not apply objects, such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard, near the wide angle cameras or ultrasonic sensors or apply paint to the bumper. Doing so may adversely affect the performance of Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist.
- Never disassemble or apply impact on the wide angle cameras or the ultrasonic sensors components.
- Do not apply unnecessary force on the wide angle cameras or the ultrasonic sensors. Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist may not operate properly if the wide angle cameras or the ultrasonic sensor(s) is forcibly moved out of proper alignment. Have the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



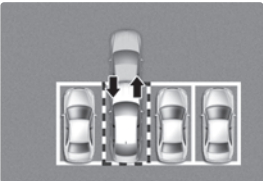
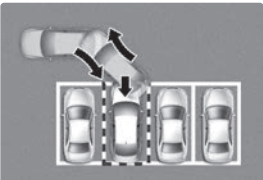
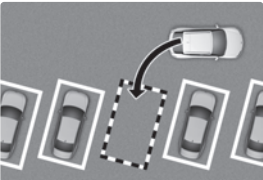
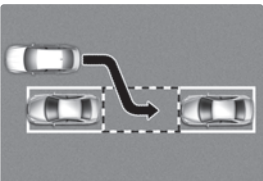
Information

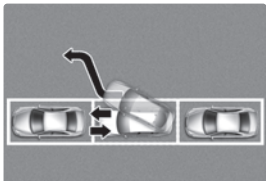
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist can detect a pedestrian or an object when:

- A pedestrian is standing behind the vehicle
- A large obstacle, such as a vehicle, is parked in the rear centre of your vehicle

REMOTE SMART PARKING ASSIST 2 (RSPA 2) (IF EQUIPPED)

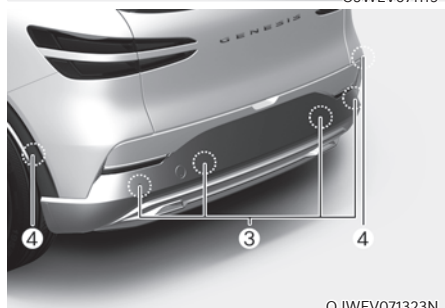
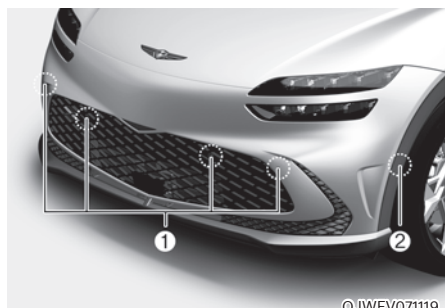
Remote Smart Parking Assist uses vehicle sensors to help the driver park and exit parking spaces remotely from outside the vehicle by controlling the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshifts.

Function	Description
Remote Operation	Remotely moving forward or rearward  ORG3EV071159R
	Perpendicular reverse parking  ORG3EV071160R
Smart Parking or Remote Parking	Diagonal reverse parking  OJWEV071320N
	Parallel reverse parking  ORG3EV071161R

Function	Description
Smart Exit	Parallel forward exit  ORG3EV071162R

- Remote Parking and Remote Operation function may be operated from outside the vehicle using the smart key.
- Smart Parking and Smart Exit function may be operated from inside the vehicle.
- Smart Parking and Remote Parking function helps the driver with perpendicular reverse parking and parallel reverse parking.
- Smart Exit function helps the driver with parallel forward exit.
- When Remote Smart Parking Assist operates, Parking Distance Warning and Surround View Monitor will also operate. For more details, refer to "Parking Distance Warning" and "Surround View Monitor (SVM) (if equipped)" sections in this chapter.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist helps parking by recognising the parking lines with the wide angle camera.

Detecting sensors



- [1]: Front ultrasonic sensors,
[2]: Front corner ultrasonic sensors,
[3]: Rear corner ultrasonic sensors,
[4]: Rear ultrasonic sensors

Refer to the picture above for the detailed location of the detecting sensors.

Wide angle camera



- [1]: Wide-front view camera,
[2], [3]: Wide-side view camera,
[4]: Wide-rear view camera



CAUTION

Take the following precautions to maintain optimal performance of the detecting sensors:

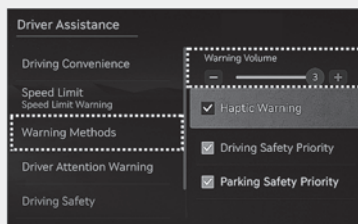
- Never disassemble the detecting sensor or sensor assembly, or cause any damage to it.
- If the detecting sensors need repair, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or ultrasonic sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- When the ultrasonic sensor is frozen or stained with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be not operate until the stains are removed using a soft cloth.
- Do not push, scratch or strike the ultrasonic sensor. Sensor damage could occur.
- Do not spray the ultrasonic sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer.
- Always keep the camera lens clean. If the lens is covered with foreign material, it may adversely affect camera performance and Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly.
- Do not manually adjust the rearview mirror or use Remote Smart Parking Assist after a hard impact on the rearview mirror.

When a collision occurs or the outside rearview mirror is manually operated, Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly.

Remote Smart Parking Assist settings

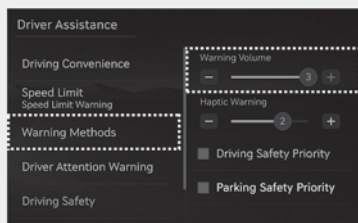
Settings features

■ Type A



OJWEV073522L

■ Type B



OJWEV073449L

Warning Methods

Warning Method can be set when the vehicle is in ON position.

- Warning Volume: Select 'Setup → Vehicle → Driver Assistance → Warning Methods → Warning Volume' on the infotainment system, and adjust the warning volume. Even if you set the warning volume to 0, Warning volume will keep its volume in 1.



Information

- If you change the Warning Methods, Warning Methods of other Driver Assistance systems may change.
- Warning Method will maintain its last setting even if the vehicle is restarted.
- The setting menu may not be available for your vehicle depending on the vehicle features and specifications.

Remote Smart Parking Assist operation

Remote Smart Parking Assist button

Parking/View button			Smart key
			
OJWEV073121E			OJWEV071154
Location	Name	Symbol	Description
Inside vehicle	Parking/View button		• Press and hold the Parking/View button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist. Also, Forward/Reverse Parking Distance warning will automatically turn on. • However, functions may differ depending on the situations. Refer to each function's description for more details in the following pages. • Press and hold the Parking/View button whilst Smart Parking or Smart Exit function is on to operate the function.
	Remote Start button		• Press the Remote Start button after the door is locked with the vehicle off to start the vehicle remotely. • Press the Remote Start button whilst Remote Parking or Remote Operation function is operating to end function operation.
Smart key	Forward button		• When using Remote Parking function, regardless of which direction button is pressed, parking is supported whilst the button is pressed.
	Rearward button		• When using the Remote Operation function, the vehicle moves in the direction of the button whilst the button is pressed.

Remote Operation

Operating order

Remote Operation function operates in the following order:

1. Getting ready to remotely move forward and rearward
2. Remotely moving forward and rearward

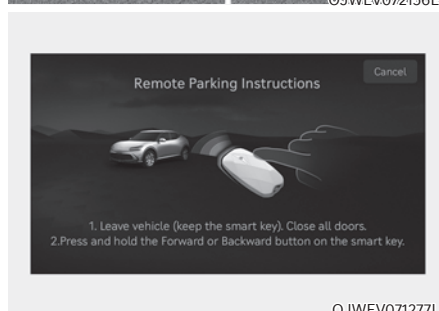
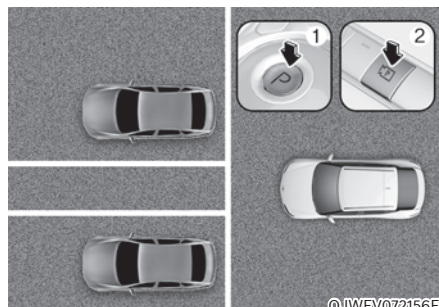
1. Getting ready to remotely move forward and rearward

There are two ways to operate Remote Operation function.



Method (1) Using the function with vehicle off

- (1) Within a certain range from the vehicle press the door lock (🔒) button on the smart key and lock all doors.
- (2) Press and hold the Remote Start button (🔑) within 4 seconds until the vehicle starts.
 - For more details on remotely starting the vehicle, refer to "Remote start" section in chapter 6.

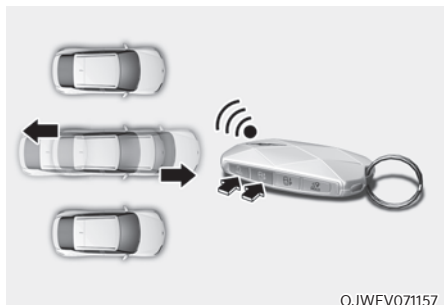


Method (2) Using the function with vehicle on

- (1) Park the vehicle in front of the space where you want to use Remote Operation function, and shift the gear to P (Park).
- (2) Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Smart Parking Assist. A message 'Remote Parking Instructions' will appear on the infotainment system screen.
- (3) Get out of the vehicle with the smart key and close all doors.

- 'Agree' must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Remote Operation function.
- Method (2) can be used after the vehicle has been driven above 5 km/h.
- If the function is turned on again after parallel parking is completed by Remote Smart Parking Assist, Remote Operation function can be used with Method (2).
- Check that all smart keys are outside the vehicle when using Remote Operation function.

2. Remotely moving forward and rearward



- (1) Press and hold one of the Forward (F) or Rearward (R) button on the smart key. Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift. The vehicle will move in the direction of the button pressed.
 - (2) Whilst Remote Operation function is operating, if you do not hold down the Forward (F) or Rearward (R) button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the button is pressed and held again.
 - (3) When the vehicle reaches the target location, release the smart key Forward or Rearward button.
 - (4) When the driver gets in the vehicle with the smart key, a message will appear informing the driver Remote Operation function is complete on the infotainment system screen and the vehicle will remain on.
- In addition, when the Remote Start (HOLD) button is pressed on the smart key from outside the vehicle, a message will appear informing the driver Remote Operation function is complete and the vehicle will turn off.

Information

- Check that all smart keys are outside the vehicle when using Remote Operation function.
- Remote Operation function will operate only when the smart key is within 4 m from the vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Forward or Rearward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance to the vehicle and press the button again.
- The detecting range of the smart key may vary depending on the surroundings that are affected by radio waves such as transmission tower, broadcast station, etc.
- When remotely moving forward using method (1), it is recognised as an exit situation, and the vehicle moves 4 m to check for pedestrians, animals or objects around the vehicle. After confirmation, the steering wheel is controlled according to the condition ahead.
- When remotely moving forward using method (2), it is recognised as a parking situation, and will immediately control the steering wheel according to the condition ahead to assist with entering the parking space and aligning the vehicle. However, performance may reduce depending on the pedestrians, animals, shape of objects, location, etc., around the vehicle.
- For moving remotely rearward, both method (1) and (2) aligns the steering wheel first, and then will only move the vehicle straight.
- When remotely moving forward or rearward is completed, the vehicle will automatically shift to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

CAUTION

- When using Remote Operation function, make sure that all passengers have gotten out of the vehicle.
- If the vehicle's battery is discharged or Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunctions when parked in a narrow parking space, Remote Operation function will not operate. Always park your vehicle in a space wide enough for you to get in or out of your vehicle.
- Please note that depending on the parking space, you may not be able to exit from the space you have entered by using Remote Operation function.
- After parking, the surrounding may change due to the movement of surrounding vehicles. If this occurs, Remote Operation function may not operate.
- Before leaving the vehicle, close windows and sunroofs, and make sure the vehicle is off before locking the doors.

Remote Operation function operation status

Operation status	Smart key LED	Hazard warning light
Under control	Green LED continuously blinks	-
Pause	Red LED continuously blinks	Blinks
Off	Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 3 times and turns off
Complete	Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 1 time and turns off

* Operation status by the hazard warning light may not be applicable based on the regulation of your country.

* If the smart key is not within the operating range from the vehicle (approximately 4 m), the smart key LED will not illuminate or blink. Use the smart key within the operating range.

How to turn off Remote Operation function whilst operating

- Press the Parking/View () button whilst the infotainment system screen guides the driver using method 2.
- Shift the gear except to P (Park) whilst the infotainment system screen guides the driver using method 2.
- Press the Parking Safety () button or select 'Cancel' on the infotainment system screen.
- Press the Remote Start () button on the smart key whilst the vehicle is being controlled by Remote Operation function. Remote Operation function will turn off. At this time, the vehicle will turn off.
- Get on the vehicle with the smart key. Remote Operation function will turn off. At this time, the vehicle will remain on.

The function will pause in the following conditions when:

- There is a detected pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
- The door or tailgate is open
- The Forward (⏮) or Rearward (⏭) button is not continuously pressed
- Simultaneously pressing multiple buttons on a smart key
- The smart key is not operated within 4 m from the vehicle
- Button of another smart key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operates whilst the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction.
- The vehicle moves 7 m whilst the smart key is pressed with Remote Operation function (maximum travel distance per button press)

When Remote Operation function is paused, the vehicle will stop. If the condition that made the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

The function will cancel in the following conditions when:

- The steering wheel is steered
- The gear is shifted whilst the vehicle is moving
- Operating EPB whilst the vehicle is moving
- The bonnet is open
- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is pressed when all the doors are closed
- The smart key is outside the vehicle when the brake pedal is pressed whilst the driver's door is open
- Rapid acceleration occurs
- Vehicle skid occurs
- The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
- Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Remote Operation function has started to operate
- The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
- The function is paused for more than 1 minute
- The total travel distance of the vehicle has exceeded 14 m after Remote Operation function operation
- The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
- There is a problem with the smart key or the smart key battery is low
- ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
- The alarm of the Theft Alarm System sounds
- The charging door is open

When Remote Operation function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

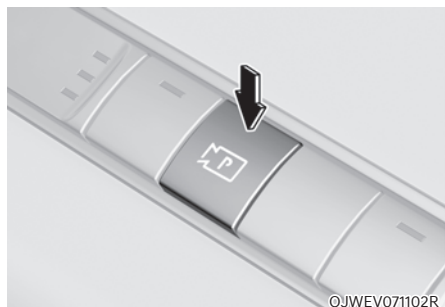
Smart Parking, Remote Parking

Operating order

Parking function operates in the following order:

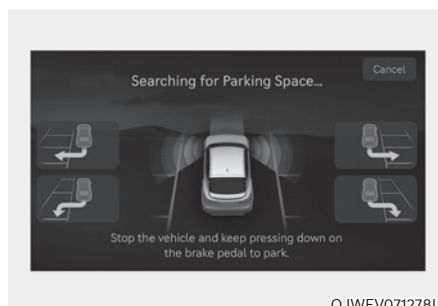
1. Getting ready for parking
 2. Searching for parking space
 3. Select parking type and operating mode
 4. Smart Parking
 5. Remote Parking
- Parking function includes Parking and Remote Smart Parking.

1. Getting ready for parking



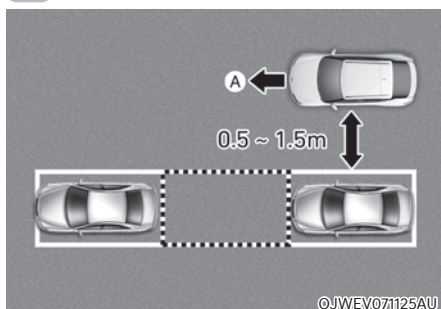
- (1) With the vehicle turned on, press the brake pedal and shift the gear to D (Drive) or N (Neutral).
- (2) Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist.
 - 'Agree' must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Parking function.
 - If you drive above 5 km/h with the vehicle on, you may use the Parking function with the gear shifted to N (Neutral).

2. Searching for parking space



- (1) Slowly drive forward maintaining the distance of approximately 100 cm from the parked vehicles.
- (2) When searching for a parking space is complete, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen with an audible sound to notify the search is complete.
- (3) 'Select Parking Type' will be displayed on the infotainment system screen and the selected parking space will appear on Top View screen of Surround View Monitor.
 - Remote Smart Parking Assist searches for parking spaces that are next to parked vehicles, or parking spaces with parked vehicles in front or rear.
 - Whilst searching for a parking space, when vehicle speed is above 20 km/h, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen informing you to slow down. When vehicle speed is above 30 km/h, Parking function will turn off.
 - Searching for a parking space will be completed when there is enough space to move the vehicle in addition to the parking space.
 - Even if an audible sound is heard to notify that searching for a parking space is complete, search completion can be cancelled immediately depending on surroundings.

Information



[A]: Searching for parking space

- If the distance is below 50 cm or over 150 cm, Remote Smart Parking Assist may not be able to search for a parking space.
- If you do not maintain a certain distance from the parked vehicle, the performance to search for a parking space may reduce.
- Even if a diagonal parking space is searched as a parking space, parking is not assisted normally.
- Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Parking function may not be able to search for a parking space even if there is a parking space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for parking.
- If the parking space is on a incline or is diagonal, the parking type displayed may be different from the actual parking type which should be selected. If this occurs, do not select the parking type, and search for another parking space.

3. Select parking type and operating mode



- (1) Parking type – Perpendicular reverse (Left/Right), Parallel reverse (Left/Right)

With the vehicle stopped by pressing the brake pedal, touch the infotainment system screen or use the central controller to select the desired parking type.

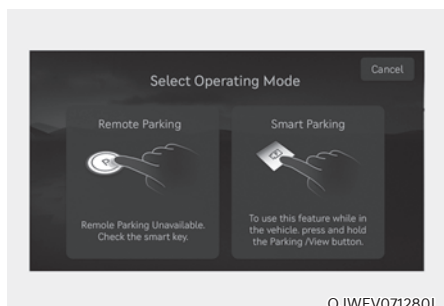
- If you continue to drive without stopping after the parking type selection screen appears, Remote Smart Parking Assist will return to the previous stage and search for a parking space.
- If Parking function is cancelled unintentionally by pressing the Parking/View (M/P) button before the parking type is selected, you can return to the parking type selection stage by pressing and holding the button again whilst the vehicle is stopped.



CAUTION

Before selecting the Parking type, the driver should check whether the parking space is suitable.

If the searched parking space by Remote Smart Parking Assist is narrow or unsuitable for parking, do not select the Parking type and move the vehicle to search for another parking space.



OJWEV071280L

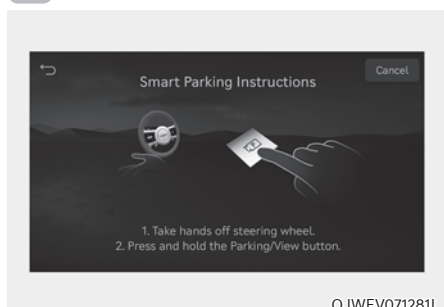
(2) Operating mode – Remote Parking, Smart Parking

After selecting a parking type, the infotainment system screen will guide you with Remote Parking function and Smart Parking function. Follow the instructions to operate Remote Smart Parking Assist.

Information

- Operating instructions will be displayed on the screen for each desired function you select.
- Do not take your foot off the brake pedal during the Parking function guide. When the vehicle moves, Remote Smart Parking Assist will turn off.

Information



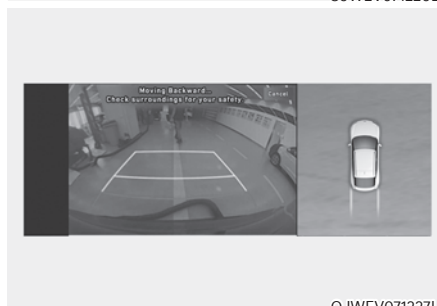
OJWEV071281L

If Remote Smart Parking Assist cannot activate Remote Parking function, only the Smart Parking guide will be displayed on the infotainment system screen.

4. Smart Parking



OJWEV071226L

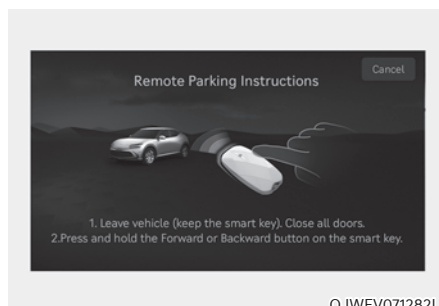


OJWEV071227L

- (1) Press the Parking/View () button when the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift.
- (2) Whilst Smart Parking function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the Parking/View button is pressed and held again.

- (3) When the vehicle reaches the target parking position, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen to inform you that parking is complete.
- Smart Parking function will not operate if the door is open or the seat belt is not fastened.
 - The parking location indicator is displayed on Surround View Monitor screen and is displayed until the vehicle enters the parking space for the first time by Smart Parking function.
 - Vehicle speed can be adjusted by pressing the brake pedal whilst Smart Parking function is operating. However, the vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is pressed.
 - Depending on parking environments, if the vehicle is stopped by a stopper, parking may be completed.
 - If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.

5. Remote Parking



- (1) Shift the gear to P (Park), get out of the vehicle with the smart key, and close all doors.
- (2) Press and hold one of the Forward (⬆) or Rearward (⬇) button on the smart key. Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift.
- (3) Whilst Remote Parking function is operating, if you do not hold down the Forward (⬆) or Rearward (⬇) button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the button is pressed and held again.
- (4) When the vehicle reaches the target parking position, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen to inform you that parking is complete. The vehicle will automatically shift to P (Park), engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) and the vehicle will turn off.
 - When operating Remote Parking function, make sure all smart keys are outside of the vehicle.
 - Remote Parking function will operate only when the smart key is within 4 m from the vehicle. If there is no vehicle movement even when the Remote Forward or Rearward button is pressed on the smart key, check the distance to the vehicle and press the button again.

- The detecting range of the smart key may vary depending on the surroundings that are affected by radio waves such as transmission tower, broadcast station, etc.
- The parking location indicator is displayed on Surround View Monitor screen and is displayed until the vehicle enters the parking space for the first time by Remote Parking function.
- Depending on parking environments, if the vehicle is stopped by a stopper, parking may be completed.
- If you need to change the vehicle's position or location, manually complete parking your vehicle.



CAUTION

- **When using Remote Parking function, make sure that all passengers have gotten out of the vehicle.**
- **After ending or turning off Remote Parking function, before leaving the vehicle, close windows and sunroofs, and make sure the vehicle is off before locking the doors.**

How to turn off Parking function whilst operating

- Press the Parking/View () button in the following stage:
 - Searching for parking space
 - Select parking type
- Shift the gear to R (Reverse) in the following stage:
 - Searching for parking space
 - Select parking type
 - Select operating mode
- Press the Parking Safety () button or select 'Cancel' on the infotainment system screen to turn off Parking function.
- Whilst Smart Parking function is operating:
 - If the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Parking function will turn off. At this time, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) will not be engaged.
- Whilst Remote Parking function is operating:
 - Press the Remote Start () button on the smart key. Parking function will turn off.
 - Get on the vehicle with the smart key. Parking function will turn off. At this time, the vehicle will remain on.

Parking function operation status

- Smart Parking function

Operation status	Turn signal
Under control	The turn signal of the parking direction blinks until the first reverse is complete.

- Smart Parking function

Operation status	Smart key LED	Hazard warning light	Turn signal
Under control	Green LED continuously blinks	-	The turn signal of the parking direction blinks until the first reverse is complete.
Pause	Red LED continuously blinks	Blinks	-
Off	Red LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 3 times and turns off	-
Complete	Green LED illuminates for 4 seconds and then turns off	Blinks 1 time and turns off	-

* Operation status the hazard warning light and the turn signal light may not be applicable based on the regulation of your country.

* If the smart key is not within the operating range from the vehicle (approximately 4 m), the smart key LED will not illuminate or blink. Use the smart key within the operating range.

The function will pause in the following conditions when:

- Smart Parking
 - There is a pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
 - The door or tailgate is open
 - The driver's seat belt is not fastened
 - Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision Assist operates whilst the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction
 - The Parking/View (P) button is not continuously pressed
 - The vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal
- Remote Parking
 - There is a pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
 - The door or tailgate is open
 - The Forward (F) or Rearward (R) button is not continuously pressed
 - Simultaneously pressing multiple buttons on a smart key
 - The smart key is not operated within 4 m from the vehicle
 - Button of another smart key is pressed in addition to the operating smart key
 - Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision Assist operates whilst the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction

When Parking function is paused, the vehicle will automatically stop. If the condition that made the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

The function will cancel in the following conditions when:

- Smart Parking
 - The steering wheel is steered
 - The gear is shifted whilst the vehicle is moving
 - Operating EPB whilst the vehicle is moving
 - The bonnet is open
 - The driver opens the door with the seatbelt unfastened
 - Rapid acceleration occurs
 - Vehicle skid occurs
 - The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
 - There are pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time
 - Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Smart Parking function has started to operate
 - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
 - The function is paused for more than 1 minute
 - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
 - ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
 - The charging door is open

When Smart Parking function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

- Remote Parking
 - The steering wheel is steered
 - The gear is shifted
 - Operating EPB whilst the vehicle is moving
 - The bonnet is open
 - The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is pressed when all the doors are closed
 - The smart key is outside the vehicle when the brake pedal is pressed whilst the driver's door is open.
 - Rapid acceleration occurs
 - Vehicle skid occurs
 - The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
 - There are detected pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time
 - Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Remote Parking function has started to operate
 - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
 - The function is paused for more than 1 minute
 - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
 - There is a problem with the smart key or the smart key battery is low
 - ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
 - The alarm of the Theft Alarm System sounds
 - The charging door is open

When Remote Parking function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

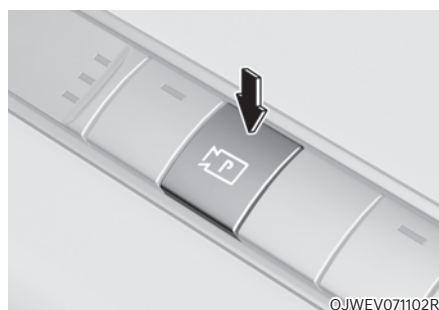
Smart Exit

Operating order

Smart Exit function operates in the following order:

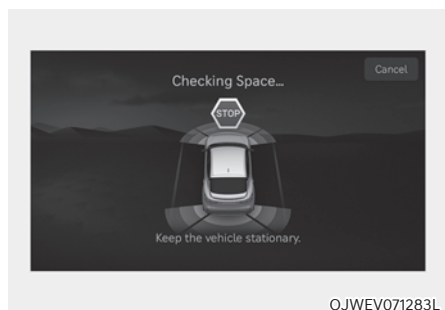
1. Getting ready for exit
2. Checking space
3. Select exit direction
4. Smart Exit

1. Getting ready for exit



- (1) With the vehicle turned on, press the brake pedal and shift the gear to P (Park) or N (Neutral).
- (2) Press and hold the Parking/View (P) button to turn on Remote Smart Parking Assist.
 - 'Agree' must be selected on the infotainment system screen and the infotainment system has to operate properly to use Smart Smart Exit function.
 - Drive below 5 km/h with the vehicle on and shift the gear to N (Neutral), Smart Exit function can be used.
 - If the function is turned on again after parallel parking is completed by Remote Smart Parking Assist, Smart Exit function can be used.

2. Checking space



- (1) When the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle sensors will detect the distance from nearby objects and check for space to exit.
- (2) When checking for space is complete, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen with an audible sound to notify the search is complete.



WARNING

- **Whilst checking for space, if there is a risk of collision with pedestrian, animal or object in the direction of vehicle exit, for your safety, Smart Exit function can be turned off.**
- **Even if check for space is completed, objects in the blind spot area cannot be detected by the sensors. The driver must directly check the blind spot area and continue using the function.**

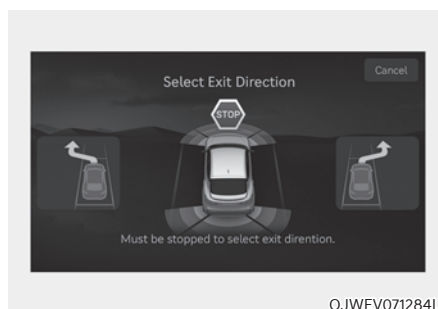


Information

Due to abnormal performance of the ultrasonic sensor or the influence of the surroundings, Parking function may not be able to search for a parking space even if there is a parking space, or may search for a space that is not suitable for parking.

- The parked vehicle has objects attached to the bumper such as bumper guard, trailer towbar, etc.

3. Select exit direction



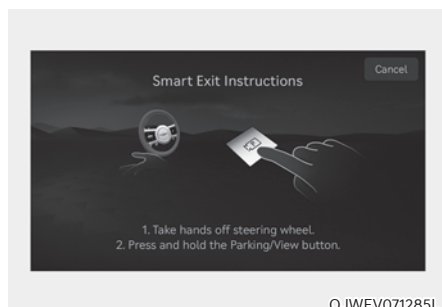
- (1) With the vehicle stopped by pressing the brake pedal, the infotainment system screen displays the possible directions for parallel exit.
- (2) Touch the infotainment system screen or use the central controller to select the desired exit direction.



CAUTION

- **Before selecting the Exit Direction, the driver should check whether the space for exit is suitable.**
- **If the searched exit space by Remote Smart Parking Assist is narrow or unsuitable (surrounding vehicles are parked vertically, etc.), do not use the Smart Exit function.**

4. Smart Exit



- (1) Press the Parking/View (P) button when the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, Remote Smart Parking Assist will automatically control the steering wheel, vehicle speed and gearshift.
- (2) Whilst Smart Exit function is operating, if you do not hold down the Parking/View button, the vehicle will stop and function control will pause. The function will start operating again when the Parking/View button is pressed and held again.
- (3) When the vehicle reaches the target exit location, a message will appear on the infotainment system screen to inform you that exit is complete.

- Smart Exit function will not operate if the door is open or the seat belt is not fastened.
- Vehicle speed can be adjusted by pressing the brake pedal whilst Smart Exit function is operating. However, the vehicle does not accelerate even when the accelerator pedal is pressed.
- If exit is completed whilst pressing the brake pedal, Smart Exit function will complete with the gear in D (Drive).
- If exit is completed whilst pressing the accelerator pedal, you must take your foot off the accelerator pedal once for the accelerator pedal to operate.
- If there is no vehicle operation such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal within 4 seconds after exit is complete, the vehicle will automatically shift to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).
- After Exit function is complete, always check the surroundings before driving.

Smart Exit operation status

Operation status	Turn signal
Under control	The turn signal of the exit direction blinks until the exit is complete or Smart Exit is cancelled.

- * Operation status by the turn signal may not be applicable based on the regulation of your country.

How to turn off Smart function whilst operating

- Press the Parking/View () button in the following stage:
 - Checking space
 - Select exit direction
- Shift the gear to R (Reverse) in the following stage:
 - Checking space
 - Select exit direction
- Press the Parking Safety () button or select 'Cancel' on the infotainment system screen to turn off Exit function.
- Whilst Smart Exit function is operating, if the vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal, and the gear is shifted, Exiting function will turn off. At this time, EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) will not be engaged.

The function will pause in the following conditions when:

- There is a detected pedestrian, animal or object in the direction the vehicle is moving
- The door or tailgate is open
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened
- Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist or Rear-Cross Traffic Collision Assist operates whilst the vehicle is being controlled in the reverse direction
- The Parking/View () button is not continuously pressed
- The vehicle is stopped by pressing the brake pedal

When Exit function is paused, the vehicle will stop. If the condition that made the function to pause disappears, the function may operate again.

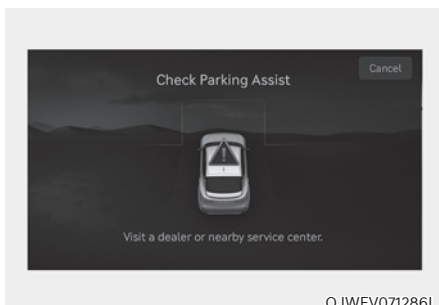
The function will cancel in the following conditions when:

- Smart Exit
 - The steering wheel is steered
 - The gear is shifted whilst the vehicle is moving
 - Operating EPB whilst the vehicle is moving
 - The bonnet is open
 - The driver opens the door with the seatbelt unfastened
 - Rapid acceleration occurs
 - Vehicle skid occurs
 - The wheel is stuck by an obstacle and cannot move
 - There are detected pedestrians, animals or objects at the front and rear of the vehicle at the same time
 - Approximately 3 minutes and 50 seconds have past after Smart Exit function has started to operate
 - The slope of the road exceeds the operational range
 - The function was paused for more than 1 minute
 - The steering wheel, gearshift, braking, and drive controls are not working properly
 - ABS, TCS or ESC system operates due to slippery road conditions
 - The charging door is open
 - The vehicle is utility mode

When Smart Exit function is cancelled, the vehicle will automatically stop, shift the gear to P (Park) and engage EPB (Electronic Parking Brake).

Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations

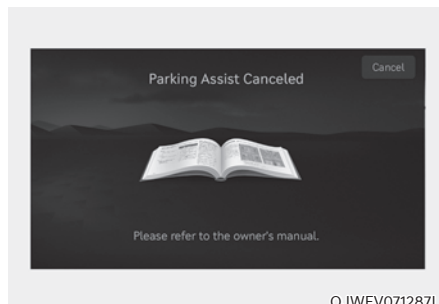
Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction



OJWEV071286L

Remote Smart Parking Assist check

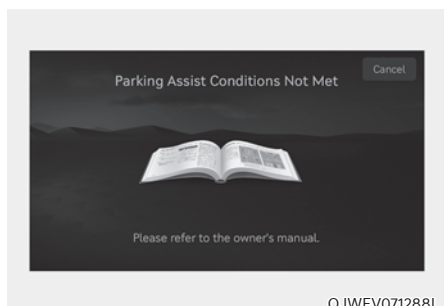
When Remote Smart Parking Assist is not working properly, the 'Check Parking Assist' warning message will appear on the infotainment system screen. If the message appears, stop using Remote Smart Parking Assist, and we recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



OJWEV071287L

Remote Smart Parking Assist cancelled

When Remote Parking Assist is operating, the function can be cancelled, and the 'Parking Assist Cancelled' warning message may appear regardless of the parking order. Other messages may appear depending on the situations. Follow the instructions provided on the infotainment system screen whilst parking your vehicle with Remote Parking Assist. Always look around and pay attention when using Remote Smart Parking Assist.



Remote Smart Parking Assist standby

When 'Parking Assist Conditions Not Met' message appears, when Parking/View (P) button has been pressed and held, Remote Smart Parking Assist is in standby. After a whilst, press and hold the Parking/View (P) button again to see if Remote Smart Parking Assist works.

The message appears even when the smart key's battery is low. Check the smart key battery level.

It does not work even when the EV mode is in the Utility mode. For related information refer to Utility Mode in 'Electric vehicle system overview'.

Limitations of Remote Smart Parking Assist

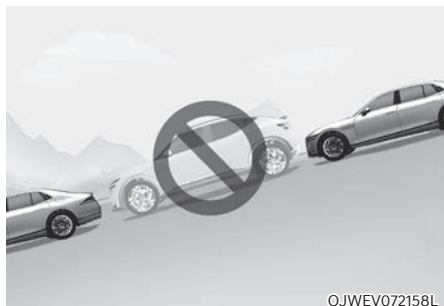
In the following circumstances, Remote Smart Parking Assist performance to park or exit the vehicle may be limited, there may be a risk of collision, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may turn off. Park or exit the vehicle manually if necessary.

- An object is attached to the steering wheel
- The vehicle is installed with a snow chain, spare tyre or different size wheel
- Tyre pressure is lower or higher than the standard tyre pressure
- Your vehicle is loaded with cargo longer or wider than your vehicle or a trailer is connected to your vehicle
- There is a problem with the wheel alignment
- Your vehicle is leaned severely to one side
- Your vehicle is equipped with a trailer towbar
- The licence plate is installed differently from the original location
- There is a person, animal or object above or below the ultrasonic sensor when Remote Smart Parking Assist is activated
- The parking space is curved or diagonal
- There is an obstacle such as a person, animal or object (trash can, bicycle, motorcycle, shopping cart, narrow pillar, etc.) near the parking space
- There is a circular pillar or narrow pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as fire extinguisher, etc., near the parking space
- The road surface is bumpy (kerbstone, speed bump, etc.)
- The road is slippery

- The parking space is near a vehicle with higher ground clearance or big, such as a truck, etc.
- The parking space is Inclined
- The road surface of parking space with lines is wet due to snow, puddles, or there is a road marker inside the parking space
- The road surface of the parking space with lines is bumpy due to road cracks
- The parking line is too thin or thick
- The parking line is partially erased or blurred
- The parking line is obscured by people, animals, or objects such as snow, boxes, etc.
- There is heavy wind
- Operating Remote Smart Parking Assist on uneven roads, gravel roads, bushes, etc.
- The performance of the ultrasonic sensor is affected by extremely hot or cold weather
- The ultrasonic sensor is covered with snow or water
- An object that generates ultrasonic waves is nearby
- A wireless device with a transmission function operates near the ultrasonic sensors
- Your vehicle is affected by another vehicle's Parking Distance Warning
- The sensor is mounted or positioned incorrectly by an impact to the bumper
- The cameras is improperly mounted or out of position due to outside rearview mirror damage
- The ultrasonic sensor cannot detect the following objects when:
 - Sharp or slim objects, such as ropes, chains or small poles
 - Objects smaller than 40 in. (100 cm) in length and narrower than 6 in. (14 cm) in diameter
 - Objects which tend to absorb sensor frequency, such as clothes, spongy material or snow
 - A narrow object such as a corner of a square pillar
 - Person, animal or object near the ultrasonic sensor
- The cameras may not properly recognise or may not recognise the parking line and objects when:
 - There are small objects (kerb, etc.), sharp objects, or thin objects (rope, etc.) around
 - People, animals or objects are too close or too far from the vehicle
 - Objects are on a higher position, such as pickup trucks
 - The camera is obscured by dirt or moisture
 - The camera is exposed to strong light
 - The surrounding is too dark
 - The light is reflected from the surface

Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly under the following circumstances:

- Parking on inclines



Park manually when parking on inclines.

- Parking in snow



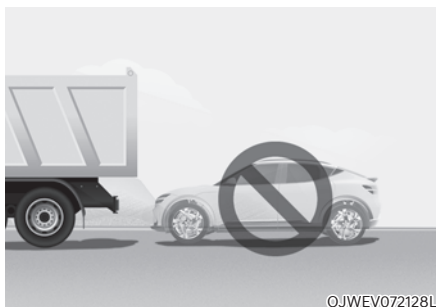
Snow may interfere with sensor operation, or Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel if the road is slippery whilst parking.

- Parking on uneven road



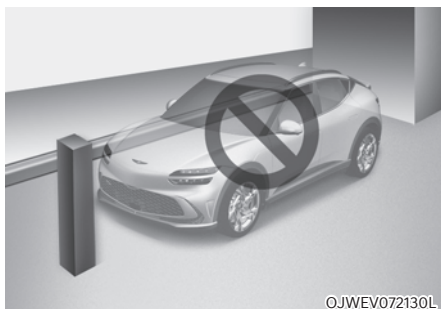
Remote Smart Parking Assist may cancel when the vehicle slips, or the vehicle cannot move due to road conditions such as pebbles or fragmented stones.

- Parking behind a truck



Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist around vehicles with higher ground clearance, such as a bus, truck, etc. It may lead to an accident.

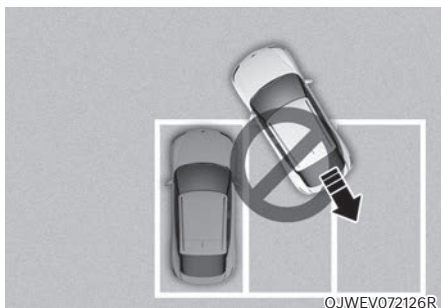
- Parking near a pillar



OJWEV072130L

Remote Smart Parking Assist performance may reduce or collision with an obstacle may occur when there is a narrow object, circular pillar, square pillar, or a pillar surrounded by objects such as a fire extinguisher, etc., near the parking space. The driver should park the vehicle properly.

- Parking next to a misaligned vehicle

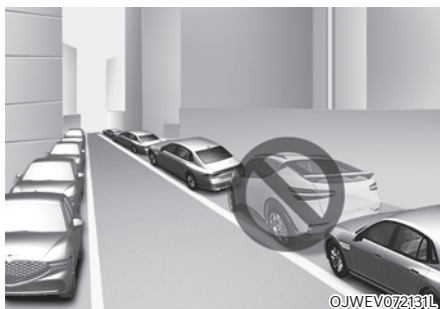


OJWEV072126R

If Remote Smart Parking Assist is used when parking in a space next to misaligned vehicles, your vehicle may not be parked side by side.

However, if there is a parking line and it is detected properly, your vehicle will park side by side with the parking line.

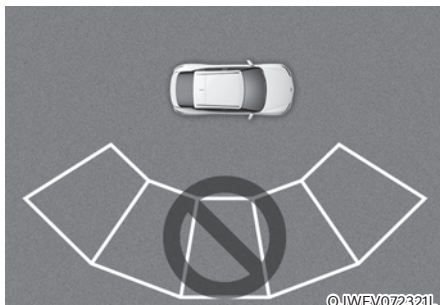
- Leaving a parking space near a wall or parking in a narrow space



OJWEV072131L

- Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly when leaving a parking space that is narrow and near a wall. Always check for pedestrians, animals, objects whilst leaving.
- For your safety, Remote Smart Parking Assist does not search for parking spaces at areas with narrow parking spaces that are narrower than the minimum space required for parking.

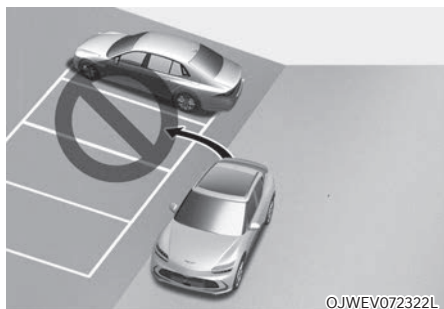
- Abnormal parking space



OJWEV072321L

Remote Smart Parking Assist does not work properly when the parking lines are not parallel. Do not park although the parking space is recognised by the sensor.

- Inclined parking space



Remote Smart Parking Assist does not work properly on a inclined or curved road surface. Do not park although the parking space is recognised by the sensor.

- Parking diagonal



Remote Forward/Reverse function may not operate properly in a diagonal parking space.



WARNING

Take the following precautions when using Remote Smart Parking Assist:

- The driver is responsible for safe parking and exit when using Remote Smart Parking Assist.
- When using Remote Smart Parking Assist, stay out of the way in the direction the vehicle moves for your safety.
- Always check surroundings when using Remote Smart Parking Assist. You may collide with pedestrians, animals, or objects if they are near the sensor or are in the sensor's blind spot area.
- A collision may occur if a pedestrian, animal, or object suddenly appears whilst Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating.
- Do not use Remote Smart Parking Assist when under the influence of alcohol.
- Do not let children or other people to use the smart key.
- If Remote Smart Parking Assist is used continuously for a long period, it may adversely affect Remote Smart Parking Assist performance.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist may not operate properly if the vehicle needs wheel alignment adjustment such as when the vehicle tilts to one side. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Noise may be heard when braking occurs by Remote Smart Parking Assist or when the brake pedal is pressed by the driver.
- Remote Smart Parking Assist may suddenly apply the brake to avoid collision.
- Use Remote Smart Parking Assist only in a parking space that is large enough for the vehicle to move safely.

NOTICE

- If the 3rd stage warning (continuous beep) of the Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning sounds whilst Remote Smart Parking Assist is operating, it means the obstacle detected is close to your vehicle. At this time, Remote Smart Parking Assist will temporarily stop operating. Make sure there are no pedestrians, animals, or objects around your vehicle.
- Depending on brake operation, the stop lights may come on whilst the vehicle is moving.
- If the vehicle is remotely started that has been parked in cold weather for a long time, the operation of Remote Parking function may be delayed or cancelled depending on vehicle condition.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Front radar

The radio frequency components (Front Radar) complies:

- For Australia



Front Corner Radar/Rear Corner Radar

The radio frequency components (Front Corner Radar/Rear Corner Radar) complies:

- For Australia



8. Emergency situations

Hazard warning flasher.....	8-2
In case of an emergency whilst driving.....	8-2
If the vehicle stalls whilst driving	8-2
If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing	8-2
If you have a flat tyre whilst driving	8-3
If the vehicle will not start	8-3
Confirm the EV battery is not low on the charge gauge	8-3
Jump starting (12 V battery)	8-4
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	8-8
Check tyre pressure	8-8
Tyre pressure monitoring system	8-9
Low tyre pressure warning light.....	8-10
Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale.....	8-10
TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator	8-11
Changing a tyre with TPMS	8-11
If you have a flat tyre (with Tyre Mobility Kit).....	8-13
Introduction.....	8-13
Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit.....	8-14
Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit	8-15
Using the Tyre Mobility Kit When a tyre is flat.....	8-16
How to adjust tyre pressure	8-19
Towing	8-20
Towing service.....	8-20
Removable towing hook.....	8-21
Emergency commodity	8-22
Fire extinguisher.....	8-22
First aid kit	8-22
Triangle reflector	8-22
Tyre pressure gauge	8-22

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER



The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

To turn the hazard warning flasher on or off, press the hazard warning flasher button with the Start/Stop button in any position. The hazard warning flasher button is located in the centre fascia panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates regardless of whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILST DRIVING

If the vehicle stalls whilst driving

- Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on your hazard warning flasher.
- Try to start the vehicle again. If your vehicle will not start, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer or seek other qualified assistance.

If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing

If the vehicle stalls at a crossroads or crossing, if safe to do so, shift the gear to N (Neutral) and then push the vehicle to a safe location.

To stay in N (Neutral) whilst the vehicle is off, refer to “To stay in N (Neutral) when vehicle is OFF” in chapter 6.

If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving:

- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.
- When the vehicle is stopped, press the hazard warning flasher button, shift the gear to P (Park), apply the regenerative brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Be sure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
- When changing a flat tyre, follow the instructions provided later in this chapter.

IF THE VEHICLE WILL NOT START

Confirm the EV battery is not low on the charge gauge

- Be sure the gear is in P (Park). The vehicle starts only when the gear is in P (Park).
- Check the 12 V battery connections to be sure they are clean and tight.
- Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the 12 V battery is drained.

Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could cause damage to your vehicle.

See instructions for “Jump Starting” provided in this chapter.

JUMP STARTING (12 V BATTERY)

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Follow the jump starting procedure in this section to avoid serious injury or damage to your vehicle. If in doubt about how to properly jump start your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have a service technician or towing service do it for you.



WARNING

To prevent **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH** to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:



Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of reach of children.

Batteries contain sulphuric acid which is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.



If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

- When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.
- NEVER attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.
- The electrical ignition system works with high voltage.

NEVER touch these components with the vehicle running or when the Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

- The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. NEVER touch these components with the (READY) indicator ON or when the START/STOP button is in the ON position.
- Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.
- The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.

- Do not directly connect the (-) to the jump cable. Connect the (-) to the one of the metallic parts located far from the jump cable in the vehicle. The direct (-) connection to the jump cable may cause an explosion.
- Be sure to use only 12 V battery to jump start. Using batteries with other voltages to jump start can damage the battery or even cause an explosion.

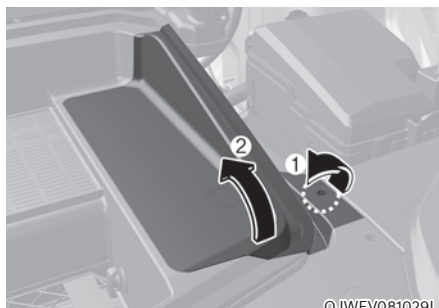


WARNING

- Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.
- When connecting the supplementary battery and the discharged battery with a jump cable because the jump start does not operate with jump start terminal in the motor compartment, do not directly connect the (-) to the jump cable. Connect the (-) to the one of the metallic parts located far from the jump cable in the vehicle. The direct (-) connection to the jump cable may cause an explosion.
- The battery contains dilute sulphuric acid, which is highly corrosive, so be careful not to let the battery liquid get on your body, clothes, or the vehicle body. If dilute sulphuric acid gets on your body or eyes, immediately rinse the area with clean water for about 15 minutes and then consult a doctor.

Jump starting procedure

1. Position the vehicles close enough that the jumper cables will reach, but do not allow the vehicles to touch.
2. Avoid fans or any moving parts in the motor compartment at all times, even when the vehicles are turned off.
3. Turn off all electrical devices such as radios, lights, air conditioning, etc. Put the vehicles in P (Park) and set the parking brake. Turn both vehicles OFF.
4. Open the bonnet.



OJWEV081029L

5. Remove the fastener located (1) inside of the front boot after then remove the battery cover (2).



CAUTION

Before jump starting, make sure to correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals to avoid reverse polarity connections.



6. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the image above. First connect one jumper cable to the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).
7. Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the red, positive (+) battery/ jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
8. Connect the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) battery/ jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (3).
9. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).

Do not allow the jumper cables to contact anything except the correct battery or jumper terminals or the correct ground. Do not lean over the battery when making connections.



WARNING

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) jumper terminal of the discharged battery. A spark could cause the battery to explode and lead to a personal injury or vehicle damage.

10. Start the assisting vehicle and let it run for a few minutes. Then start your vehicle.
11. Keep your vehicle operating for at least 30 minutes or driving to ensure your battery receives enough charge to be able to start on its own after the vehicle is shut off. a completely discharged battery may require as long as 60 minutes runtime to fully recharge it. If the vehicle is run for less, the vehicle may not restart.

If your vehicle will not start after a few attempts, it probably requires service. In this event please seek qualified assistance. If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Disconnect the jumper cables in the exact reverse order you connected them:

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) battery/chassis ground of the assisting vehicle (3).
3. Disconnect the second jumper cable from the red, positive (+) battery/ jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).



Information



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to your vehicle:

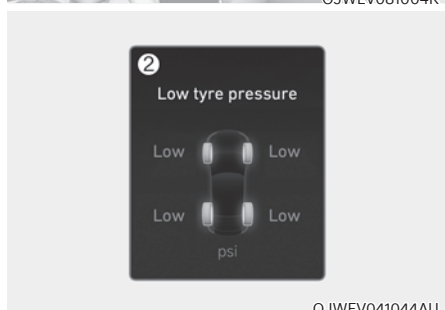
- Only use a 12 V power supply (battery or jumper system) to jump start your vehicle.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle by push-starting.
- Always ensure that the battery cover and cable are tightened after you finish jump starting your vehicle. If you do not do this it may cause damage to the relevant parts, noise or allow entrance of foreign substances.



WARNING

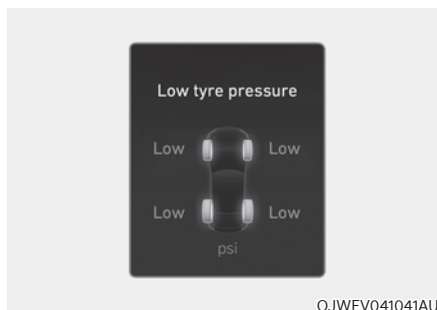
Whilst jump starting your vehicle, prevent the positive (+) and negative (-) cables coming into contact. A spark could cause personal injury.

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)



- (1) Low Tyre Pressure Telltale/TPMS Malfunction Indicator
- (2) Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale and Tyre Pressure Telltale (Shown on the cluster display)

Check tyre pressure



- You can check the tyre pressure in the Utility view on the cluster display.

Refer to the “View modes” section in chapter 4.

- Tyre pressure is displayed within a few minutes of driving after starting the vehicle.
- If tyre pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, ‘Drive to display’ message will appear. After driving, check the tyre pressure.
- The displayed tyre pressure values may differ from those measured with a tyre pressure gauge.
- You can change the tyre pressure unit from the Settings menu in the infotainment system screen. Select:
 - Setup → General Settings → Unit → Tyre Air Pressure Unit → psi/kPa/bar

Information

The infotainment system may change after software updates. For more information, refer to the manual provided in the infotainment system and the quick reference guide.

Tyre pressure monitoring system



WARNING

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure.

Under-inflation also reduces efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

NOTICE

If any of the following happens, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

1. **The Low Tyre Pressure Telltale/ TPMS Malfunction Indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position or when the vehicle is running.**
2. **The TPMS Malfunction Indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.**
3. **The Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale remains illuminated.**



Low tyre pressure warning light

Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale



When the tyre pressure monitoring system warning indicators are illuminated and a warning message appears on the cluster display, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. The Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale will indicate which tyre is significantly underinflated by illuminating the corresponding parking light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel.

If you cannot reach a service station or if the tyre cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tyre with the spare tyre (if equipped).

The Low Tyre Pressure Telltale will remain on and the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may blink for one minute and then remain illuminated (when the vehicle is driven approximately 10 minutes at speed above 25 km/h) until you have the low pressure tyre repaired and replaced on the vehicle.



CAUTION

In winter or cold weather, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale may be illuminated if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a proportional lowering of tyre pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature significantly changes, higher or lower, you should check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.



WARNING

Low pressure damage

Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tyres can cause the tyres to overheat and fail.



TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator

The TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an under-inflated tyre.

NOTICE

The TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is near electric power supply cables or radio transmitters such as police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, transmitting towers, etc.

Additionally, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate if snow chains are used or electronic devices such as computers, chargers, remote starters, navigation, etc. This may interfere with normal operation of the TPMS.

Changing a tyre with TPMS

If you have a flat tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the flat tyre be repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer as soon as possible or replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre (if equipped).

NOTICE

It is recommended that you do not use a puncture-repairing agent not approved by an authorised Genesis repairer or the equivalent specified for your vehicle to repair and/or inflate a low pressure tyre. Tyre sealant not approved by an authorised Genesis repairer or the equivalent specified for your vehicle may damage the tyre pressure sensor.

The spare tyre (if equipped) does not come with a tyre pressure monitoring sensor. When the low pressure tyre or the flat tyre is replaced with the spare tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale will remain on. Also, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is driven at speed above 25 km/h for approximately 10 minutes.

Once the original wheel equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring sensor is reinflated to the recommended pressure and reinstalled on the vehicle, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale and TPMS Malfunction Indicator will go off within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicators do not go off after a few minutes we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.

Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem (except for the spare tyre). You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tyres serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer.

You may not be able to identify a tyre with low pressure by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km in that 3 hour period.

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always be sure the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.



WARNING

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.



WARNING

- **The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.**
- **If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.**

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TYRE (WITH TYRE MOBILITY KIT, IF EQUIPPED)



OJWEV081006L

For safe operation, carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual before use.

- (1) Compressor
- (2) Sealant bottle

The tyre mobility kit is a temporary fix to the tyre we recommend the tyre be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer or the equivalent approved for your vehicle as soon as possible.



CAUTION

When two or more tyres are flat, do not use the tyre mobility kit because sealant supplied with the Tyre Mobility Kit can only be used for one flat tyre.



WARNING

Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit to repair punctures in the tyre walls. This can result in an accident due to tyre failure.



WARNING

Have your tyre repaired as soon as possible. The tyre may lose air pressure at any time after inflating with the Tyre Mobility Kit.

Introduction

With the Tyre Mobility Kit you stay mobile even after experiencing a tyre puncture.

The compressor and sealing compound system effectively and comfortably seals most punctures in a passenger car tyre caused by nails or similar objects and reinflates the tyre.

After you ensure that the tyre is properly sealed you can drive cautiously on the tyre (distance up to 200 km) at a max. speed of (80 km/h) in order to reach a service station or tyre dealer for a tyre replacement.

It is possible that some tyres, especially with larger punctures or damage to the sidewall, cannot be sealed completely.

Air pressure loss in the tyre may adversely affect tyre performance.

For this reason, you should avoid abrupt steering or other driving manoeuvres, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or if a trailer is in use.

The Tyre Mobility Kit is not designed or intended as a permanent tyre repair method and is to be used for one tyre only.

This instruction shows you step by step how to temporarily seal the puncture simply and reliably.

Read the section “Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit”.



WARNING

Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if a tyre is severely damaged by driving run flat or with insufficient air pressure.

Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the Tyre Mobility Kit.

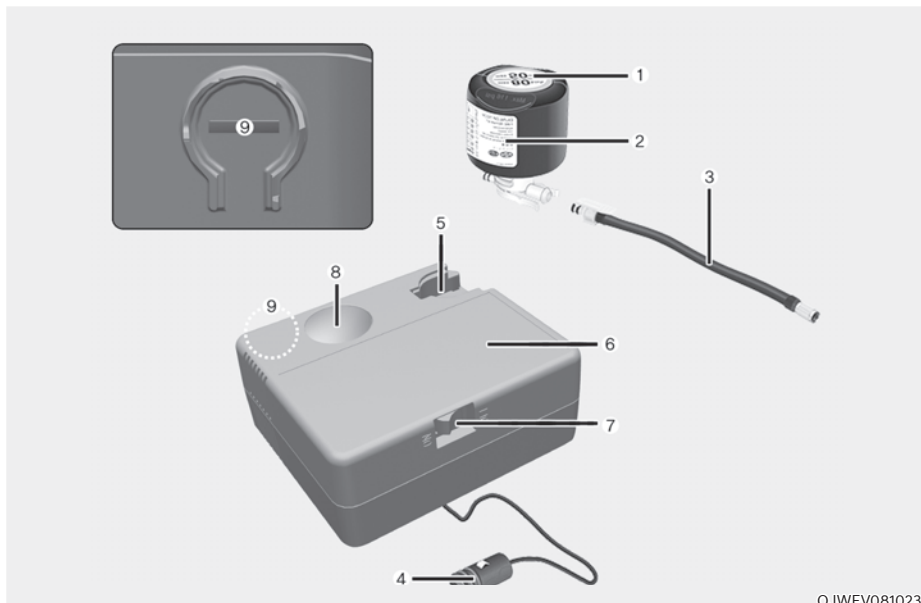
Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit

- Park your car at the side of the road so that you can work with the Tyre Mobility Kit away from moving traffic.
- To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you're on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake.
- Only use the Tyre Mobility Kit for sealing/inflation passenger car tyres. Only punctured areas located within the tread region of the tyre can be sealed using the tyre mobility kit.
- Do not use on motorcycles, bicycles or any other type of tyres.
- When the tyre and wheel are damaged, do not use Tyre Mobility Kit for your safety.
- Use of the Tyre Mobility Kit may not be effective for tyre damage larger than approximately 4 mm.

We recommend that you contact the nearest authorised Genesis repairer if the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the tyre mobility kit.

- Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if a tyre is severely damaged by driving, run flat or with insufficient air pressure.
- Do not remove any foreign objects such as nails or screws that have penetrated the tyre.
- Provided the car is outdoors, leave the Vehicle is ON (**READY** indicator ON). Otherwise operating the compressor may eventually drain the car battery.
- Never leave the Tyre Mobility Kit unsupervised whilst it is being used.
- Do not leave the compressor running for more than 10 minutes at a time or it may overheat.
- Do not use the Tyre Mobility Kit if the ambient temperature is below -30°C (-22°F).
- In the event that sealant contacts your skin, wash the area thoroughly with plenty of water. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In the event that sealant contacts your eyes, flush your eyes for at least 15 minutes. If the irritation persists, seek medical attention.
- In the event that sealant is swallowed, rinse your mouth and drink plenty of water. However, never give anything to an unconscious person and seek medical attention immediately.
- Long time exposure to the sealant may cause damage to bodily tissue such as kidney, etc.

Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit



OJWEV081023

1. Speed restriction label
2. Sealant bottle and label with speed restriction
3. Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel
4. Connectors and cable for power outlet direct connection
5. Holder for the sealant bottle
6. Compressor
7. ON/OFF switch
8. Pressure gauge for displaying the tyre inflation pressure
9. Button for reducing the tyre inflation pressure

Strictly follow the specified sequence, otherwise the sealant may escape under high pressure.



WARNING

Expired sealant

Do not use the Tyre sealant after the sealant has expired (for example, past the expiration date on the sealant container). This can increase the risk of tyre failure.



WARNING

Sealant

- Keep out of reach of children.
- Avoid contact with eyes.
- Do not swallow.

Using the Tyre Mobility Kit When a tyre is flat



CAUTION



Detach the speed restriction label (1) from the sealant bottle (2), and place it in a highly visible place inside the vehicle such as on the steering wheel to remind the driver not to drive too fast.



CAUTION

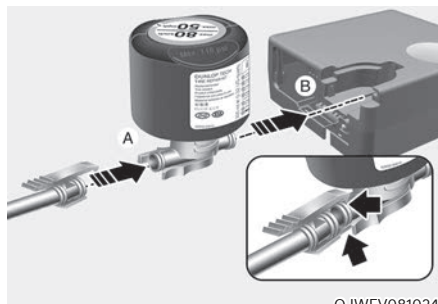
If only the tyre pressure needs to be adjusted, refer to “How to adjust tyre pressure” in this chapter.

Before using the Tyre Mobility Kit, be fully aware of the explanation on and instructions the sealant.



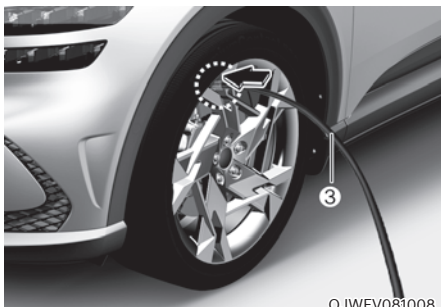
ORG3EV081022

1. Shake the sealant bottle (2).



OJWEV081024

2. Connect the filling hose (3) to the sealant bottle (2) in the direction of (A) and connect the sealant bottle to the compressor (6) in the direction of (B).
3. Ensure that the compressor is switched OFF.



OJWEV081008

4. Unscrew the valve cap from the valve of the defective wheel and screw the filling hose (3) of the sealant bottle onto the valve.



CAUTION

Securely install the sealant filling hose onto the valve. If not, sealant may flow rearward, possibly clogging the filling hose.



OJWEV081009R

5. Plug the compressor power cord (4) into the vehicle power outlet.

NOTICE

Only use the front passenger side power outlet when connecting the power cord.

6. With the vehicle ON (**READY** indicator ON), switch on the compressor and let it run for approximately 5~7 minutes to fill the sealant up to proper pressure. (refer to the “Tyres and wheels”, chapter 2). The inflation pressure of the tyre after filling is unimportant and will be checked/corrected later.

Be careful not to overinflate the tyre and stay away from the tyre when filling it.



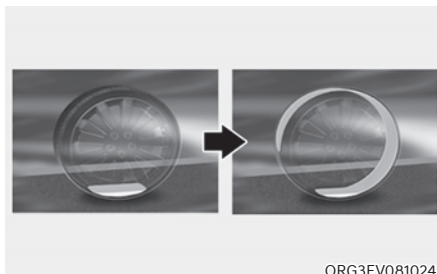
CAUTION

Tyre pressure

Do not attempt to drive your vehicle if the tyre pressure is below 200 kPa (29 psi). This could result in an accident due to sudden tyre failure.

7. Switch off the compressor.
8. Detach the hoses from the sealant bottle connector and from the tyre valve.

Return the Tyre Mobility Kit to its storage location in the vehicle.



ORG3EV081024

9. Immediately drive approximately 7~10 km (about 10 min) to evenly distribute the sealant in the tyre.

Do not exceed a speed of 80 km/h. If possible, do not fall below a speed of 20 km/h.

Whilst driving, if you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise, reduce your speed and drive with caution until you can safely pull off of the side of the road.

Call for road side service or towing.



OJWEV081008

10. After driving approximately 7~10 km (about 10 min), stop at a safety location.
11. Connect the filling hose (3) of the compressor directly to the tyre valve.
12. Plug the compressor power cord into the vehicle power outlet.
13. Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the recommended tyre inflation.

With the Vehicle is ON (READY indicator ON) proceed as follows.

- To increase the inflation pressure : Switch on the compressor. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.
- To reduce the inflation pressure: Press the button (9) on the compressor.

NOTICE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.



Information

The pressure reading on the gauge may be higher than the actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tyre pressure, the compressor needs to be turned off.



CAUTION

If the inflation pressure is not maintained, drive the vehicle a second time, refer to step 9.

Then repeat steps 10 to 13.

Use of the Tyre Mobility Kit may be ineffective for tyre damage larger than approximately 4 mm.

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer if the tyre cannot be made roadworthy with the Tyre Mobility Kit.



WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be at least 220 kPa (32 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving.

Call for road side service or towing.



CAUTION

Tyre pressure sensor (if equipped with TPMS)

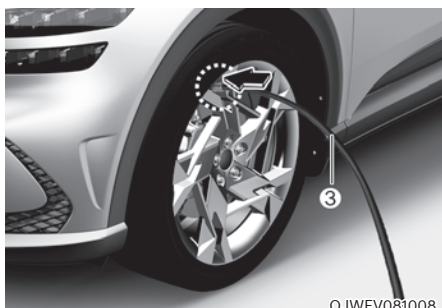
The sealant on the tyre pressure sensor and wheel should be removed when you replace the tyre with a new one and inspect the tyre pressure sensors. We recommend that you get this done by an authorised Genesis repairer.



Information

When reinstalling the repaired or replaced tyre and wheel on the vehicle, tighten the wheel bolt to 14~16 kgf·m (101~116 lbf·ft).

How to adjust tyre pressure



1. Park your vehicle in a safe location.
2. Connect the filling hose (3) of the compressor directly to the tyre valve.
3. Plug the compressor power cord into the vehicle power outlet.

4. Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the recommended tyre inflation.

With the Vehicle is ON (READY indicator ON), proceed as follows.

- To increase the inflation pressure : Switch on the compressor. To check the current inflation pressure setting, briefly switch off the compressor.
- To reduce the inflation pressure: Press the button (9) on the compressor.

NOTICE

Do not let the compressor run for more than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.



Information

- The pressure reading on the gauge may be higher than the actual reading when the compressor is running. To get an accurate tyre reading, the compressor needs to be turned off.
- When reinstalling the repaired or replaced tyre and wheel on the vehicle, tighten the wheel bolt to 14~16 kgf·m (101~116 lbf·ft).



CAUTION

Do not use the sealant when only the tyre pressure needs to be adjusted.



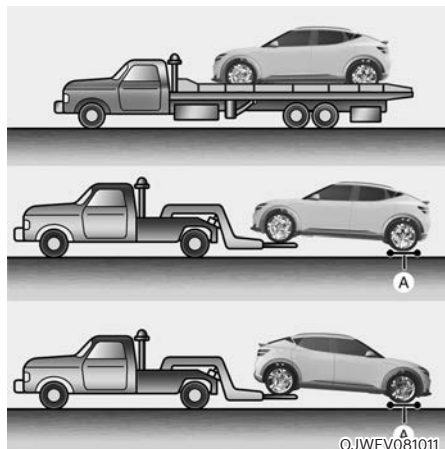
WARNING

The tyre inflation pressure must be at least 220 kPa (32 psi). If it is not, do not continue driving.

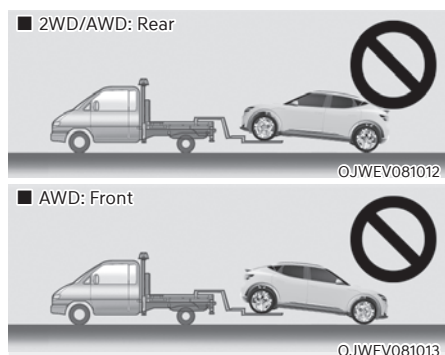
Call for road side service or towing.

TOWING

Towing service



[A]: Dollies



If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorised Genesis repairer or a commercial tow-truck service.

Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

For 2WD vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the rear wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the rear wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the rear of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the front.

For AWD vehicles, it must be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.

Only move a very short distance within 10 m with speed below 5 km/h when loading and unloading with a tow truck, or repositioning the vehicle. The gear must be at N (Neutral) position and parking brake released. When the gear and parking brake control are unable to operate, move the vehicle with the rear wheels lifted.



CAUTION

Failure to shift the gear to N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the reduction gear.

NOTICE

Do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.

**CAUTION**

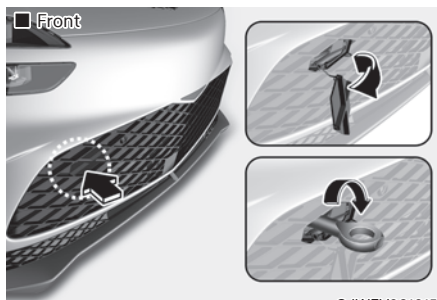
- Do not tow the vehicle with the 2WD: rear, AWD: front/rear wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.
- Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.



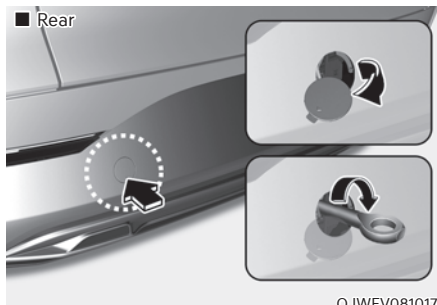
OJWEV082013CN

Removable towing hook

1. Open the tailgate, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.



OJWEV081015



OJWEV081017

2. Remove the hole cover by pressing the lower part of the cover on the bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.
4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

EMERGENCY COMMODITY (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle is equipped with emergency commodities to help you respond to emergency situation.

Fire extinguisher

NOTICE

This vehicle is equipped with the powder-type fire extinguisher exclusively for the fire caused by the electricity in the vehicle. Using water or other inappropriate fire extinguisher may cause the electric shock and collateral damage. If the fire cannot be controlled by the fire extinguisher equipped in the vehicle, avoid approaching to the fire and call fire station. Make sure to announce that the fire is caused by the electric vehicle.

If there is small fire and you know how to use the fire extinguisher, follow these steps carefully.

1. Pull out the safety pin at the top of the extinguisher that keeps the handle from being accidentally pressed.
2. Aim the nozzle towards the base of the fire.
3. Stand approximately 2.5 m (8 ft) away from the fire and squeeze the handle to discharge the extinguisher. If you release the handle, the discharge will stop.
4. Sweep the nozzle back and forth at the base of the fire. After the fire appears to be out, watch carefully since it may re-ignite.

First aid kit

Supplies for use in giving first aid such as scissors, bandage and adhesive tape, etc., are provided.

Triangle reflector

Place the triangle reflector on the road to warn oncoming vehicles during emergencies, such as when the vehicle is parked by the roadside due to problems.

Tyre pressure gauge (if equipped)

Tyres normally lose some air in day-to-day use, and you may have to add a air periodically and usually it is not a sign of a leaking tyre, but of normal wear. Always check tyre pressure when the tyres are cold because tyre pressure increases with temperature.

To check the tyre pressure, take the following steps:

1. Unscrew the inflation valve cap that is located on the rim of the tyre.
2. Press and hold the gauge against the tyre valve. Some air will leak as you begin and more will leak if you don't press the gauge in firmly.
3. A firm non-leaking push will activate the gauge.
4. Read the tyre pressure on the gauge to see whether the tyre pressure is low or high.
5. Adjust the tyre pressure to the specified pressure. Refer to "Tyres and wheels" section in chapter 2.
6. Reinstall the inflation valve cap.

**WARNING**

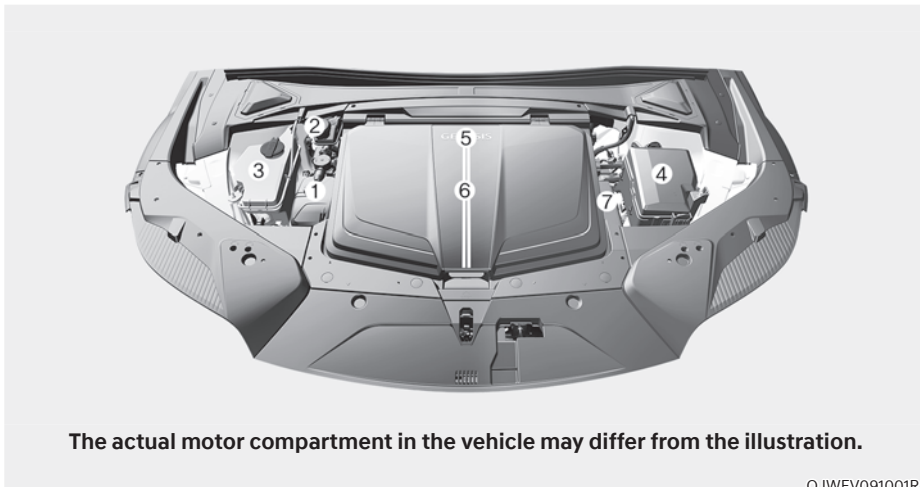
- If an accident occurs, park the vehicle in a safe place. To isolate the high voltage battery, turn the vehicle off and pull the yellow label in the high voltage battery switch to shut down the high voltage battery. You can also shut down the high voltage battery by disconnecting the 12 V auxiliary battery cables. Be sure to disconnect both (+) cable and (-) cable.
- Do not touch the exposed electric wires. Do not touch high voltage wires (orange), connectors and other electric components.
- When an accident occurs, lethal gas and fluid from a damaged high voltage battery can leak. Ensure to not touch or be exposed to the fluid and gas. When flammable or poisonous gas leak inside the vehicle, open windows and evacuate to a safe place. If leaked fluid comes in contact with your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water. If the fluid contacts with your skin, wash it with salt water and seek immediate medical attention.
- When the vehicle is flooded, immediately turn the vehicle off and evacuate to a safe place. For your safety we recommend that you call the fire services and/or contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
- If a fire spreads to the high voltage battery, an additional fire may occur.

9. Maintenance

Motor compartment	9-3
Maintenance services	9-4
Owner's responsibility	9-4
Owner maintenance precautions.....	9-4
Owner maintenance	9-5
Owner maintenance schedule	9-6
Scheduled maintenance services.....	9-7
Normal maintenance schedule	9-8
Maintenance under severe usage conditions	9-10
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items	9-11
Coolant	9-12
Brake fluid	9-14
Checking the brake fluid level	9-14
Reduction gear fluid	9-15
Washer fluid	9-15
Checking the washer fluid level	9-15
Cabin air filter.....	9-16
Filter inspection.....	9-16
Filter replacement.....	9-16
Wiper blades	9-18
Blade inspection.....	9-18
Blade replacement.....	9-18
Battery (12 V)	9-20
For best battery service	9-21
Battery capacity label	9-21
12 V Battery Recharging	9-22
Reset items	9-23

Tyres and wheels.....	9-24
Tyre care.....	9-24
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures	9-24
Check tyre inflation pressure	9-25
Tyre rotation.....	9-26
Wheel alignment and tyre balance	9-26
Tyre replacement.....	9-27
Wheel replacement.....	9-28
Tyre traction.....	9-28
Tyre maintenance.....	9-28
Tyre sidewall labelling	9-28
Low aspect ratio tyres	9-31
Fuses.....	9-32
Instrument panel fuse replacement	9-33
Motor compartment panel fuse replacement.....	9-34
Fuse/relay panel description	9-35
Light bulbs.....	9-45
Headlamp, parking lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement	9-46
Puddle lamp replacement	9-47
Rear combination lamp replacement	9-47
High mounted stop lamp replacement	9-48
Licence plate lamp replacement.....	9-48
Front boot lamp replacement	9-49
Interior light replacement.....	9-49
Appearance care.....	9-51
Exterior care	9-51
Interior care	9-56

MOTOR COMPARTMENT



- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Coolant reservoir | 5. Cabin air filter |
| 2. Brake fluid reservoir | 6. Front boot |
| 3. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir | 7. Battery |
| 4. Fuse box | |

MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer. An authorised Genesis repairer meets the Genesis high service quality standards and receives technical support from Genesis in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

Owner's responsibility

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

Owner maintenance precautions

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury. This chapter provides instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

Your vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle.

NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Service Passport provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any service or maintenance procedure, have it done by an authorised Genesis repairer.

OWNER MAINTENANCE



WARNING

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that it is done by an authorised Genesis repairer. ALWAYS follow these precautions for performing maintenance work:

- **Park your vehicle on level ground. Shift the vehicle to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position.**
- **Block the tyres (front and back) to prevent the vehicle from moving. Remove loose clothing or jewellery that can become entangled in moving parts.**
- **Keep flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery parts.**



WARNING

Make sure to turn the Start/Stop button to the 'OFF' position to shut down the vehicle before performing maintenance work on the vehicle.

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorised Genesis repairer at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance vehicle checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts and lubricants used.

The electric control system in the vehicle may have a negative impact on any medical implants, such as a pacemaker etc. Please seek advice on possible issues the electrical control system could have on your artificial device before performing any maintenance work.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for charging:

- Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Check for low or under-inflated tyres.



WARNING



Be careful if checking your coolant level when the motor compartment is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns and other injuries.

Whilst operating your vehicle:

- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice if there is any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or a “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your gear shift occurs, check the shift gear fluid level.
- Check the shift gear P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

At least monthly:

- Check coolant level in the coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stop lamps, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare (if equipped) for tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Check for loose wheel bolts.

At least twice a year: (for example, every Spring and Autumn)

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with a clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlamps alignment.
- Check the seat belts for wear and function.

At least once a year:

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate door and bonnet locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weather strips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate shift gear linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery (12 V) and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES

Follow Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, you must follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km in normal temperature or less than 16 km in freezing temperature
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust condition
- Driving in heavy traffic area with the ambient temperature higher than 32 °C (90 °F) whilst consuming more than 50% of electric energy
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
- Using for towing or camping, and driving with loads on the roof
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
- Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distance shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

Normal maintenance schedule

The following maintenance services must be performed to ensure good vehicle performance. Keep receipts for all vehicle services to protect your warranty. Where both mileage and time are shown, the frequency of service is determined by whichever occurs first.

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS		Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first											
		Months	24	48	72	96	120	144	168	192			
MAINTENANCE ITEM	Km×1,000	30	60	90	120	150	180	210	240				
Cooling system		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I				
Coolant *1		At first, replace at 195,000 km or 120 months after that, replace every 30,000 km or 24 months											
Reduction gear fluid			I		I		I		I				
12 V auxiliary battery condition		Inspect every 15,000 km or 12 months											
All electrical system		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I				
Brake lines, hoses and connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I				
Brake pedal		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I				

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.
R : Replace or change.

*1: When replacing or adding coolant, we recommend that you visit an authorised Genesis repairer.

Normal maintenance schedule

MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	Number of months or driving distance, whichever comes first										
	Months	24	48	72	96	120	144	168	192		
MAINTENANCE ITEM	Km×1,000	30	60	90	120	150	180	210	240		
Parking brake		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Brake discs and pads		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Driveshaft and boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Rotate Tyres (includes tread wear inspection and tyre pressure check)		Rotate every 15,000 km or 12 months									
Front suspension ball joints		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Bolt and nuts on chassis and body		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioning refrigerant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioning compressor		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cabin air filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

Maintenance under severe usage conditions

The following items must be serviced more frequently on cars mainly used under severe driving conditions.

Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : Replace

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Reduction gear fluid	R	Every 120,000 km	B, D, G, H
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Driveshaft and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I
Cabin air filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	B, D, F

Severe driving conditions

- Repeatedly driving short distance of less than 8 km in normal temperature or less than 16 km in freezing temperature
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, graveled or salt spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust condition
- Driving in heavy traffic area with the ambient temperature higher than 32 °C (90 °F) whilst consuming more than 50% of electric energy
- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
- Using for towing or camping, and driving with loads on the roof
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, other commercial use or vehicle towing
- Frequently driving under high speed or rapid acceleration/deceleration
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Cooling system

Check cooling system components, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Reduction gear fluid

The reduction gear fluid should be inspected according to the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

Brake fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between the MIN and the MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 4 specification.

Brake discs, pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads, the disc, and the rotor for any excessive wear-out. Inspect calipers for any fluid leakage.

Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

Steering gear box, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and the vehicle off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel. Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage.

Replace any damaged parts.

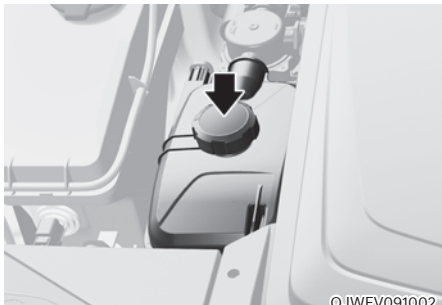
Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

Air conditioning refrigerant

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

COOLANT



Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between the MAX or F and the MIN or L marks on the side of the coolant reservoir when the parts in the motor compartment are cool.

If the coolant is low, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

Adding other types of water or antifreeze can damage the vehicle.



WARNING



The electric motor for the cooling fan may continue to operate or start up when the vehicle is not running and can cause serious injury.

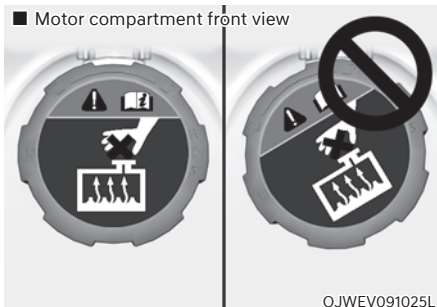


Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the rotating fan blades of the cooling fan.

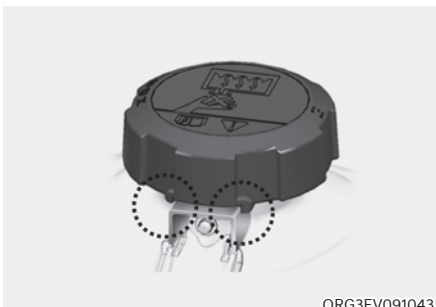
The electric motor for the cooling fan is controlled by vehicle coolant temperature, refrigerant pressure and vehicle speed. As the vehicle coolant temperature decreases, the electric motor will automatically shut off. This is a normal condition.

**WARNING**

- 
 Check the coolant level when the motor compartment is cooled. Coolant level is influenced by temperature, and if the coolant reservoir cap is removed when coolant temperature is high, hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure causing serious injury.
- Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refilling coolant. Otherwise the motor could overheat whilst driving.



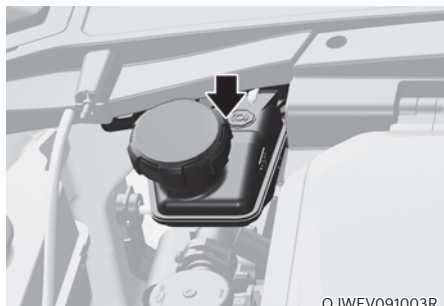
1. Check if the coolant cap label is straight in front.



2. Make sure that the tiny protrusions inside the coolant cap are securely interlocked.

BRAKE FLUID

Checking the brake fluid level



Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add the specified brake fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated kilometres. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings. If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the brake system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

If the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid this could indicate a leak in the brake system. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

Do not let brake fluid enter into your eyes. If brake fluid gets in your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

NOTICE

- **Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as it will result in paint damage.**
- **NEVER use brake fluid which has been exposed to open air for an extended time, as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly.**
- **Do not use the wrong type of brake fluid. A few drops of mineral based oil in your brake system can damage brake system parts.**



Information

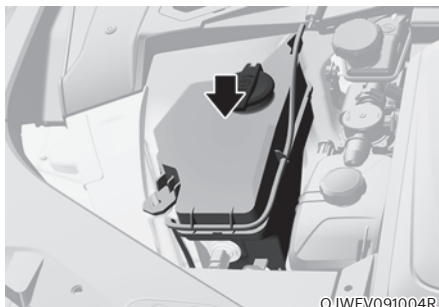
Use only the specified brake fluid (refer to “Recommended lubricants and capacities” section in chapter 2).

REDUCTION GEAR FLUID

There is no reduction gear fluid level gauge in the vehicle. Check the reduction gear fluid every 60,000 km regularly. If the vehicle is driven under severe conditions, check the maintenance under severe usage conditions and we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

WASHER FLUID

Checking the washer fluid level



Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.



WARNING

To prevent serious injury or death, take the following safety precautions when using washer fluid:

- Do not use coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir. Coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident or damage to paint and body trim.
- Do not allow sparks or flames to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Washer fluid may contain alcohol and can be flammable.
- Do not drink washer fluid and avoid contact with skin. Washer fluid is harmful to humans and animals.
- Keep washer fluid away from children and animals.

CABIN AIR FILTER

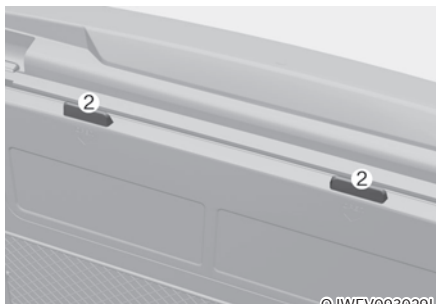
Filter inspection

The cabin air filter should be replaced according to the Maintenance Schedule. If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced sooner. Replace the cabin air filter by following the procedure below and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

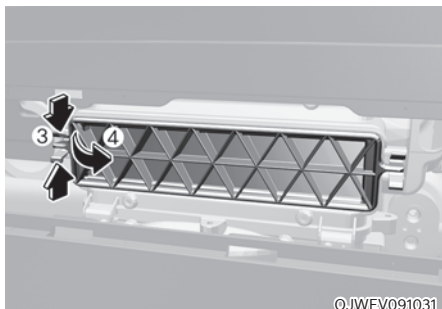
Filter replacement



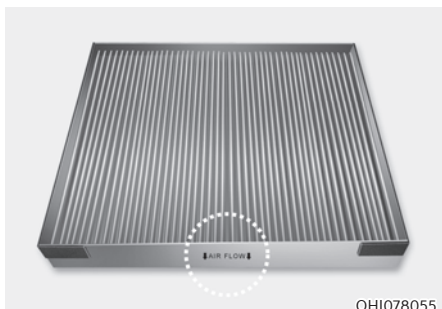
1. Lift up the front boot cover whilst pressing the front boot lever (1).



2. Remove the cover by pulling the front boot handle (2).



3. Press and hold the lock (3) on the left side of the cover (4).
4. Replace the cabin air filter.
5. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

NOTICE

Install a new cabin air filter in the correct direction with the arrow symbol (↓) facing downwards, to prevent noise and reduced effectiveness.

WIPER BLADES

Blade inspection

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers.

Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, arms or other components, do not:

- Use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.
- Attempt to move the wipers manually.
- Use non-specified wiper blades.



Information

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windscreen difficult to clean.



Information

Wiper blades are consumable items. Normal wear of the wipers may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

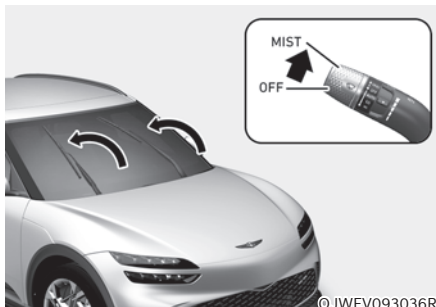
Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

NOTICE

- In order to prevent damage to the bonnet and the wiper arms, the wiper arms should only be lifted when in the top wiping position.
- Always return the wiper arms to the windscreen before driving.

Front windscreen wiper blade replacement

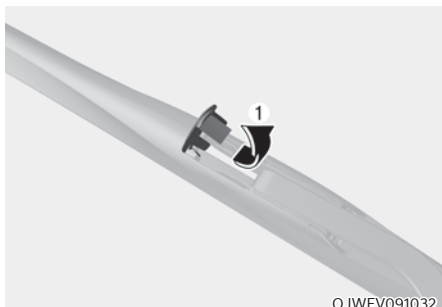


1. Within 20 seconds of turning off the vehicle, lift up (or push down) and hold the wiper lever to the MIST position for about 2 seconds until the wipers move to the top wipe position.
2. At this time you can lift the wipers off the windscreen.

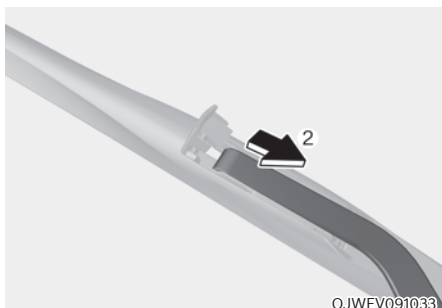


Information

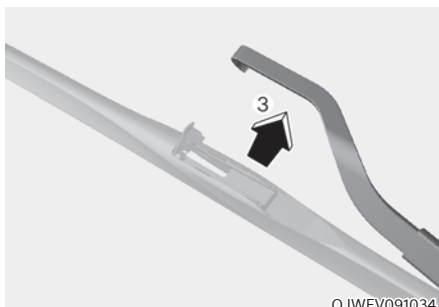
This vehicle has a “hidden” wiper design which means that the wipers cannot be lifted manually when they are in their bottom resting position.



1. Lift up the wiper blade clip (1).



2. Then slide the wiper blade down (2).



3. Remove the wiper blade from the wiper arm (3).
4. Install the new blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.
5. Return the wiper arm gently onto the windscreen.

BATTERY (12 V)



WARNING

To prevent **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH** to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:



Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of reach of children.



Batteries contain sulphuric acid which is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.

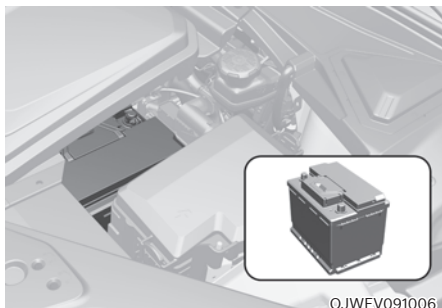
If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

- When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.
- **NEVER** attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.
- The electrical ignition switch works with high voltage. **NEVER** touch these components with the (READY) indicator ON or when the START/STOP button is in the ON position.

NOTICE

- Always follow these instructions when handling your vehicle's battery to prevent damage to your battery.
- When you do not use the vehicle for a long time in a low temperature area, disconnect the battery and keep it indoors.
- Always charge the battery fully to prevent battery case damage in low temperature areas.
- Prevent liquid from wetting the battery terminals. The performance of the battery may be degraded, and may cause injury. Be cautious when loading liquid in the motor compartment.
- Do not tilt the battery.
- If you connect unauthorised electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorised devices.

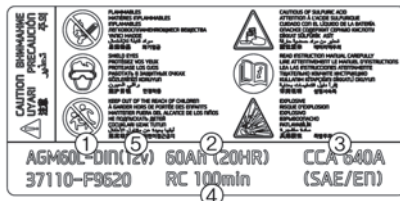
For best battery service



OJWEV091006

- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

Battery capacity label



OJWEV093047R

* The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. AGM60L-DIN: The Genesis vehicle model name of battery
2. 60AH (20HR): The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
3. CCA 640A: The cold-test current in amperes by SAE / EN
4. 100RC: The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
5. 12V: The normal voltage

12 V Battery Recharging

By battery charger

Should your vehicle's 12 V battery become discharged either run the motor for at least 60 minutes driving. Alternatively you may connect a fully automatic regulated charger to the battery in the motor compartment.



WARNING

Always follow these instructions when recharging your vehicle's battery to avoid the risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH** from explosions or acid burns:

- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the vehicle.
- Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.
- Always work outdoors or in an area with plenty of ventilation.
- Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.
- The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in a well ventilated area.
- Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin boiling violently.

- The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected. Disconnect the battery charger in the following order:

1. Turn off the battery charger main switch.
2. Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.
3. Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.

- We recommend that you use batteries for replacement from an authorised Genesis repairer.

NOTICE

AGM battery

- Absorbent Glass Mat (AGM) batteries are maintenance-free and we recommend that the AGM battery be serviced by an authorised Genesis repairer. For charging your AGM battery, use only fully automatic battery chargers that are specially developed for AGM batteries.
- When replacing the AGM battery, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Do not open or remove the cap on top of the battery. This may cause leaks of internal electrolyte that could result in severe injury.

By jump starting

After a jump start from a good battery, drive the vehicle for 20-30 minutes before it is shutoff. The vehicle may not restart if you shut it off before the battery had a chance to adequately recharge. See “Jump Starting” in chapter 8 for more information on jump starting procedures.



Information



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

Reset items

The following items may need to be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Driving info/After recharging/Accumulated info (items in Utility view) (see chapter 4)
- Integrated memory system (see chapter 5)
- Power window (see chapter 5)
- Power tailgate (see chapter 5)
- Climate control system (see chapter 5)
- Clock (see Infotainment system manual)
- Infotainment system (see Infotainment system manual)

TYRES AND WHEELS



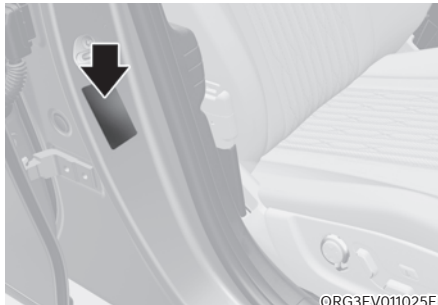
WARNING

Tyre failure may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. To reduce risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**, take the following precautions:

- Inspect your tyres monthly for proper inflation as well as wear and damage.
- The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar. Always use a tyre pressure gauge to measure tyre pressure. Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling.
- Check the pressure of the spare (if equipped) every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.
- Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, or traction.
- **ALWAYS** replace tyres with the same size, type, construction and tread pattern as those originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) resulting in a serious accident.

Tyre care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum electric energy economy, you must always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.



All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver's side centre pillar.

Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

All tyre pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tyres are cold. "Cold tyres" means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or driven less than 1.6 km.

Warm tyres normally exceed recommended cold tyre pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure or the tyres will be under-inflated. For recommended inflation pressure, refer to "Tyres and wheels" section in chapter 2.



WARNING

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that could result in loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Severe under-inflation can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tyre failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.



CAUTION

- Under-inflation results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced electric energy economy. Wheel deformation is also possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, we recommend it be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Over-inflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.

Check tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres, including the spare tyre (if equipped), once a month or more.

How to check

Use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to check tyre pressure. You can not tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated when they are under-inflated.

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended pressure. Make sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

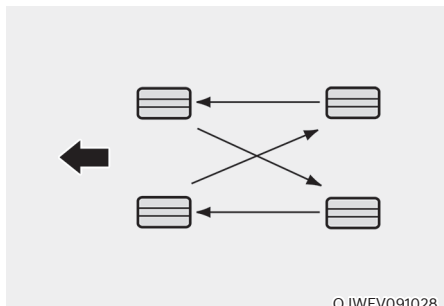
If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

Tyre rotation

To equalize tread wear, Genesis recommends that the tyres be rotated every 15,000 km or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tyre. Replace the tyre if you find any of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check wheel bolt tightness (proper torque is 14–16 kgf.m [101–116 lbf.ft]).



Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.

Information

The outside and inside of the unsymmetrical tyre is distinguishable. When installing an unsymmetrical tyre, be sure to install the side marked “outside” face the outside. If the side marked “inside” is installed on the outside, it will have a negative effect on vehicle performance.

WARNING

- Do not use the compact spare tyre for tyre rotation.
- Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Wheel alignment and tyre balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tyre life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

NOTICE

Incorrect wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminium wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.

Tyre replacement



If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.



WARNING

To reduce the risk of **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY**:

- **Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.**
- **Always replace tyres with the same size as those originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) resulting in a serious accident.**

- When replacing tyres (or wheels), it is recommended to replace the two front or two rear tyres (or wheels) as a pair. Replacing just one tyre can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.
- Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, Genesis recommends that tyres be replaced after six (6) years of normal service.
- Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this warning may cause sudden tyre failure, which could lead to a loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Compact spare tyre (if equipped) replacement

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.



WARNING

The original tyre should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare (if equipped) and loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. The compact spare tyre (if equipped) is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle over 80 km/h when using the compact spare tyre.

Wheel replacement

When replacing the metal wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

Tyre traction

Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres, tyres that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tyres should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

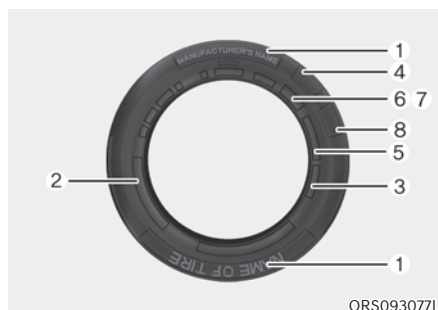
Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have an authorised Genesis repairer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

Tyre sidewall labelling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.



ORS093077L

1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or brand name is shown.

2. Tyre size designation

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your car. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tyre size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

245/45R19 101H

- 245 - Tyre width in millimetres.
- 45 - Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.
- R - Tyre construction code (Radial).
- 19 - Rim diameter in inches.
- 101 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.
- H - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

8.5J X 19

- 8.5 - Rim width in inches.
- J - Rim contour designation.
- 19 - Rim diameter in inches.

Tyre speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger vehicle tyres. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270 km/h
Y	300 km/h

3. Checking tyre life (TIN : Tyre Identification Number)

Any tyres that are over six years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tyre) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of characters on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX 0000

The front part of the DOT shows a plant code number, tyre size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 3223 represents that the tyre was produced in the 32nd week of 2023.

4. Genesis exclusive tyre

Genesis recommends that tyres designed specifically for Genesis vehicles be used. You may find the marking “GOE” (Genesis Original Equipment) embossed on the tyre sidewall.

5. Tyre ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tyre. Tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter “R” means radial ply construction; the letter “D” means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter “B” means restrained-bias ply construction.

6. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

7. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

8. Uniform tyre quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times (1½) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the sidewalls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may vary with respect to grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tyre’s ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.



WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature - A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



WARNING

The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, over-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Low aspect ratio tyres (if equipped)

The aspect ratio is lower than 50 on low aspect ratio tyres.

Because low aspect ratio tyres are optimised for handling and braking, their sidewall is a little stiffer than a standard tyre. Also low aspect ratio tyres tend to be wider and consequently have a greater contact patch with the road surface. In some instances they may generate more road noise compared with standard tyres.



CAUTION

The side wall of a low aspect ratio tyre is shorter than the normal one. Thus, the low-aspect wheel and tyre are easily damaged. Follow the instruction below:

- **When driving on a rough road or driving off a road, be careful not to damage the tyres and wheels. After driving, inspect the tyres and wheels.**
- **When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive the vehicle slowly so as not to damage the tyres and wheels.**
- **When there is an impact on a tyre, inspect the tyre condition, or alternatively contact an authorised Genesis repairer.**
- **Inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 3,000 km to prevent tyre damage.**
- **It is difficult to recognise tyre damage only with your eyes. When there is a slight hint of a tyre damage, check and replace the tyre to prevent the damage caused by air leakage.**
- **When a tyre is damaged whilst driving on a rough road, off a road, or over obstacles, such as a pothole, manhole, or kerb stone, your warranty does not cover the damage.**
- **The tyre information is specified on the tyre side wall.**

FUSES

■ Blade type



Normal



Blown

■ Cartridge type

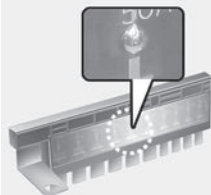


Normal

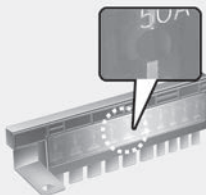


Blown

■ Multi type



Normal



Blown

OTM078035

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 2 fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the others in the vehicle compartment.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted or broken.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel. Before replacing a blown fuse, turn the vehicle and all switches off, and then disconnect the negative battery cable. Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved. We recommend that you immediately consult an authorised Genesis repairer.



WARNING

NEVER replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.

- A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly cause a fire.
- Do not install a wire or aluminium foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and possibly a fire.

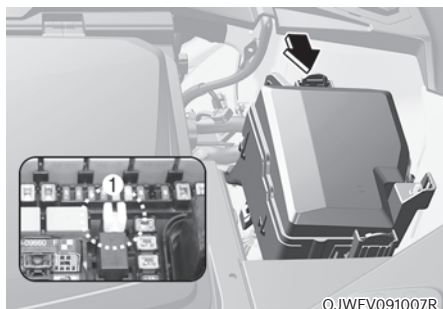
NOTICE

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because this may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

Instrument panel fuse replacement



1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Turn all other switches off.
3. Open the fuse panel cover.
4. Refer to the label on the inside of the fuse panel cover to locate the suspected fuse location.



5. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool (1) provided in the motor compartment fuses panel.

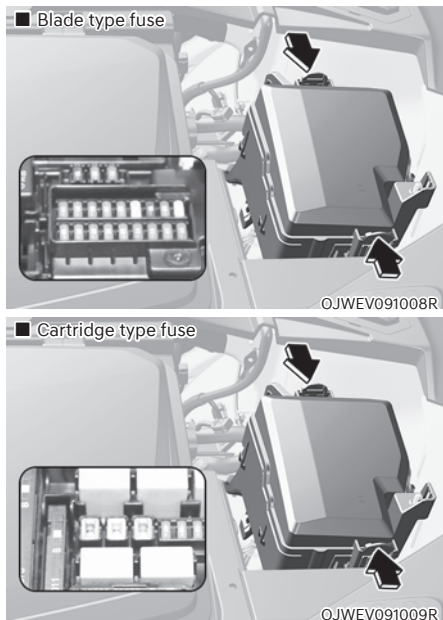
6. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. Spare fuses are provided in the instrument panel fuse panels (or in the motor compartment fuse panel).
7. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

In an emergency, if you do not have a spare fuse, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigarette lighter fuse.

If the headlamps or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are undamaged, check the fuse panel in the motor compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced with one of the same rating.

Motor compartment panel fuse replacement

Blade fuse / Cartridge fuse

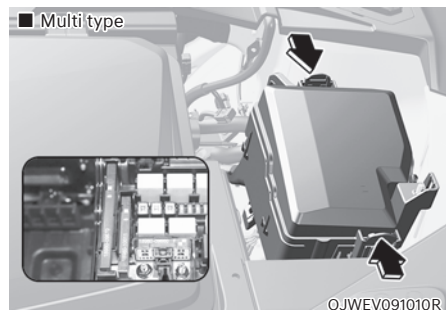


1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Turn all other switches off.
3. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling up.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the removal tool in the motor compartment fuse panel.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

NOTICE

After checking the fuse panel in the motor compartment, securely install the fuse panel cover. You may hear a clicking sound if the cover is securely latched. If it is not securely latched, electrical failure may occur from water contact.

Multi fuse



If the multi fuse or midi fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.

Fuse/relay panel description

Instrument panel fuse panel

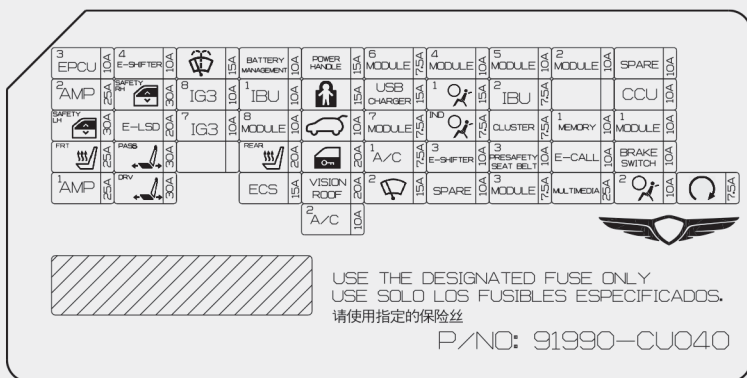


@JWEV091013R

Inside the fuse/relay box cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

i Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.



OJWEV091038L

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
EPCU3	³ EPCU	10A	Rear Inverter (System)
E-SHIFTER 4	⁴ E-SHIFTER	10A	SCU
WASHER		15A	Washer Relay
BATTERY MANAGEMENT	BATTERY MANAGEMENT	10A	Battery System Assembly (BMU)
POWER HANDLE	POWER HANDLE	15A	Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit
MODULE 6	⁶ MODULE	7.5A	IBU, IAU
MODULE 4	⁴ MODULE	10A	ELSD Unit, Rear Inverter (System), ECS Unit, Rear Corner Radar LH/RH, Front View Camera, ADAS Unit (Driving/Parking), instrument panel Switch, VESS Unit, Steering Tilt & Telescopic Unit, Front Radar, Front Corner Radar LH/RH, Front Inverter (System)
MODULE 5	⁵ MODULE	10A	Data Link Connector, CCIC Head Unit, Electro Chromic Mirror, DCU, CCIC Keyboard, Smart Phone Wireless Charger, Console Switch, AMP, Driver/Passenger Power Seat Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Front/Rear Seat Warmer Control Module, Face Recognition Unit, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module
MODULE 2	² MODULE	10A	Face Recognition Unit, Centre Control Panel, AMP, IBU, CCIC Head Unit, P/R Junction Block (RLY. 11), Instrument Cluster, CCU, DCU, IAU, ADAS Unit (Parking)
SPARE (B+)	SPARE	10A	Not Used

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
AMP2	² AMP	25A	AMP
SAFETY P/ WINDOW RH	^{SAFETY RH} 	30A	Rear Safety Power Window Module RH, [LHD] Passenger Safety Power Window Module [RHD] Driver Safety Power Window Module
IG3 8	³ IG3	10A	Rear Inverter (System)
IBU1	¹ IBU	10A	IBU, IAU
CHILD LOCK		15A	Child Lock/Unlock Relay
USB CHARGER	USB CHARGER	15A	Console USB Charger Connector
AIRBAG 1	¹ 	15A	SRS Control Module, Passenger Occupant Detection Sensor
IBU 2	² IBU	7.5A	IBU
CCU	CCU	10A	CCU

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
SAFETY P/ WINDOW LH		30A	Rear Safety Power Window Module LH, [LHD] Driver Safety Power Window Module [RHD] Passenger Safety Power Window Module
E-LSD	E-LSD	20A	ELSD Unit
IG3 7	⁷ IG3	10A	Instrument Cluster, CCU, A/C Controller, PM Sensor, CCIC Head Unit, Incar Temperature Sensor, DCU, A/C PTC Heater, A/C Control Module
MODULE 8	⁸ MODULE	10A	Driver/Passenger Door DSM Monitor, Driver/ Passenger Outside Mirror Unit
TAILGATE OPEN		10A	Tailgate Relay
MODULE 7	⁷ MODULE	7.5A	Headlamps LH/RH, Passenger Power Seat Module
A/BAG IND		7.5A	Overhead Console
CLUSTER	CLUSTER	7.5A	Instrument Cluster, Head-Up Display
MEMORY 1	¹ MEMORY	10A	Driver Door Mood Lamp #1/#2/#3 (Handle/Garnish/ Pocket), Passenger Door Mood Lamp #1/#2/#3 (Handle/Garnish/Pocket), Rear Door Mood Lamp LH #1/#2 (Handle/Garnish), Rear Door Mood Lamp RH #1/#2 (Handle/Garnish), A/C Controller, HUD, A/C Control Module, Security IND, Cluster, Mood Lamp Master, ADAS Unit (Driving/ Parking)
MODULE 1	¹ MODULE	10A	Data Link Connector, Multifunction Switch, CCIC Keyboard, Rain Sensor, BLE Unit, Interior UBW Unit #1/#2/#3, Front UWB Unit LH/RH, AFCU, P/R Junction Block (RLY.9), Driver/Passenger Door Outside Handle, Face Recognition Unit, Driver Power Window Switch, UIP Sensor, Driver Power Outside Mirror Switch, Rear UWB Unit LH/RH, UIP Siren, Driver/Passenger Outside Mirrors Unit, Power Tailgate Unit, Driver Power Seat Module, Driver Power Seat Switch, Driver Lumbar Support Motor, Passenger Power Seat Module, Passenger Power Seat Switch
S/HEATER FRT		25A	Passenger Power Seat Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Driver Power Seat Module

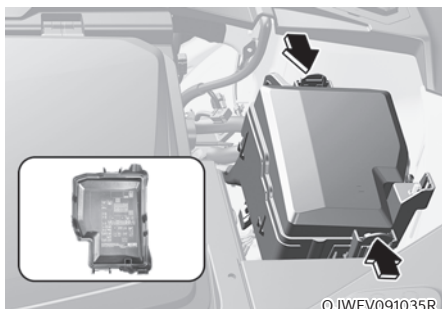
Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
P/SEAT PASS		30A	Passenger Power Seat Switch, Passenger Power Seat Module
S/HEATER RR		20A	Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
DOOR LOCK		20A	Door Lock/Unlock Relay
A/C 1	¹ A/C	7.5A	A/C Control Module, A/C Controller
E-SHIFTER 3	³ E-SHIFTER	10A	Electronic ATM Shift Dial
PRESAFETY SEAT BELT 3	³ PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	10A	Preactive Seat Belt Unit
E-CALL	E-CALL	10A	DCU
BRAKE SWITCH	BRAKE SWITCH	10A	Stop Lamp Switch, IBU
AMP 1	¹ AMP	25A	AMP
P/SEAT DRV		30A	Driver Power Seat Switch, Driver Power Seat Module
ECS	ECS	15A	ECS Unit
VISION ROOF	VISION ROOF	20A	Vision Roof Unit

Instrument panel fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
WIPER FRT 2	² 	15A	Multifunction Switch
SPEAR (IG2)	SPARE	10A	Not Used
MODULE 3	³ MODULE	7.5A	Stop Lamp Switch, IAU, IBU, CCU, Multifunction Switch, Driver/Passenger Door DSM Monitor, Driver Power Window Switch, Overhead Console
MULTIMEDIA	MULTI MEDIA	25A	CCIC Head Unit
AIRBAG 2	² 	10A	SRS Control Module
START		7.5A	VCU, IBU
A/C 2	² A/C	10A	A/C Control Module

Motor compartment fuse panel

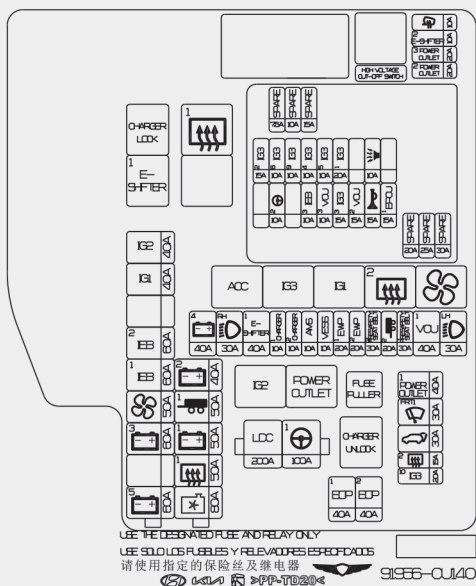


OJWEV091035R

Inside the fuse/relay box cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

i Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.



OJWEV091046L

Vehicle compartment fuse panel

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
MULTI FUSE-1	LDC	LDC	200A	P/R Junction Block (Fuse : F2, S1, S2, S3, S4, S5)
	MDPS1	¹  ¹	100A	MDPS Unit
MULTI FUSE-2	C/FAN		80A	Cooling Fan Motor
	RR HTD1		50A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.3)
	B+1	¹ 	50A	ICU Junction Block (IPS1, IPS2, IPS3, IPS4, IPS5)
	TRAILER1	¹ 	50A	CTM (CAN Type Trailer Module)
	B+2	² 	40A	ICU Junction Block (IPS6, IPS7, IPS8)
MULTI FUSE-3	B+5	⁵ 	60A	PCB Block (IG3 Main Relay, Fuse : F2, F3, F4, F6)
	B+3	³ 	60A	ICU Junction Block (Fuse : F1, F11, F12, F21, F22, F31, F32, F41, F42, F51)
	BLOWER		50A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.9)
	IEB1	¹ IEB	60A	IEB Unit
	IEB2	² IEB	60A	IEB Unit
	IG1	IG1	40A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.5, RLY.7)
	IG2	IG2	40A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.10)

Motor compartment fuse panel

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
FUSE	EOP 1	¹ EOP	40A	Rear Electronic Oil Pump
	EOP 2	² EOP	40A	Front Electronic Oil Pump
	TAILGATE OPEN		30A	Power Tailgate Unit
	FRT WIPER1	^{FRT1} 	30A	Wiper Motor
	POWER OUTLET1	¹ POWER OUTLET	40A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.11)
	B+4	⁴ 	40A	P/R Junction Block (Long Term Load Latch Relay, Fuse : F4, F5, F14, F15, F20, F24, F25, F30, F34, F35, F40, F44, F49)
	HEADLAMP RH	^{RH} 	30A	Headlamp RH
	E-SHIFTER 1	¹ E-SHIFTER	40A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.2 Fuse : F13)
	VCU 1	¹ VCU	40A	VCU
	HEADLAMP LH	^{LH} 	30A	Headlamp LH
	IG3 10	¹⁰ IG3	20A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.6)
	REAR HEATED 2	² 	15A	P/R Junction Block (RLY.8)
	CHARGER 1	¹ CHARGER	10A	ICCU, VCMS, P/R Junction Block (RLY.1/12)
	CHARGER 2	² CHARGER	10A	Charging Door Module
	AMS	AMS	10A	12V Battery Sensor
	VESS	VESS	10A	VESS Unit

Motor compartment fuse panel

Type	Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse Rating	Circuit Protected
FUSE	EWP 1	¹ EWP	20A	Electronic Water Pump #1 (HV Battery)
	EWP 2	² EWP	20A	Electronic Water Pump #2 (HV Battery)
	PRESAFETY SEAT BELT 2	² PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	30A	Preactive Seat Belt
	TRAILER 2	² 	20A	CTM (CAN Type Trailer Module)
	PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	¹ PRESAFETY SEAT BELT	30A	Preactive Seat Belt
	MIRR HTR		10A	Driver/Passenger Outside Mirrors Unit
	E-SHIFTER 2	² E-SHIFTER	10A	SCU, Electronic ATM Shift Lever, P/R Junction Block (RLY.2)
	POWER OUTLET 3	³ POWER OUTLET	20A	Luggage Power Outlet
	POWER OUTLET 2	² POWER OUTLET	20A	Front Power Outlet

LIGHT BULBS

We recommend that have you consult an authorised Genesis repairer to replace most vehicle light bulbs. It is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true for removing the headlamps assembly to get to the bulb(s).

Removing/installing the headlamps assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.



WARNING

- Prior to working on a light, press the foot brake, shift to P (Park), apply the parking brake, press the Start/Stop button to the OFF position and take the key with you when leaving the vehicle to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and to prevent possible electric shock.
- Be aware the bulbs may be hot and may burn your fingers.

NOTICE

Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electrical wiring system.

NOTICE

To prevent damage, do not clean the headlamps lens with chemical solvents or strong detergents.



Information - Headlamp desiccant

This vehicle is equipped with desiccant to reduce fogging inside the headlamps due to moisture. The desiccant is consumable and its performance may change based on the used period or environment. If fogging inside the headlamps due to moisture continues for a long time, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis repairer.



Information

The headlamps and tail lamps lenses could appear frosty if the vehicle is washed after driving or the vehicle is driven at night in wet weather. This condition is caused by temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside and, it does not indicate a problem with your vehicle. When moisture condenses in the lamp, it will evaporate after driving with the headlamps on. The evaporate rate may differ depending on lamp size, lamp position and environmental condition. However, if moisture does not evaporate, we recommend that your vehicle is inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

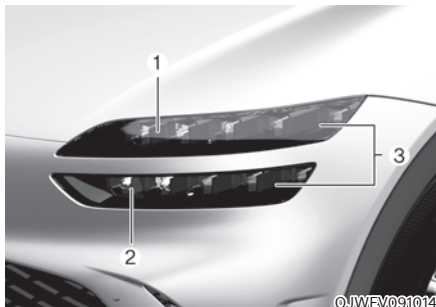
i Information

- A normally functioning lamp may flicker momentarily to stabilize the vehicle's electrical control system. However, if the lamp goes out after flickering momentarily, or continues to flicker, we recommend the system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.
- The parking lamps may not turn on when the parking lamps switch is turned on, but the parking lamps and headlamps switch may turn on when the headlamps switch is turned on. This may be caused by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If this occurs, we recommend the system be checked by an authorised Genesis repairer.

i Information

The headlamps aiming should be adjusted after an accident or after the headlamps assembly is reinstalled.

Headlamp, parking lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement



- (1) Headlamps (Low)
- (2) Headlamps (High / Sub low)
- (3) Parking lamps/Daytime running lamps/Turn signal lamps

If an LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single bulb because they are an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair an LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Puddle lamp replacement

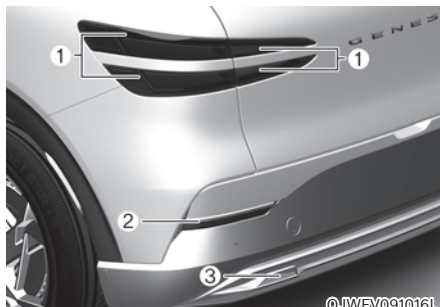


If an LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single bulb because they are an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair an LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Rear combination lamp replacement



- (1) Stop/Tail lamp
- (2) Turn signal lamp
- (3) Reversing lamp

If an LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single bulb because they are an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair an LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

High mounted stop lamp replacement

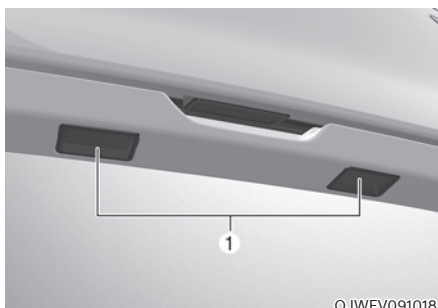


If an LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single bulb because they are an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair an LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Licence plate lamp replacement

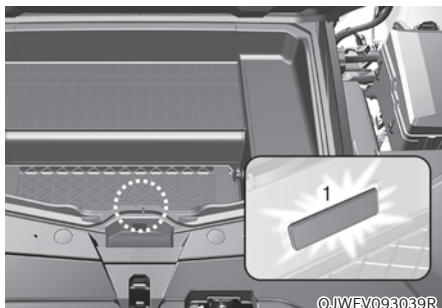


If an LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single bulb because they are an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair an LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Front boot lamp replacement



If an LED lamp (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

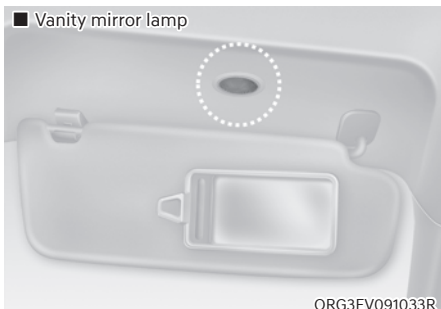
The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single bulb because they are an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair an LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Interior light replacement



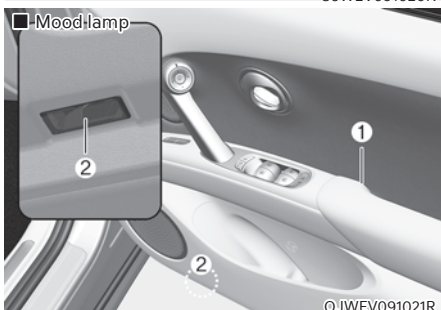
■ Vanity mirror lamp



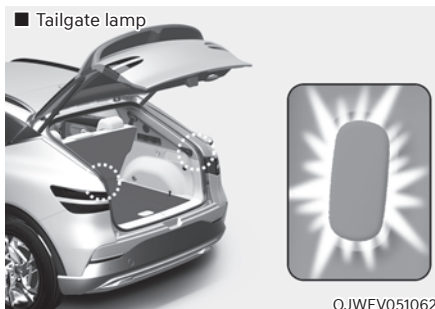
■ Glove box lamp



■ Mood lamp



■ Tailgate lamp



If any LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis repairer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single bulb because they are an integrated unit. The LED lamps have to be replaced as a whole unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair an LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

APPEARANCE CARE

Exterior care

NOTICE

If you park your vehicle near a stainless steel sign or glass facade building, the vehicle's exterior plastic parts such as a bumper, spoiler, garnish, lamp or outside rearview mirrors might be damaged due to reflected sunlight from the sign or building. To prevent damage of the exterior plastic parts, you should avoid parking in areas where light may be reflected or use a car cover. (The exterior plastic parts applied to your vehicle may vary.)

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits. A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, should be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

High-pressure washing

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.
Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
- Do not spray the camera, sensors or their surrounding areas directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device operate abnormally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.



WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water before getting on the road. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

NOTICE

- Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.
- Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle.
- Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.
- To prevent damage to the plastic parts, do not clean them with chemical solvents or strong detergents.

NOTICE



- Water washing in the motor compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the vehicle compartment.
- Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as water or other liquids may flow in to the motor compartment through the front boot and damage electrical/electronic components.

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)
Automatic car wash which uses rotating brushes should not be used as this can damage the surface of your vehicle. A steam cleaner which washes the vehicle surface at high temperature may result in oil adhering to the surface and leaving stains that are difficult to remove.

Use a soft cloth (for example, microfiber towel or sponge) when washing your vehicle and dry with a microfiber towel. When you hand wash your vehicle, you should not use a cleaner that finishes with wax. If the vehicle surface is too dirty (sand, dirt, dust, contaminant, etc.), clean the surface with water before washing the car.

Waxing

A good coat of wax is a barrier between your paint and contaminate. Keeping a good coat of wax on your vehicle will help protect it.

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

NOTICE

- Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.
- Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodized aluminium parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discolouration or paint deterioration.

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

Do not use any polish protector such as a detergent, an abrasive and a polish. In case wax is applied, remove the wax immediately using a silicon remover and if any tar or tar contaminant is on the surface use a tar remover to clean. However, be careful not to apply too much pressure on the painted area.

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

In case of matte paint finish vehicles, it is impossible to modify only the damaged area and repair of the whole part is necessary. If the vehicle is damaged and painting is required, we recommend that you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorised Genesis repairer. Take extreme care, as it is difficult to restore the quality after the repair.

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of brightmetal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the frame and floor pan, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with lukewarm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.



WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

Aluminium wheel maintenance

The aluminium wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

- Do not use abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminium wheels.
- Clean the wheel when it has cooled.
- Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, clean the wheels after driving on salted roads.
- Do not wash the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.
- Do not use any cleaners containing acid or alkaline detergents.

Corrosion protection

Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practices to combat corrosion, GENESIS produces vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

To help prevent corrosion**Keep your vehicle clean**

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area — where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc., you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, pay particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.
- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside to accelerate corrosion.

Keep your garage dry

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favorable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Interior care

Interior general precautions

Prevent caustic solutions such as perfume and cosmetic oil, from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discolouration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately. See the instructions for the proper way to clean vehicle interior surfaces.

NOTICE

- **Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.**
- **When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.**

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

vehicle interior surfaces (if equipped)

Remove dust and loose dirt from interior surfaces with a whisk broom or a vacuum cleaner. If necessary, clean interior surfaces with a mixture of warm water and mild non-detergent cleaner (test all cleaners on a concealed area before use).

Fabric (if equipped)

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets. Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its colour can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

NOTICE

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Leather (if equipped)

- Features of seat leather
 - Leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process to be available for use. Since it is a natural product, each part differs in thickness or density.
 Wrinkles may appear as a natural result of stretching and shrinking depending on the temperature and humidity.
 - The seat is made of stretchable fabric to improve comfort.
 - The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high which provides driving comfort and stability.
 - Wrinkles may appear naturally from usage. It is not a fault of the products.

NOTICE

- **Wrinkles or abrasions which appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.**
- **Belts with metallic accessories, zippers or keys inside the back pocket may damage the seat fabric.**
- **Make sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of natural leather.**
- **Jeans or clothes which could bleed may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric.**

- Caring for the leather seats
 - Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It will prevent abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
 - Wipe the natural leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
 - Use of proper leather protector may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the colour. Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agent.
 - Light coloured (beige, cream beige) leather is easily contaminated and the stain is noticeable. Clean the seats frequently.
 - Avoid wiping with wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.
- Cleaning the leather seats
 - Remove all contaminations instantly. Refer to instructions below for removal of each contaminant.
 - Cosmetic products (sunscreen, foundation, etc.)
 Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated spot. Wipe off the cream with a wet cloth and remove water with a dry cloth.
 - Beverages (coffee, soft drink, etc.)
 Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until contaminations do not smear.
 - Oil
 Remove oil instantly with absorbable cloth and wipe with stain remover used only for natural leather.
 - Chewing gum
 Harden the gum with ice and remove gradually.

Interior wooden trim

- Use a wooden furniture protector (for example, wax, coating compound) to clean the interior wooden trim.
- Regularly wipe the interior wooden trim with a lint-free, clean cloth to maintain the unique wooden textures for a longer period of time.
- If you spill a beverage (for example, water, coffee) over the interior a wooden trim, immediately wipe it with clean, dry cloth.
- Sharp objects (for example, driver, knife), adhesive materials, or tapes may damage the interior wooden trim.
- Any strong impacts may damage the interior wooden trim.
- If the coating finish over the interior wooden trim is removed, moisture may damage or change wood traits.
- If the interior wooden trim is damaged, you may get a splinter from the wood surface. Therefore, you should immediately have the damaged interior wooden trim replaced. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis repairer.
- Forged wood is an eco-friendly wooden trim made from recycled wood chips. Due to these material characteristics, the grain direction is not constant and small dots or natural cracks may occur. These are natural appearance characteristics of real wood from the manufacturing method and are not appearance defects.

Cleaning the seat belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken the seat belt.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

NOTICE

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.

Index

A

Active noise control-road	6-59
System malfunction.....	6-59
Accessing your vehicle.....	5-5
Immobiliser system	5-12
Smart key	5-5
Advanced Rear Occupant Alert (ROA)	5-31
System operation.....	5-31
System precautions.....	5-32
System setting	5-31
Air bag - supplemental restraint system	3-46
Additional safety precautions.....	3-62
Air bag warning labels	3-62
Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat	3-55
How does the air bags system operate?.....	3-51
SRS care	3-61
What to expect after an air bag inflates.....	3-54
Where are the air bags?	3-48
Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?	3-56
Air conditioner compressor label.....	2-15
Air conditioning system.....	2-11
All Wheel Drive (AWD)	6-47
Emergency precautions	6-49
Appearance care.....	9-51
Exterior care	9-51
Interior care	9-56
Automatic climate control system	5-95
Automatic temperature control mode	5-96
Manual temperature control mode	5-97
System maintenance.....	5-109
System operation.....	5-108

B

Battery (12 V).....	9-20
12 V Battery Recharging.....	9-22
Battery capacity label.....	9-21
For best battery service	9-21
Reset items	9-23
Before driving.....	6-3
Before entering the vehicle	6-3
Before starting.....	6-3
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist (BCA)	7-38
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations	7-45
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist operation	7-42
Blind-Spot Collision-Avoidance Assist settings	7-40
Blind-Spot View Monitor (BVM)	7-72
Blind-Spot View Monitor malfunction	7-73
Blind-Spot View Monitor operation.....	7-72
Blind-Spot View Monitor settings	7-72
Boost Mode	6-58
Functional description and operating conditions	6-58
Brake fluid	9-14
Checking the brake fluid level	9-14
Braking system	6-29
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	6-38
Auto Hold.....	6-35
Disc brakes wear indicator.....	6-30
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)	6-31
Electronic Stability Control (ESC).....	6-40
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)	6-45
Good braking practices	6-46
High performance brake.....	6-30
Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC).....	6-44
Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)	6-45
Power-assist brakes	6-29
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM).....	6-43
Bulb wattage.....	2-9

C

Cabin air filter.....	9-16
Filter inspection.....	9-16
Filter replacement.....	9-16
Centre console overview.....	2-5
Charge indicator lamp for electric vehicle.....	1-24
Charging status.....	1-24
Locking charging cable	1-25
Charge types for electric vehicle	1-22
Charging Information.....	1-22
Charging time information	1-22
Charging types	1-23
Charging the electric vehicle (abrupt stop).....	1-50
Action to be taken when charging stops abruptly	1-50
Child Restraint System (CRS).....	3-37
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS).....	3-40
Our recommendation: children always in the rear	3-37
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS).....	3-38
Climate control additional features.....	5-114
Auto. Controls that use climate control settings (for driver's seat)	5-116
Auto defogging system	5-114
Auto dehumidify	5-115
Recirculating air when washer fluid is used	5-116
Sunroof inside air recirculation	5-116
Cluster display	4-31
Cluster display control	4-31
Option menu.....	4-35
View modes.....	4-31
Coolant.....	9-12

D

Declaration of conformity.....	7-170
Front Corner Radar/Rear Corner Radar	7-170
Front radar.....	7-170
Declaration of conformity	2-15

Digital Side Mirror (DSM)	5-46
Adjusting the DSM cameras	5-48
Displaying the guidelines	5-48
DSM camera defroster	5-51
DSM warnings and indicators	5-47
Folding/Unfolding the DSM cameras	5-49
Operating the digital side mirrors	5-47
Setting the DSM screen brightness	5-51
Switching to wide view when backing up.....	5-50
Dimensions	2-8
Door locks.....	5-23
Automatic door lock and unlock features	5-27
Electronic child safety lock.....	5-28
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle	5-24
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle	5-23
DRIFT mode	6-58
DRIFT mode disabled.....	6-59
To activate DRIFT mode.....	6-58
Drive mode integrated control system.....	6-55
Drive mode.....	6-55
Drive modes characteristic.....	6-57
Driver Attention Warning (DAW)	7-66
Driver Attention Warning malfunction and limitations.....	7-68
Driver Attention Warning operation.....	7-67
Driver Attention Warning settings	7-66
Driving electric vehicle.....	1-51
Cluster display messages.....	1-58
Distance to empty.....	1-52
Electricity use.....	1-54
How to Shut Off the vehicle.....	1-51
How to start the vehicle.....	1-51
Power/Charge Gauge	1-55
State Of Charge (SOC) gauge for high voltage battery	1-55
Tips for improving distance to empty	1-53
Virtual Engine Sound System (VESS).....	1-52
Warning and Indicator lights (related to electric vehicle).....	1-56

E

Electric vehicle specifications	2-8
Electronically controlled suspension with road preview	6-52
Limitations of the system	6-53
System malfunction.....	6-53
Electronic control suspension	6-51
System malfunction.....	6-51
Electronic limited slip differential	6-54
Drive mode selection.....	6-54
Warning messages	6-54
EV mode	1-9
Charging and climate	1-12
Energy information	1-10
EV mode screen	1-9
EV settings	1-19
Nearby charging stations	1-19
Next departure.....	1-11
Vehicle to load (V2L).....	1-13
Electric vehicle	1-6
Battery Information.....	1-6
Characteristics of electric vehicles.....	1-6
Electric vehicle.....	1-6
Emergency commodity	8-22
Fire extinguisher.....	8-22
First aid kit	8-22
Triangle reflector.....	8-22
Tyre pressure gauge	8-22
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items.....	9-11
Exterior features.....	5-60
Bonnet	5-61
Charging door.....	5-72
Front boot.....	5-62
Power tailgate	5-64
Roof rack	5-60
Smart tailgate	5-70
Exterior overview (front view).....	2-2
Exterior overview (rear view).....	2-3

F

Face connect	5-13
Face connect operation.....	5-15
Face connect settings.....	5-13
Legal compliance	5-16
Limitations of face connect.....	5-15
When purchasing a used vehicle.....	5-16
Fingerprint authentication system	5-17
Fingerprint authentication system operation.....	5-18
Fingerprint authentication system settings.....	5-17
Limitations of the system.....	5-19
Used vehicle.....	5-19
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA).....	7-2
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations	7-21
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist operation	7-10
Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist settings	7-6
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW)	7-120
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning malfunction and limitations...	7-123
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning operation	7-121
Forward/Reverse Parking Distance Warning settings.....	7-120
Forward/Side/Reverse Parking Distance Warning (PDW)	7-126
Parking Distance Warning Malfunction and Limitations.....	7-130
Parking Distance Warning Operation.....	7-127
Parking Distance Warning Settings.....	7-126
Fuses	9-32
Fuse/relay panel description.....	9-35
Instrument panel fuse replacement.....	9-33
Motor compartment panel fuse replacement.....	9-34

H

Hazard warning flasher.....	8-2
Head-Up Display (HUD)	5-74
Head-Up Display information.....	5-74
Head-Up Display settings	5-74
Precautions whilst using the Head-Up Display.....	5-75
High Beam Assist (HBA)	5-84
High Beam Assist malfunction and limitations.....	5-86
High Beam Assist operation.....	5-85
High Beam Assist setting	5-84

I

If the vehicle will not start	8-3
If you have a flat tyre (with Tyre Mobility Kit).....	8-13
Components of the Tyre Mobility Kit	8-15
How to adjust tyre pressure.....	8-19
Introduction	8-13
Notes on the safe use of the Tyre Mobility Kit	8-14
Using the Tyre Mobility Kit When a tyre is flat.....	8-16
Important safety precautions.....	3-2
Air bag hazards	3-2
Always wear your seat belt	3-2
Control your speed	3-2
Driver distraction	3-2
Keep your vehicle in safe condition.....	3-2
Restrain all children	3-2
In case of an emergency whilst driving	8-2
If the vehicle stalls at a crossroad or crossing.....	8-2
If you have a flat tyre whilst driving.....	8-3
Infotainment system.....	5-129
Antenna	5-129
Bang&Olufsen sound system.....	5-131
Bluetooth® wireless technology	5-131
Infotainment system.....	5-130
Steering wheel remote controls.....	5-129
USB Port	5-129
Voice recognition	5-130
Instrument cluster	4-4
Cluster display messages.....	4-22
Gauges and meters	4-6
Instrument cluster control	4-5
Warning and indicator lights	4-11
Integrated memory system	5-34
Recalling memory positions.....	5-35
Resetting the system.....	5-35
Seat easy access.....	5-36
Storing memory positions	5-34

Intelligent Front-Lighting System (IFS)	5-81
System malfunction and limitations.....	5-82
System operation.....	5-81
System setting	5-81
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist (ISLA)	7-60
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist malfunction and limitations.....	7-63
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist operation.....	7-61
Intelligent Speed Limit Assist settings.....	7-60
Interior features.....	5-119
Cargo security screen	5-127
Clock	5-125
Coat hook	5-125
Cup holder.....	5-119
Floor mat anchor(s).....	5-126
Luggage net holder	5-127
Power outlet	5-121
Rear side window sunshades	5-126
Sunvisor.....	5-120
USB charger	5-122
Vehicle to load (V2L)	5-125
Wireless smart phone charging system	5-123
Interior lights	5-87
Front boot lamp.....	5-90
Front lamps.....	5-87
Glove box lamp.....	5-88
Interior lamp AUTO cut.....	5-87
Mood lamp	5-89
Puddle lamp.....	5-90
Rear lamps.....	5-88
Tailgate lamp.....	5-89
Vanity mirror lamp.....	5-88
Interior overview	2-4

J

Jump starting (12 V battery)	8-4
------------------------------------	-----

L

Lane Following Assist (LFA)	7-93
Lane Following Assist malfunction and limitations.....	7-96
Lane Following Assist operation.....	7-94
Lane Following Assist settings	7-93
Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)	7-30
Lane Keeping Assist malfunction and limitations	7-34
Lane Keeping Assist operation.....	7-32
Lane Keeping Assist settings	7-30
Light bulbs.....	9-45
Front boot lamp replacement	9-49
Headlamp, parking lamp, turn signal lamp, Daytime Running Light (DRL) replacement	9-46
High mounted stop lamp replacement.....	9-48
Interior light replacement.....	9-49
Licence plate lamp replacement.....	9-48
Puddle lamp replacement	9-47
Rear combination lamp replacement.....	9-47
Lighting	5-76
Exterior lights.....	5-76

M

Main components of electric vehicle.....	1-7
High voltage battery (lithium-ion battery)	1-7
High voltage battery warmer system.....	1-8
Main components of an electric vehicle.....	1-7
Maintenance services.....	9-4
Owner maintenance precautions	9-4
Owner's responsibility	9-4
Manual Speed Limit Assist (MSLA).....	7-57
Manual Speed Limit Assist operation	7-57
Mirrors	5-41
Inside rearview mirror.....	5-41
Outside rearview mirrors.....	5-42
Reverse parking aid	5-44
Motor compartment.....	9-3
Motor compartment overview	2-7
Motor number	2-14

O

Open source software notice.....	2-15
OTA software update	5-20
Approving software update	5-20
Downloading software	5-20
Preparing software update.....	5-20
Updating software	5-21
Owner maintenance	9-5
Owner maintenance schedule.....	9-6

P

Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist (PCA).....	7-133
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Malfunction and Limitations.....	7-137
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Operation.....	7-135
Parking Collision-Avoidance Assist Settings.....	7-134

R

Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist (RCCA)	7-109
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction and limitations.....	7-115
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist operation	7-111
Rear Cross-Traffic Collision-Avoidance Assist settings	7-110
Rear View Monitor (RVM)	7-97
Rear View Monitor malfunction and limitations.....	7-101
Rear View Monitor operation.....	7-99
Rear View Monitor settings.....	7-97
Recommended lubricants and capacities	2-12
Reduction gear	6-9
Cluster display messages.....	6-15
Good driving practices	6-17
Reduction gear operation	6-9
Rotate the shift dial manually in case of emergency.....	6-10
Reduction gear fluid	9-15
Refrigerant label	2-15
Regenerative braking system.....	6-19
i-Pedal	6-21
One pedal driving	6-20
Remote Smart Parking Assist 2 (RSPA 2)	7-143
Remote Smart Parking Assist malfunction and limitations.....	7-163

Remote Smart Parking Assist operation.....	7-146
Remote Smart Parking Assist settings.....	7-145

S

Safe Exit Assist (SEA).....	7-50
Safe Exit Assist malfunction and limitations	7-54
Safe Exit Assist operation	7-52
Safe Exit Assist settings	7-51
Safety precautions for electric vehicle.....	1-63
Countermeasures for Accidents or Fire.....	1-63
High voltage cut-off switch.....	1-65
Other precautions for electric vehicle	1-65
Scheduled charging.....	1-26
AC charge.....	1-32
Charging precautions	1-26
DC charge.....	1-36
Disconnecting charging connector in emergency	1-32
Electric charging label.....	1-29
Electric charging label symbol table	1-31
How to check the symbol on the charging label	1-28
Portable charge.....	1-39
Scheduled charging	1-26
Scheduled maintenance services.....	9-7
Maintenance under severe usage conditions	9-10
Normal maintenance schedule	9-8
Seat belts.....	3-26
Additional seat belt safety precautions	3-34
Care of seat belts.....	3-36
Pre-active Seat Belt (PSB)	3-33
Seat belt restraint system.....	3-29
Seat belt safety precautions.....	3-26
Seat belt warning light	3-27
Seats.....	3-3
Air ventilation seats.....	3-24
Front seats	3-7
Headrest.....	3-18
Rear seats	3-14
Safety precautions	3-6
Seat warmers	3-22

Smart Cruise Control (SCC).....	7-74
Smart Cruise Control malfunction and limitations	7-87
Smart Cruise Control operation	7-77
Smart Cruise Control settings	7-75
Smart recuperation system.....	6-22
How to operate	6-24
Limitations of the system	6-26
Ready to operate.....	6-23
Smart recuperation system setting	6-22
Smart recuperation system will be temporarily cancelled when:.....	6-24
System malfunction.....	6-26
To activate smart recuperation system	6-22
To resume Smart Recuperation System	6-24
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance recognition sensor (front radar)	6-25
Special driving conditions	6-60
Driving at night	6-61
Driving in flooded areas.....	6-62
Driving in the rain	6-61
Hazardous driving conditions	6-60
Highway driving.....	6-62
Reducing the risk of a rollover.....	6-63
Rocking the vehicle.....	6-60
Smooth cornering	6-61
Start/Stop button	6-4
Remote start	6-8
Starting the vehicle.....	6-6
Start/Stop button positions	6-5
Turning off the vehicle	6-7
Steering wheel	5-37
Heated steering wheel	5-40
Horn.....	5-39
Motor Driven Power Steering (MDPS).....	5-37
Tilt / Telescopic steering	5-38
Steering wheel control overview	2-6
Storage compartment	5-117
Centre console storage	5-117
Glove box	5-118
Sunglasses holder	5-118

Surround View Monitor (SVM)	7-102
Surround View Monitor malfunction and limitations	7-108
Surround View Monitor operation	7-105
Surround View Monitor settings	7-102

T

Theft-alarm system	5-30
Towing	8-20
Removable towing hook	8-21
Towing service	8-20
Trailer towing	6-68
Driving with a trailer	6-71
If you do decide to pull a trailer (for australia)	6-69
Maintenance when towing a trailer	6-74
Trailer towing equipment	6-70
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	8-8
Changing a tyre with TPMS	8-11
Check tyre pressure	8-8
Low tyre pressure position and tyre pressure telltale	8-10
Low tyre pressure warning light	8-10
TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator	8-11
Tyre pressure monitoring system	8-9
Tyres and wheels	2-10
Tyres and wheels	9-24
Check tyre inflation pressure	9-25
Low aspect ratio tyres	9-31
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures	9-24
Tyre care	9-24
Tyre maintenance	9-28
Tyre replacement	9-27
Tyre rotation	9-26
Tyre sidewall labelling	9-28
Tyre traction	9-28
Wheel alignment and tyre balance	9-26
Wheel replacement	9-28
Tyre specification and pressure label	2-14

V

Vehicle certification label	2-13
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	2-13
Vehicle settings (infotainment system)	4-36
Setting your vehicle	4-36
Vehicle weight	6-75
Overloading	6-75
Vehicle weight and luggage volume	2-11
Vision roof	5-57
Resetting the power sunshade	5-59

W

Washer fluid	9-15
Windows	5-52
Power windows	5-53
Remote window opening/closing function	5-56
Windscreen defrosting and defogging	5-111
Defogging logic	5-112
Rear window defroster	5-113
To defog inside windscreen	5-111
To defrost inside windscreen	5-112
Winter driving	6-64
Snow or icy conditions	6-64
Winter precautions	6-67
Wiper blades	9-18
Blade inspection	9-18
Blade replacement	9-18
Wipers and washers	5-92
Front windscreen wipers	5-92
Windscreen washers	5-94